
OXFORD LATIN COURSE

PART II

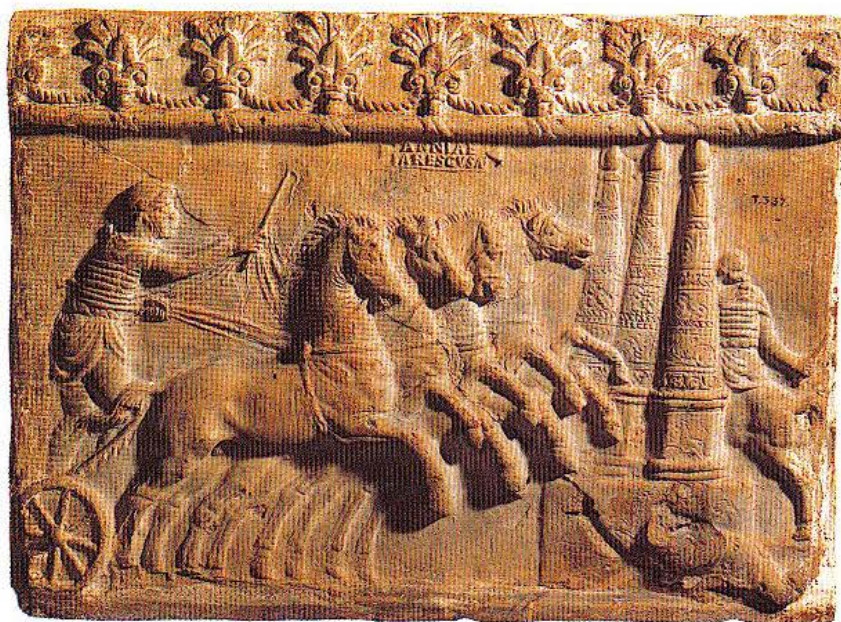
FULL
COLOUR
SECOND
EDITION



MAURICE BALME & JAMES MORWOOD

OXFORD LATIN COURSE

PART II
SECOND EDITION



MAURICE BALME & JAMES MORWOOD
OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS

OXFORD

UNIVERSITY PRESS

Great Clarendon Street, Oxford OX2 6DP

Oxford University Press is a department of the University of Oxford.
It furthers the University's objective of excellence in research,
scholarship, and education by publishing worldwide in

Oxford New York

Auckland Cape Town Dar es Salaam Hong Kong Karachi
Kuala Lumpur Madrid Melbourne Mexico City Nairobi
New Delhi Shanghai Taipei Toronto

With offices in

Argentina Austria Brazil Chile Czech Republic France Greece
Guatemala Hungary Italy Japan Poland Portugal Singapore
South Korea Switzerland Thailand Turkey Ukraine Vietnam

Oxford is a registered trade mark of Oxford University Press
in the UK and in certain other countries

© Oxford University Press 1997

Database right Oxford University Press (maker)

First published 1997. This edition, with revised cartoons, published 2006

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced,
stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means,
without the prior permission in writing of Oxford University Press, or as
expressly permitted by law, or under terms agreed with the appropriate
reprographics rights organization. Enquiries concerning reproduction
outside the scope of the above should be sent to the Rights Department,
Oxford University Press, at the address above

You must not circulate this book in any other binding or cover
and you must impose this same condition on any acquirer

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data

Data available

ISBN : 978-0-19-912227-1

20 19 18 17

Typeset and designed by Positif Press Oxford

Printed in Singapore by KHL Printing Co. Pte Ltd.

Paper used in the production of this book is a
natural, recyclable product made from wood
grown in sustainable forests. The manufacturing
process conforms to the environmental regulations
of the country of origin.

Contents

Chapter	Introduction	5		
17	Comitia Elections	6 10	Grammar and exercises	112
18	Quintus domo discedit SPQR (Senatus Populusque Romanus)	12 15	Grammar and exercises	117
19	Roma Rome	17 22	Grammar and exercises	120
20	Ludus Orbili Greece and Rome	25 28	Grammar and exercises	123
21	Marcus Quintum domum suam invitat Cicero	31 34	Grammar and exercises	125
22	Ludi circenses The games	39 43	Grammar and exercises	127
23	Marcus Quintum ad balnea ducit A day at Rome	47 50	Grammar and exercises	128
24	Caesaris triumph The Roman triumph	53 56	Grammar and exercises	130
25	Quintus togam virilem sumit Into adulthood	59 63	Grammar and exercises	132
26	Idus Martiae The end of the republic	65 69	Grammar and exercises	133
27	Quintus Roma discedere parat Trade by water	71 76	Grammar and exercises	135
28	Quintus ad Graeciam navigat Greece	78 81	Grammar and exercises	137
29	Academia Stoic and Epicurean	83 87	Grammar and exercises	138
30	Horatiae nuptiae Weddings	89 94	Grammar and exercises	140
31	Brutus Athenas advenit Antony, Octavian and the senate	96 100	Grammar and exercises	142
32	Bellum civile The Second Triumvirate	102 105	Grammar and exercises	144
33	Scintilla epistolam ad Quintum scribit Birth and childhood	107 109		
	Appendix: Cena Trimalchionis	147		
	Reference grammar	152		
	Latin – English vocabulary	164		
	English – Latin vocabulary	173		
	Index of grammar	176		

Acknowledgements

The publisher and authors would like to thank the many consultants in the United Kingdom and the United States for comments and suggestions that have contributed towards this second edition.

In particular: (UK) Julian Morgan, Deborah Bennett, David Cartwright, Alison Doubleday, John Powell, Philip Powell, Jeremy Rider, Tim Reader, F. R. Thorn, Andrew Wilson; (US) John Gruber-Miller, Carlos Fandal, Dennis Herer, Gilbert Lawall, James Lowe, Diana Stone and Jeffrey Wills.

The publishers would like to thank the following for permission to reproduce photographs:

© AKG pp. 54, 82 (top); © AKG/John Hios p. 81; © AKG/Eric Lessing pp. 22, 23, 109; Alinari-Giraudon p. 85; Ancient Art & Architecture Collection pp. 42, 49 (right), 69, 70, 100; Archivi Alinari pp. 16, 75; Bildarchiv Preussischer Kulturbesitz pp. 8, 41 (right), 44, 46, 82 (bottom); John Brennan, Oxford p. 30; © British Museum p. 51 (bottom); Peter Clayton pp. 9, 68, 87 (top), 106 (top); Peter Connolly p. 20; Donald Cooper © Photostage p. 67; Roger Dalladay p. 8 (right); C. M. Dixon pp. 73, 110; Fitzwilliam Museum, Cambridge p. 87 (bottom); Giraudon pp. 27, 36 (left); The Ronald Grant Archive p. 41 (left); © Michael Holford pp. 1, 88, 90; © 1989, Loyola University Chicago, R. V. Schoder SJ, photographer p. 80; James Morwood pp. 60, 61, 63, 76, 77, 106 (bottom); Musée archéologique, Pella/G. Dagli Orti p. 101; Musée archéologique, Timgad/G. Dagli Orti p. 48; Musée du Louvre/© photo R.M.N. p. 55; Museo d'Arte Moderno di Ca Pesaro, Venice/The Bridgeman Art Library, London pp. 28, 29; Alfredo Dagli Orti/Bildarchiv Preussischer Kulturbesitz pp. 35, 36 (right); The Royal Collection © Her Majesty Queen Elizabeth II p. 57; Scala, Florence pp. 10, 14, 19, 33, 49 (left), 51 (top), 52, 62, 66, 92, 94, 98 (right), 104.

Cover photo: Bildarchiv Preussischer Kulturbesitz

The cartoons are by Cathy Balme.

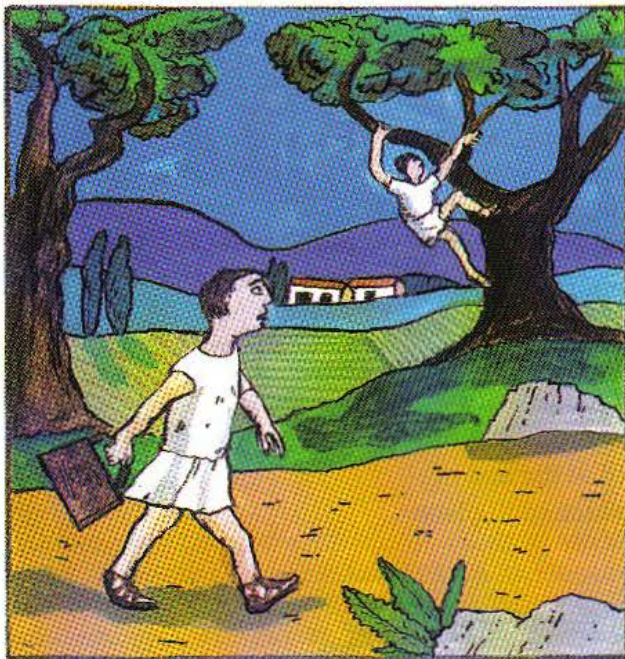
The maps were drawn by John Brennan.

Introduction

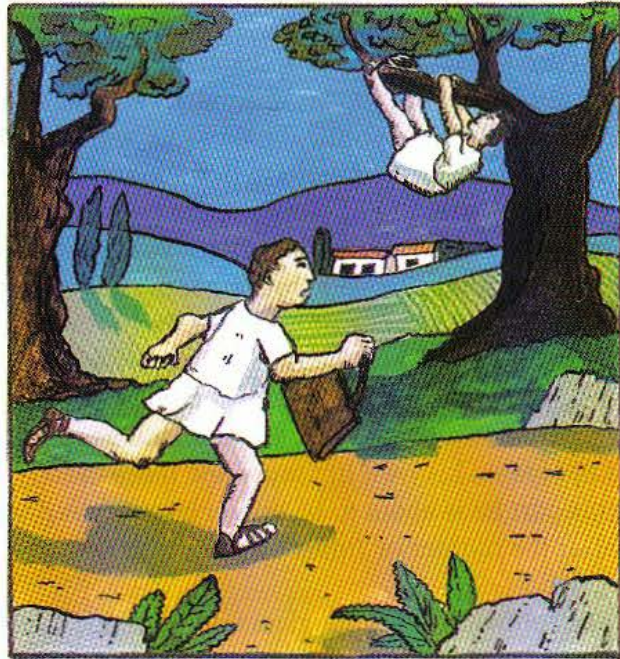
The first part of this course centered around the life of a freedman's family in a country town in Apulia, far from Rome and largely unaffected by the political upheavals which were taking place there; the events described in it are fictitious, since we know very little about the early life of our hero, the poet Quintus Horatius Flaccus. In Part II we leave Apulia behind; because Quintus is clever and the local school inadequate, his father decides to take him to Rome, where he attends one of the best schools there. From Rome he goes on to university in Athens. The framework of the story is now historical. We learn a good deal about this stage of Quintus' life from his own poetry, and the momentous political events of the time impinge on his own life more and more closely, until at the end of this part he is about to be drawn into the civil war which took place after the murder of Julius Caesar.

The following chronological table puts the events of Part II into historical perspective:

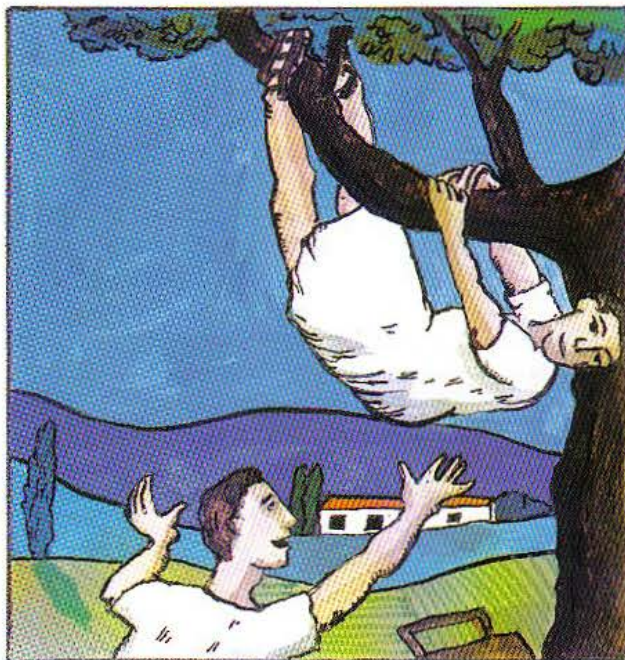
BC	
65	Quintus Horatius Flaccus born at Venusia
51?	Flaccus takes Quintus to Rome
50	Quintus meets young Marcus Cicero (fiction)
49-46	Civil war – Julius Caesar versus Pompey and the senate
46	Julius Caesar's fourfold triumph
45	Marcus Cicero sent to study in Athens
44	Assassination of Julius Caesar Quintus goes to the Academy in Athens Brutus visits Athens and recruits undergraduates
43	Cicero murdered by Antony's soldiers Civil war – Antony and Octavian versus Brutus and Cassius Quintus joins the army of Brutus
42	Quintus commands a legion at the battle of Philippi



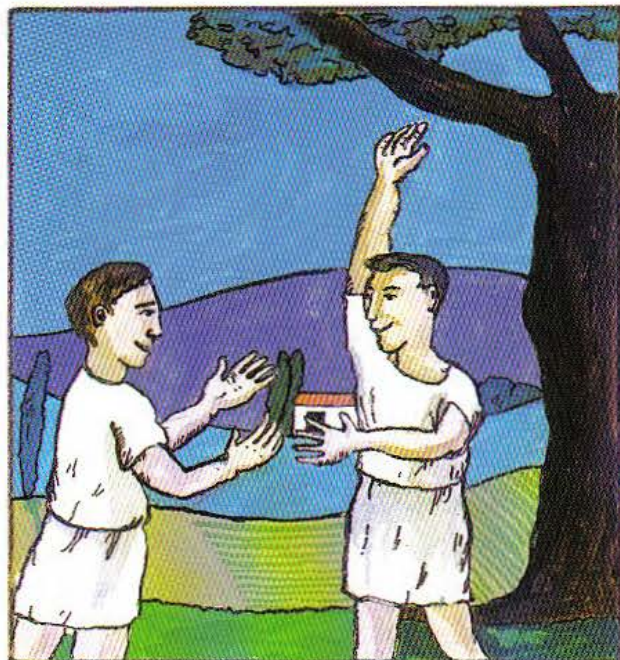
Quīntus ad lūdum ambulābat; subitō Gāium vīdit.



Gāius arborem ascendēbat. Quīntus ad arborem festīnāvit.



ānxius erat; clāmāvit: 'quid facis, Gāi? dēscende.'



Gāius eum audīvit; ad terram rediit Quīntumque salūtāvit.

These captions introduce two different past tenses; you should look at the grammar on p. 112 before you study the vocabulary.

Vocabulary 17

From now on in the vocabularies, verbs will be given with the perfect (1st person sing.) as well as the present infinitive, e.g.

1st conjugation: **parō, parāre, parāvī**

2nd conjugation: **moneō, monēre, monuī**

3rd conjugation: **regō, regere, rēxī**

4th conjugation: **audiō, audire, audīvī**

The different ways in which 3rd conjugation verbs form their perfect are explained bit by bit in the grammar sections of succeeding chapters.

A number of verbs have 'irregular' principal parts, i.e. they do not follow the regular pattern given above.

verbs

sum, esse, imperfect: eram; perfect: fui	I am
superō, superāre, superāvī	I overcome
discēdō, discēdere, discessī	I go away, depart
legō, legere, lēgī,	I read
crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī + dat.	I believe, trust
prōmittō, prōmittere, prōmisi	I promise
efficiō, efficere, effeci	I effect, carry out

adverbs

deinde	then, next
enim	for
igitur	and so, therefore
tamen	however, but

nouns

hōra, -ae, f.	hour
pecūnia, -ae, f.	money
divitiae, -ārum, f. pl.	riches
candidātus, -ī, m.	candidate
numerus, -ī, m.	number
ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis, f.	speech
ōrātiōnem habere	to make a speech
vulnus, vulneris, n.	wound

adjectives

candidus, -a, -um	white
optimus, -a, -um	best
pessimus, -a, -um	worst
vērus, -a, -um	true
vēra dicere	to speak the truth
gravis, grave	heavy, serious

conjunction

cum	when
------------	------

enim, igitur and **tamen** always come second word in their clause,

e.g. **sērō venīmus; festināmus igitur ad lūdum.**

We are coming late, and so we are hurrying to school.

magister irātus est; sērō enim ad lūdum venīmus.

The master is angry, for we are coming to school late.

lentē ambulāvimus; nōn tamen sērō advēnimus.

We walked slowly, but we did not arrive late.

What do the following English phrases mean and from what Latin words are the words in italics derived: an *impecunious* husband, a *pessimistic* forecast, an *insuperable* problem, *numerical* order, an *optimum* score?

Comitia

ad + sum => imp4.

comitia iam aderant. cīvēs novōs duovirōs creāre dēbēbant. per omnēs viās in mūrīs casārū nūntiī candidātōrū pictī erant, sicut:

marcum

ORO VOS M. EPIDIUM SABINUM DUOVIRUM
FACIATIS. CANDIDATUS DIGNUS EST,
COLONIAE VESTRAE DEFENSOR.

cīvēs in viās festīnābant et candidātōs spectābant. illī per viās ambulābant; togās candidās gerēbant; turba fautōrū eōs comitābat. ōrātiōnēs habēbant; multa prōmittēbant quae efficere nōn poterant; cīvēs eōs audiēbant, paucī tamen eīs crēdēbant.

Flaccus in tabernā sedēbat et colloquium cum amīcīs faciēbat. Ganymēdēs, senex querulus et miser, 'candidātīs crēdere nōn possumus' inquit; 'cum enim magistrātum petunt, omnia prōmittunt. cum duovirī sunt, nihil faciunt. nihil cūrant nisi pecūniam suam.'

Philērus 'vēra dicis, Ganymēdēs,' inquit; 'omnēs candidātī putidī sunt, sicut Chrṡsanthus, homō pessimus. ōlim pauper erat, quī parātus fuit quadrantem dē stercore dentibus tollere. nunc divitiās innumerābilēs habet. quōmodo illās divitiās sibi comparāvit? furcifer est.'

Flaccus tamen amīcōs invītus audīvit: 'nōlī nūgās nārrāre, amīce,' inquit; 'iam dēbēmus ad comitium īre et suffrāgia ferre. surgite, amīcī, et mēcum venīte.' omnēs igitur ad forum prōcessērunt et festīnāvērunt ad comitium. in triviīs duōbus candidātīs occurrērunt quī ad comitium prōcēdēbant. pistōrēs alterī favēbant; alba ferēbant cum hāc īnscrip̄tione:

C. IULIUM POLYBIUM DUOVIRUM ORO VOS
FACIATIS; PANEM BONUM FACIT.

alterī favēbant mūliōnēs.

aliī aliōs vituperābant. mox saxa per aurās volābant. multī vulnera accēpērunt, multī timuērunt domumque rediērunt. tandem candidātus quīdam, vir gravis et spectātus, ōrātiōnem ad cīvēs habuit tumultumque sēdāvit. omnēs ad comitium prōcessērunt, suffrāgia tulērunt, novōs duovirōs creāvērunt. fautōrēs eōrum laetī clāmāvērunt victōrēsque triumphāntēs domum dūxērunt. Flaccus domum festīnāvit Scintillaeque omnia nārrāvit.

comitia the elections

creāre to elect; pictī painted

sicut like

ōrō vōs...faciātis I beg you to make

turba fautōrū a crowd of supporters

comitābat accompanied

tabernā a pub

colloquium conversation

querulus complaining, querulous

magistrātum magistracy, office

nisi except

putidī rotten; ōlim once

quadrantem a farthing

dē stercore from the dung

dentibus with his teeth

comparāvit did he get?

furcifer a thief; nūgās nonsense

comitium the polling station

suffrāgia ferre to cast our votes

in triviīs at a crossroads

pistōrēs the bakers; alterī (dat.) one

favēbant favoured, supported

alba (n. pl.) notice boards

pānem bread; alterī the other

mūliōnēs the muleteers

vituperābant began to abuse

volābant were flying

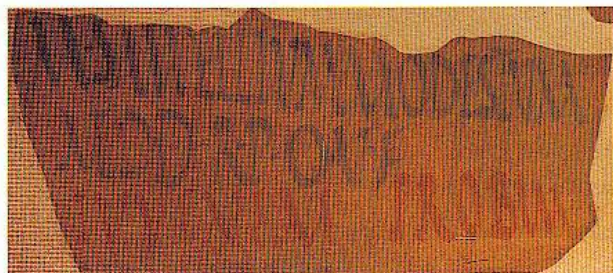
spectātus respected

tumultum riot

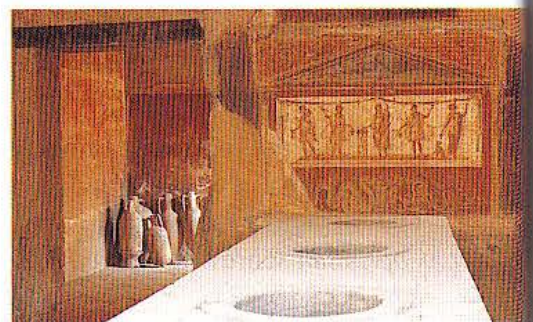
sēdāvit calmed

tulērunt cast

triumphantēs in triumph



Part of an
election poster
from Pompeii



A Roman bar

Respondē Latīnē

- 1 cūr cīvēs candidātīs nōn crēdēbant?
- 2 quid dixit Ganymēdēs dē candidātīs?
- 3 quid dixit Philērus de Chrȳsanthō?
- 4 quid respondit Flaccus?
- 5 quid accidit (*happened*) in triviīs?

Word-building

Learn the following compounds of **mittō, mittere, mīsī**:

admittō, admittere, admīsī	I admit, I commit (a crime)
āmittō, āmittere, āmīsī	I send away, I lose
committō, committere, commīsī	I join together, I entrust
dēmittō, dēmittere, dēmīsī	I send down
dīmittō, dīmittere, dīmīsī	I dismiss (send in different directions)
ēmittō, ēmittere, ēmīsī	I send out
immittō, immittere, immīsī	I send into, I send against
permittō, permittere, permīsī	I permit
prōmittō, prōmittere, prōmīsī	I promise
remittō, remittere, remīsī	I send back

Decimus Quintum lacessit

Translate the first paragraph of the passage below and answer the questions on the second and third

dum Flaccus ad comitia prōcēdit, Quīntus in lūdō sedēbat.

Flāvius arithmēticam docēbat; 'dīc mihi, Gāi,' inquit; 'sī dē quīnque remōtus est ūnus, quid superest?' Gāius respondit: 'quattuor.' Flāvius 'euge!' inquit, 'tū potes rem tuam servāre.'

- 5 multī puerōrum etiam nunc numerōs nec addere nec dēdūcere poterant. Quīntus iamdūdum numerōs didicerat litterāsque facile legēbat. nunc igitur pictūrās scrībēbat, saepe hiābat, interdum dormiēbat. tandem Flāvius puerōs domum dīmīsīt.

- 10 illī laetī in viam festīnāvērunt. Quīntus cum amīcīs ambulābat, cum accessit Decimus; ille Quīntō invidēbat quod ingeniōsus erat. ad pugnam eum vocāvit. ille resistere temptāvit, Decimus tamen eum facile superāvit. ad terram cecidit; tunica scissa erat, sanguis ē nāribus effluēbat. surrēxit et domum cucurrit.

- 15 ubi domum rediit, Scintilla eum rogāvit: 'Quīnte, cūr tam sordidus es? cur tunica scissa est?' Quīntus mātī omnia nārrāvit. illa nihil respondit sed casam trīstis intrāvit.

- 1 Why was Decimus envious of Quintus? [1]
- 2 How did Quintus come off in the fight? [5]
- 3 What did Scintilla ask him when he got home? [2]
- 4 How did she react to his reply? [2]



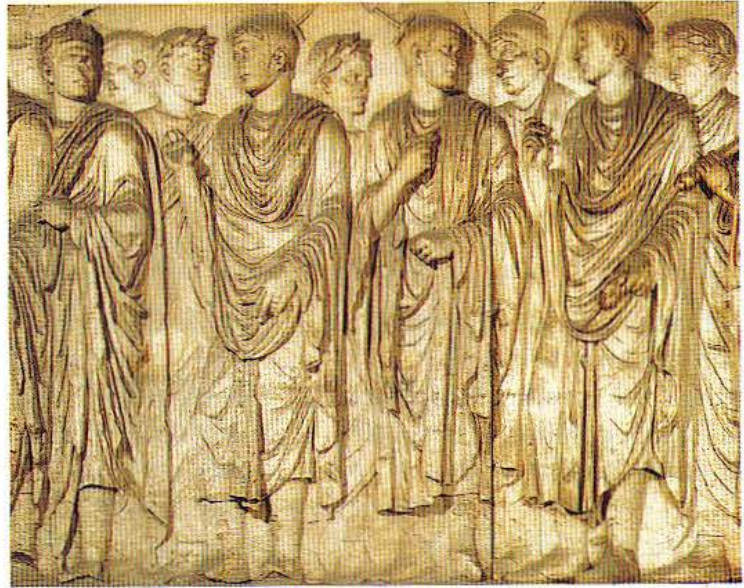
Roman coin showing a citizen voting

lacessit bullies

remōtus removed, subtracted
superest is left; **euge!** good!
rem tuam your fortune
dēdūcere subtract
iamdūdum long ago
didicerat had learnt; **facile** easily
hiābat was yawning
interdum from time to time
ingeniōsus clever
cecidit fell; **scissa** torn
sanguis blood
ē nāribus from his nostrils, nose
effluēbat was pouring
cucurrit ran; **sordidus** dirty

ELECTIONS

As in modern democracies, so in both Rome and the provincial towns elections were of key importance. At Rome there were annual elections at which the citizen body elected the magistrates, who were the executives of the whole system of government. There were four 'colleges' of magistrates, and those aspiring to high office had to hold each post in succession. The junior post was that of quaestor (treasury official); next were the aediles, who had general administrative duties; then came the praetors, who were in charge of judicial administration; and finally the two consuls, the chief executives of the state.



Roman magistrates

The magistrates held office for one year only and there was a minimum age at which candidates were allowed to stand. On becoming a quaestor, you automatically joined the senate for life, and so at the elections the people not only chose those who were to hold office for a year but also the members of the senate, who advised and in fact controlled the magistrates.

However, the system was not as democratic as it sounds since in the elective assemblies there were elaborate arrangements by which the votes of the richer citizens counted for more than those of the poor. Elections were rigged, bribery was normal, and the common people were only allowed to vote for members of the upper classes. The many conquests which were expanding the empire brought more and more slaves to Rome and they did more and more of the work. There was, therefore, an increasing number of unemployed citizens who had to be supported by subsidized or free corn. There was no good reason for voting for one candidate rather than another except for their short-term promises, and so the common people's vote tended to go to those who gave them the most corn or put on the best shows in the theatre. A Roman poet called Juvenal was to remark, with considerable truth, that the only things that interested them were 'bread and circuses' (*pānem et circēnsēs*).

In provincial towns the local government was modelled on that of Rome. The citizens of a *colōnia* met annually in assembly to elect the two magistrates (*duovirī*) who were to run their town for a year. Corresponding to the senate there was an assembly of 80–100 councillors (*decuriōnēs*) who were recruited from ex-magistrates and held office for life. Like the senate, their function was to advise the *duovirī* and in practice they ran public affairs.

Elections were lively events, hotly contested, as numerous surviving graffiti on the walls of Pompeii make clear. Two of these are included in the Latin story. Here are two more: the first shows the guild system at work in a rather comic way!

- The guild of Late Drinkers unanimously supports Marcus Cerrinius Vatia as aedile.
- Statia and Petronia ask for your support for Marcus Casellius and Lucius Albucius as aediles. I hope we have citizens like this in our colony for ever.

A letter survives in which Quintus Cicero advises his brother Marcus – who is soon to feature in our story – on how to conduct his election campaign. Here is some of what he says:

A campaign for election to a magistracy can be divided into two kinds of activity: firstly to gain the support of one's friends, secondly to win the good will of the people. The support of one's friends should be secured by kindness done and repaid, by long-standing acquaintance and by a charming and friendly nature. But the word 'friend' has a wider application in an election campaign than in the rest of life. Anyone who shows any sympathy towards you, who pays attention to you, who frequents your house, should be reckoned among your 'friends'... It is necessary to have friends of every kind: for the sake of appearance, make friends with men who are distinguished in rank and title. These, though they may not actively support the campaign, none the less confer some prestige upon the candidate... You should have knowledge of people's names, winning manners, persistence, generosity, reputation and confidence in your public programme... You badly need to use flattery, which, though disgraceful in the rest of one's life, is essential while electioneering... All men naturally prefer you to lie to them than to refuse your aid... To make a promise is not definite; it allows postponement, and affects only a few people.

Would Quintus Cicero's advice be helpful to a modern politician?

The word candidate is derived from the Latin word for 'white' (candidus), as candidates would make their togas especially white while running for office. Why do you think they did this?

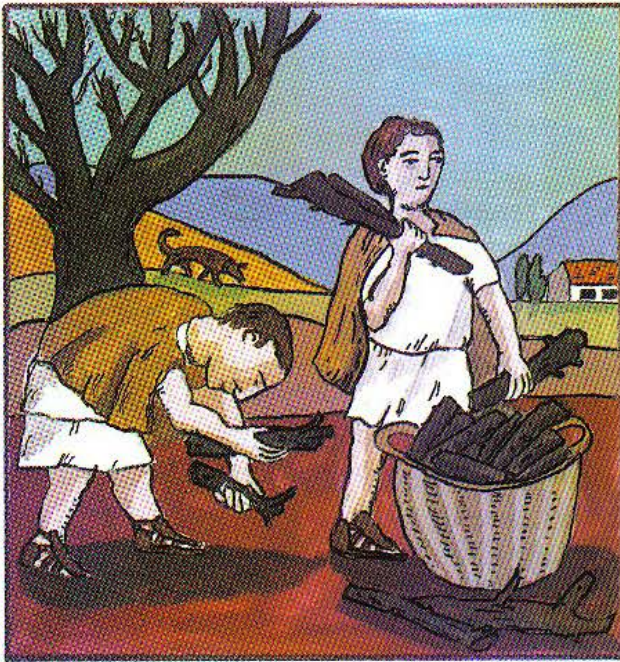
Here is the full version of the poster painted on the walls of Pompeii which was quoted on page 8:

I beg you to elect Marcus Epidius Sabinus duovir; he is a worthy candidate; a defender of your colony, supported by the eminent judge Suedus Clemens and the unanimous voice of the town council, as worthy of our republic because of his services and his honesty. Vote for him.

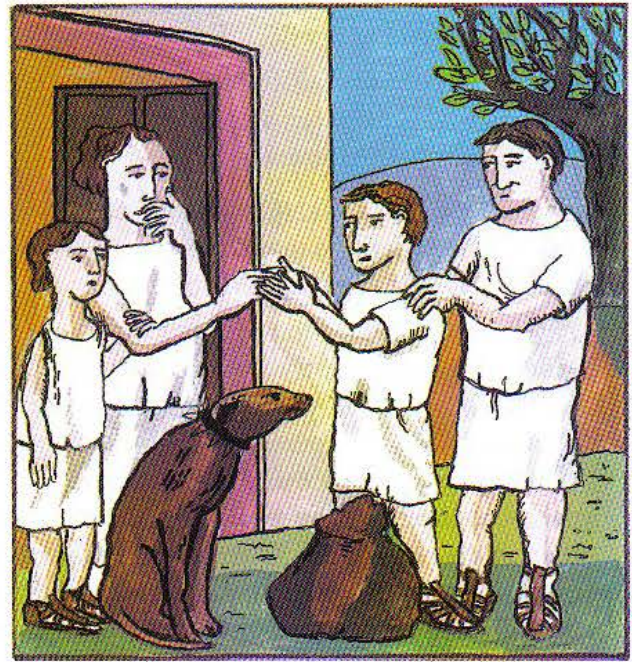
Explain what office Sabinus hopes to win, whose support he claims to have, and what grounds he has for hoping that the electors will vote for him. Compare this poster with those put out by candidates in a modern local or national election.

Chapter 18

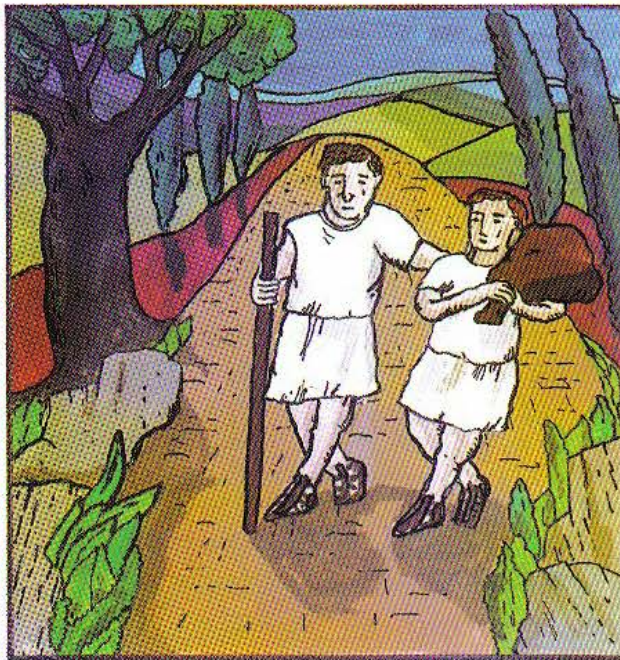
Quintus domo discedit



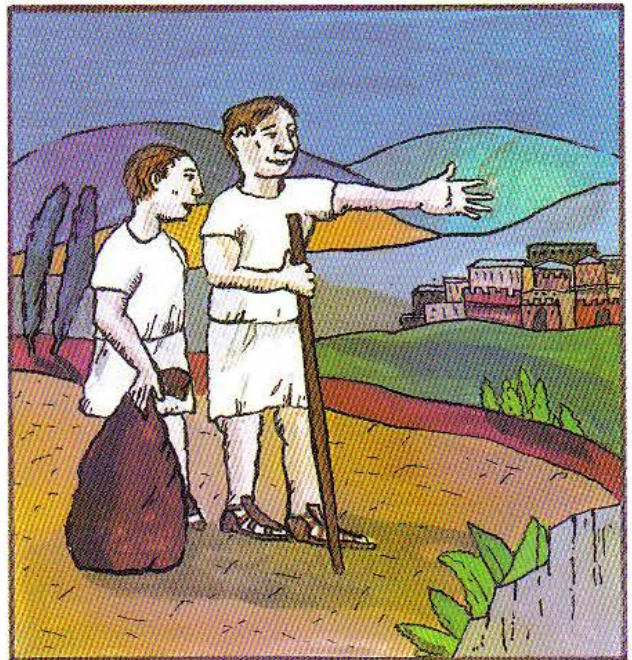
tōtam hiemem Flaccus Quīntusque diligenter
labōrābant.



prīmō diē vēris parātī erant iter inīre; Scintillam
Horātiāmq̃ valēre iussērunt.



quīnque diēs in Viā Appiā contendēbant sed
Rōma adhūc multa mīlia passuum (*miles*) aberat.



nōnō diē Flaccus moenia urbis cōspexit. decem
diēbus Rōmam advēnērunt.

Vocabulary 18

verbs

absum, abesse, āfuī + abl.	I am away from
discō, discere, didicī	I learn
fleō, flēre, flēvī	I weep
ineō, inīre, inī	I enter, begin
trāseō, trānsīre, trānsiī	I cross
studeō, studēre, studuī + dat.	I study
valēre iubeō	I bid goodbye to
vendō, vendere, vendidī	I sell
cōspiciō, cōspicere, cōspexī	I catch sight of

adjective

longus, -a, -um	long
longē	far

adverbs

adhūc	still
tam	so

nouns

lacrima, -ae, f.	tear
silva, -ae, f.	a wood
annus, -ī, m.	year
ignis, ignis, m.	fire
iter, itineris, n.	journey
tempus, temporis, n.	time
vēr, vēris, n.	spring
diēs, diēī, m.	day

preposition

sine + abl.	without
--------------------	---------

What do the following phrases mean, and from what Latin words are the words in italics derived: an *absent* friend, an *annual* celebration, a long *itinerary*, a *silvan* glade, *igneous* rock, a *studious* pupil?

Quīntus domō discēdit

posterō diē Scintilla Flaccō dīxit: 'Quīntus nihil discit in illō lūdō. ingeniōsus est. dēbet Rōmam ire ad optimum lūdum.' Flaccus 'uxor cāra,' inquit, 'nōn potest Quīntus sōlus iter Rōmam facere.' Scintilla eī respondit: 'vēra dīcis, mī vir; tū dēbēs eum Rōmam dūcere.' Flaccus 'nōn satis argentī habēmus,' inquit, 'nec possum tē Horātiāque sōlās relinquere.'

trēs hōrās rem disserēbant. tandem Scintilla 'agrum' inquit 'dēbēmus vendere. tū Quīntum Rōmam dūcere dēbēs; ego et Horātia possumus hīc manēre et frūgālīter vīvere.' cōstituērunt dīmīdium agrī vendere; dīmīdium Scintilla Horātiāque colere poterant. tōtam hiemem Quīntus domī manēbat parentēsque iuvābat. omnēs dīlīgenter labōrābant. Quīntus agrum colēbat; Flaccus partēs coāctōris agēbat et sīc multum argentum comparāvit.

vēr accēdēbat cum Flaccus uxōrī dīxit: 'iam satis argentī habēmus. tempus est Quīntum Rōmam dūcere.' duōbus diēbus omnia parāta erant. posterō diē Flaccus Quīntusque Scintillam valēre iussērunt.

māter flēbat deōsque ōrābat: 'ō deī, servāte fīlium meum. reddite eum mihi incolumem. ō Flacce, fīlium nostrum cūrā! ō Quīnte, bonus puer estō! dīlīgenter studē et mox domum redī!' fīlium virumque amplexū tenēbat; deinde rediit in casam valdē commōta.

posterō the next
ingeniōsus clever

mī vir my husband
satis argentī enough (of) money

rem disserēbant they discussed the matter

frūgālīter cheaply, frugally

dīmīdium half

domī at home

partēs coāctōris agēbat worked as an auctioneer

comparāvit got, made

amplexū tenēbat held in her embrace

Horātia Argusque cum eīs ad primum miliārium contendērunt.
 25 deinde Horātia eōs valēre iussit Argumque domum redūxit, nōn
 sine multīs lacrimīs. tertiā hōrā diēi illī, et tristēs et laetī, viam
 iniērunt quae Rōmam dūcēbat.

miliārium milestone

quintō diē Flaccus filiusque collem ascendērunt. Venusia
 longē aberat. Quīntus valdē fessus erat. miliārium prope viam
 30 vīdit. accessit et inscriptiōnem lēgit: 'ROMA CENTUM ET
 QUINQUAGINTA MILIA PASSUUM'. 'ō pater,' inquit, 'quīque
 diēs contendimus. montēs et flūmina trānsiimus; sed Rōma adhūc
 abest centum et quīquāgintā milia passuum. ego valdē fessus
 sum. ecce! nox adest. quid facere dēbēmus? nōn possum longius
 35 contendere.'

vīdit he saw

longius further

Flaccus respondit: 'nōlī dēspērāre, fili. possumus in illā silvā
 pernoctāre.' Flaccus Quīntum in silvam dūxit. Quīntus ligna
 collēgit et ignem accendit. cēnam celeriter parāvērunt. tum
 Quīntus sub arbore cubuit et mox dormiēbat.

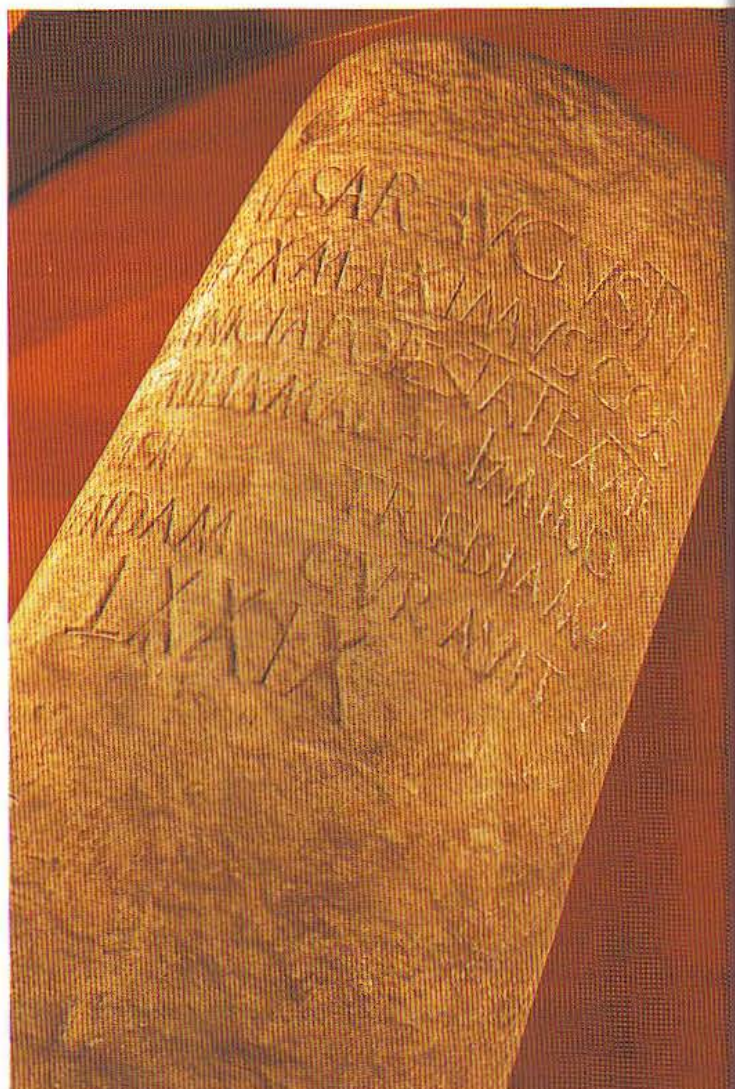
pernoctāre to spend the night

ligna (n. pl.) **collēgit** he collected
 firewood **cubuit** lay down

Word-building

Learn the following compounds of **eō**, **īre**, **ī**:

abeō, abire, abiī	I go away
adeō, adire, adiī	I go to, approach
exeō, exire, exiī	I go out
ineō, inire, iniī	I go into, begin
pereō, perire, periī	I perish
prōdeō, prōdire, prōdiī	I go forward
redeō, redire, rediī	I go back, return
trānseō, trānsire, trānsiī	I cross



A Roman milestone

Quintus paterque in periculum cadunt

Translate the first two paragraphs and answer the questions on the third

Quintus trēs hōrās iam dormīverat cum subitō sonus eum excitāvit; lupōs audīvit procul ululantēs. Flaccus 'nōlī timēre, fili,' inquit. 'lupī longē absunt; praetereā ignem timent. nōn audent accēdere.'

dormīverat had slept
lupōs wolves **ululantēs** howling
praetereā moreover
audent they dare

5 Quintus igitur iterum dormīvit. nōn dormīvit Flaccus sed ignem cūrābat; ānxius enim erat periculumque timēbat. mediā nocte sonum audīvit; hominēs per umbrās ad ignem accēdēbant. Flaccus filium celeriter excitāvit; 'tacē' inquit; 'hominēs hūc accēdunt. venī mēcum.' Quīntī manum cēpit et celeriter eum
 10 dūxit per umbrās in virgulta; ibi sē cēlāvērunt ānxiūque spectābant.

umbrās the shadows

manum cēpit took the hand
virgulta (n. pl.) undergrowth, bushes
sē cēlāvērunt they hid (themselves)
impedimenta (n. pl.) baggage
rapuērunt seized

trēs hominēs ad ignem accessērunt. statim impedimenta Flacci rapuērunt. deinde ipsōs quaerēbant sed invenire nōn poterant. tandem in silvās abiērunt. Flaccus filiō 'nōlī timēre, fili,' inquit;
 15 'iam abiērunt hominēs. sine dubiō illī sunt servī fugitīvī, hominēs scelestī. ē magnō periculō ēvāsimus. iam dēbēmus hīc manēre in virgultīs cēlātī.'

sine dubiō without doubt
fugitīvī runaway **scelestī** wicked
cēlātī hidden

- 1 What did Flaccus and Quintus see from their hiding place? [2]
- 2 Why did Flaccus tell Quintus not to be afraid? [2]
- 3 What were the men, according to Flaccus? [2]
- 4 What did Flaccus say they must do now? [2]

SPQR (Senatus Populusque Romanus)

After the kings had been driven out in 510 BC, the new republic of Rome was governed by the senate, the magistrates and the people. But, as we saw in the last chapter, the magistrates were drawn exclusively from the upper classes, and the senate, which consisted of magistrates and ex-magistrates, thus consisted of the great Roman families, the *nōbilēs* (the patricians). They were only 300 to 600 in number and kept power firmly in their grasp.

The chief magistrates, as we have seen, were the two consuls who were elected to hold office for a year. Because there were two of them it made it unlikely that one consul would seize all the power and become another king. They were able to veto each other's proposals (i.e. to stop them being carried out), but the Romans were a practical people and the consuls usually worked out a way of managing affairs in harmony.

The consuls also commanded Roman armies operating in Italy. They were accompanied when on official business by twelve attendants carrying *fascēs*, bundles of rods which were the emblems of their authority. From the end of the first century BC men who had served as consuls could be sent out to govern

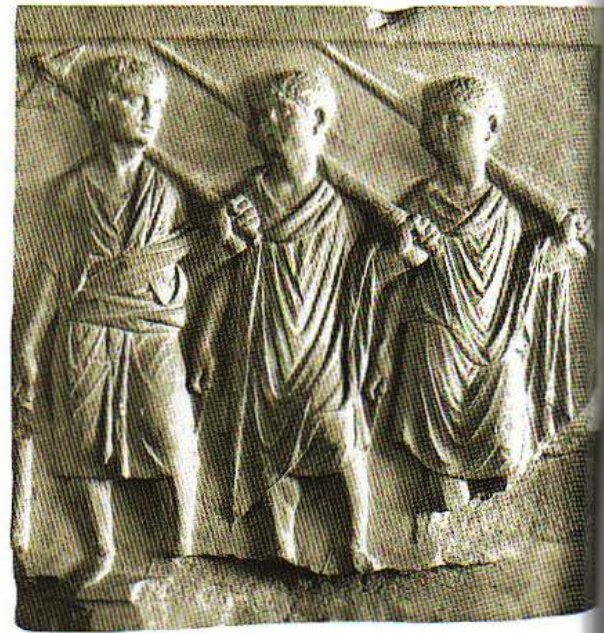
Rome's increasing number of provinces abroad. Here the bundles of rods carried by their attendants contained an axe, which signified their power to carry out the death sentence.

We have seen that the common people, who were called the *plēbs*, had limited power and were often oppressed by the *nōbilēs*. In order to safeguard the rights of the *plēbs*, ten tribunes of the people were appointed. They could veto the senate's measures and it was illegal to lay a finger on them. The senate was a conservative body – that is to say, it preferred to keep things as they always had been – and so in the early days the tribunes of the people proved a valuable force in winning justice for the lower classes of Rome. After 287 BC decrees taken in the Council of the Common People (*concilium plēbis*) bound the whole community. These decrees were called *plēbiscīta* (what English word is derived from this?).

In the later republic a middle class, between the senators and *plēbs*, but far closer to the former, developed increasing power. This class consisted of the equestrians or knights, the *equitēs*. These had to have a large sum of money to qualify for membership. Many were the financiers of Rome, the bankers, money-lenders and collectors of taxes.

In this period there was continual conflict between the representatives of the *plēbs*, who called themselves *populārēs*, and of the nobility, who called themselves the *optimātēs*, while the *equitēs* sometimes backed one side, sometimes the other. It was very rare for a new man, i.e. a man whose family did not belong to the old Roman nobility, to get to the top and become consul. Cicero, who is soon to enter our story, was one of the few who did so, making his way by pure ability.

It was in fact Cicero who tried to bring about a harmony between knights and senators. But it was an unreal though noble wish. At the time of our story, each class seemed only interested in what appeared to be best for itself, and the most powerful class, the senate, was hopelessly divided. In the last decades of the republic a succession of individuals set out to establish their own authority and gain supreme power. They would use any means to do so, and violence, intimidation, rioting and anarchy became basic facts of life in Cicero's day. The kings had been driven out in the sixth century BC. Five hundred years later, it looked as if they were on the way back.



Attendants carrying fasces

Who were the chief magistrates? What was the emblem of their authority?

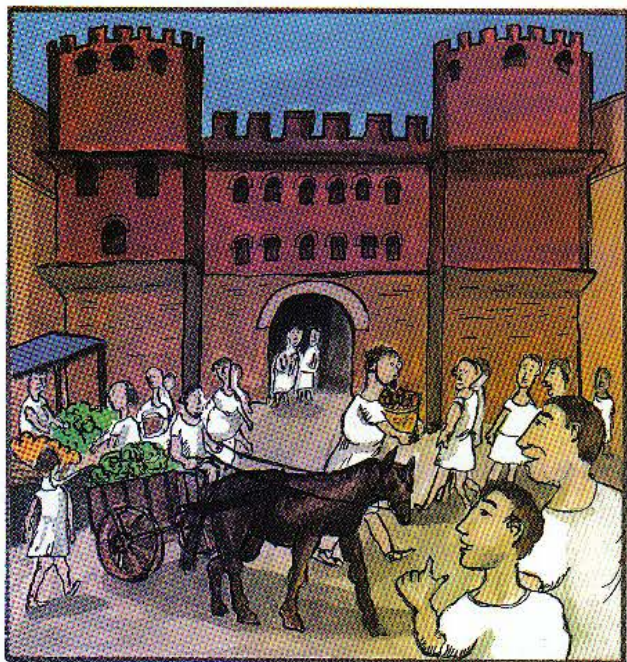
When the Italian dictator Mussolini called his party the fascists, what point was he aiming to make?

*Who were the officials especially elected to protect the *plēbs*?*

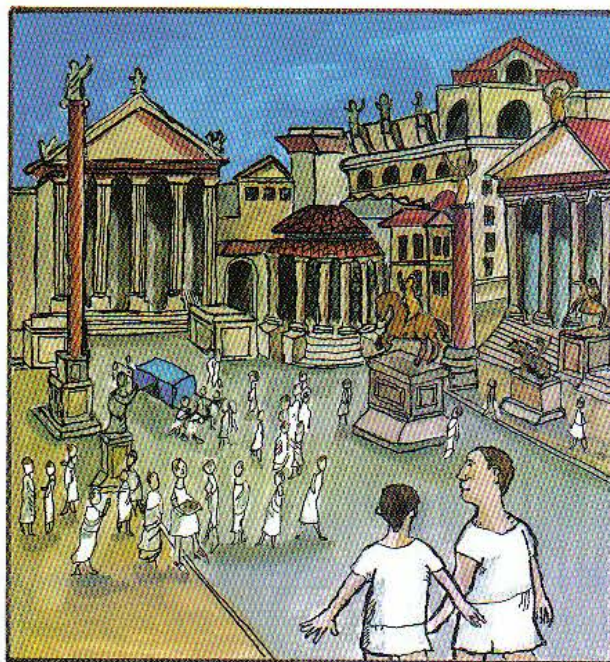
*Who were the *equitēs*?*

Chapter 19

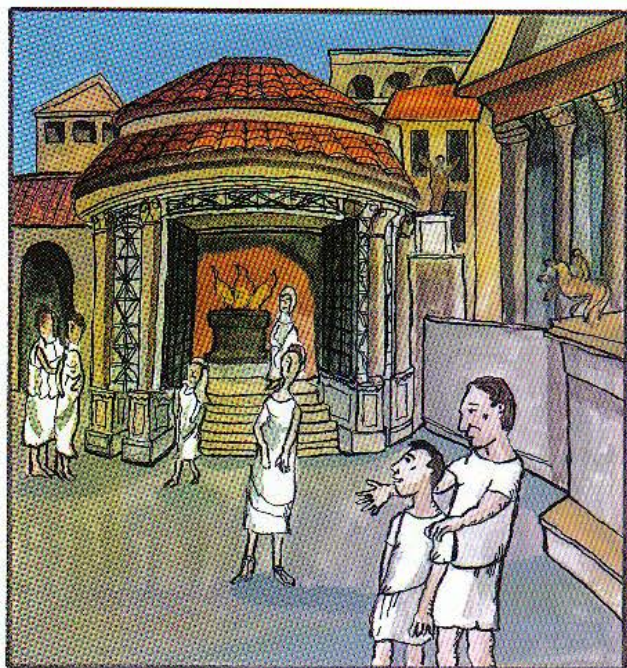
Roma



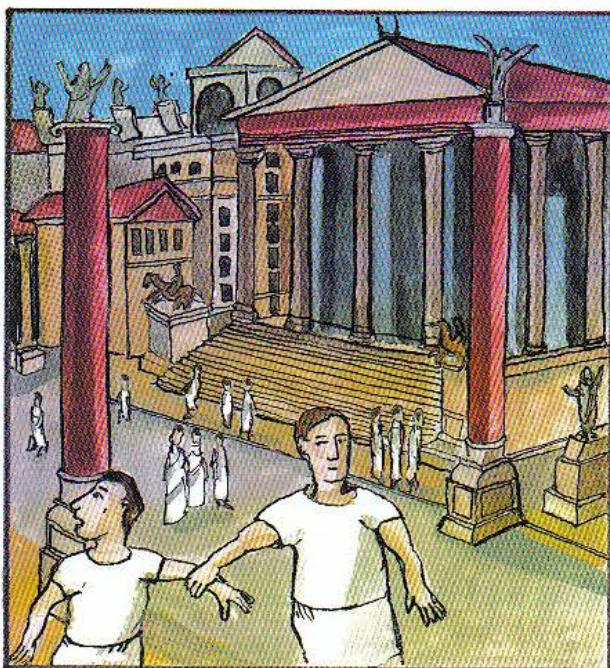
iter tandem cōnfectum erat. Quīntus paterque Rōmam intrāverant.



postridiē ad forum contendērunt; Quīntus aedificia tam splendida numquam vīderat.



tandem Flaccus filiō 'iam omnia spectāvistī,' inquit; 'venī ad lūdum Orbiliū.'



Quīntus nōn omnia spectāverat, sed pater eum ē forō dūxit.

A new tense is introduced in the cartoons. Which verbs are in the new tense? How is it formed and what does it mean?

Vocabulary 19

verbs

agō, agere, ēgī	I do; I drive
claudō, claudere, clausī	I shut
aperiō, aperire, aperuī	I open
apertus, -a, -um	open

adjectives

altus, -a, -um	high
cōfectus, -a, -um	finished
invītus, -a, -um	unwilling
medius, -a, -um	middle
sacer, sacra, sacrum	sacred
vacuus, -a, -um	empty
difficilis, difficile	difficult

nouns

aedificium, -ī, n.	building
vestimenta, -ōrum, n. pl	clothes
Iuppiter, Iovis, m.	Jupiter

adverbs

continuō	immediately
hūc... illūc	this way and that
paene	nearly
ubique	everywhere

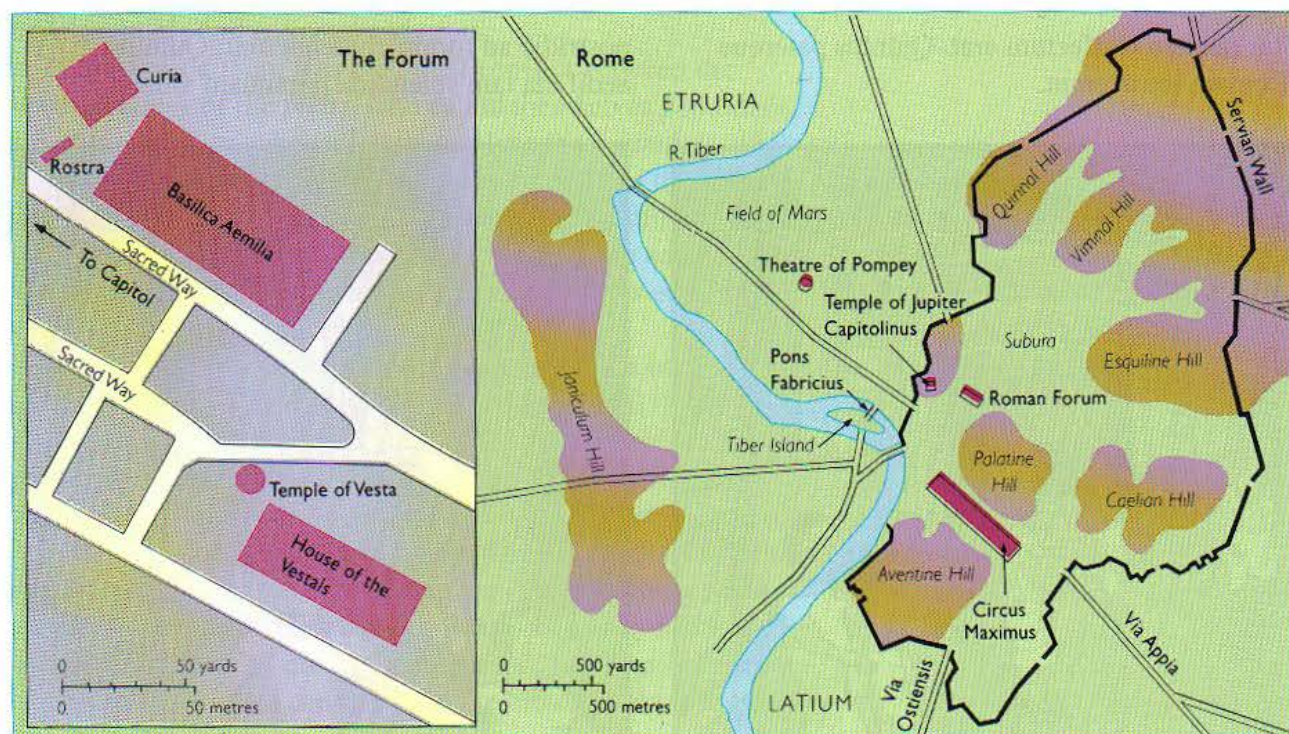
preposition

extrā + acc.	outside
---------------------	---------

conjunction

ubi	where
------------	-------

What do the following English words mean and from what Latin words is each derived: error, altitude, edifice, vestment, vacuum?



Rōma

dum Scintilla et Horātia Venusiae ānxiae manent, Quīntus
 paterque iam novem diēs Rōmam contenderant; montēs et flūmina
 trānsierant; iter difficile fuerat et labōriōsum. tandem Rōmā nōn
 longē aberant. Quīntus valdē fessus erat, sed pater 'nōlī dēspērāre,
 5 fili,' inquit; 'iter paene cōfectum est. Rōmā nōn longē absumus.'

Venusiae at Venusia



The Porta Appia

postrīdiē moenia urbis conspexērunt et festināvērunt ad portās.

nox iam vēnerat cum urbem intrāvērunt. parvam caupōnam
invēnērunt; cēnāvērunt et post cēnam continuō dormīvērunt.
prīmā lūce Flaccus Quīntum excitāvit et 'venī, Quīnte,' inquit;
10 'dēbēmus lūdum Orbiliū quaerere.' lentē prōcēdēbant per viās
urbis.

tandem in Viā Sacrā ambulābant et mox ad forum vēnerant.
nec Quīntus nec pater umquam viderant aedificia tam magnifica.
diū stābant attonitī; deinde omnia spectābant. hīc erat templum
15 Vestae, ubi Virginēs Vestālēs ignem perpetuum cūrābant; illīc erat
Basilica Aemilia, ubi magistrātūs iūs dicēbant; hīc erant rōstra,
ubi magistrātūs ōratiōnēs ad populum habēbant. illīc steterat
cūria; iam ruīnīs iacēbat, in tumultū ambusta. ā fronte erat mōns
Capitolīnus, ubi stābat ingēns templum Iovis.

20 omnia diū spectāverant, cum Flaccus 'venī, fili,' inquit,
'Rōmae diū manēbimus. omnia haec saepe vidēbis.' ā forō
discessērunt collemque ascendērunt; mox ad lūdum Orbiliū
advēnerant. extrā iānuam lūdī stetērunt. puerōs audīre poterant
recitantēs et Orbiliū eōs corrigentem; nōn tamen intrāvērunt.
25 Flaccus 'venī, Quīnte,' inquit; 'domicilium dēbēmus invenīre et
nova vestimenta emere.'

Quīntus paterque ē mediā urbe discessērunt et prōcēdēbant ad
Subūram, ubi pauperēs habitābant. ibi nūllae erant aedēs magnae
sed altae īnsulae, in quibus habitābant multae familiae. viae
30 sordidae erant et artae. multī hominēs hūc illūc currēbant; ubique
clāmor et tumultus. mox ad vestiārium vēnērunt; Flaccus Quīntō
togam praetextam et tunicam candidam ēmit; Quīntus, quī
vestimenta tam splendida numquam habuerat, patrī grātiās ēgit.
deinde in Subūram prōcessērunt et domicilium quaerēbant.

caupōnam inn

attonitī astonished

illīc there

magistrātūs (nom. pl.) the magistrates

iūs dicēbant dispensed justice

rōstra (n. pl.) the speaker's platform

cūria the senate house

ruīnīs in ruins; in tumultū in a riot

ambusta burnt; ā fronte in front

manēbimus we shall stay

vidēbis you will see

recitantēs reciting

corrigentem correcting

domicilium a lodging

aedēs houses

īnsulae blocks of flats

artae narrow

tumultus uproar

vestiārium a clothes shop

praetextam purple-bordered

grātiās ēgit thanked (gave thanks to)

Respondē Latīnē

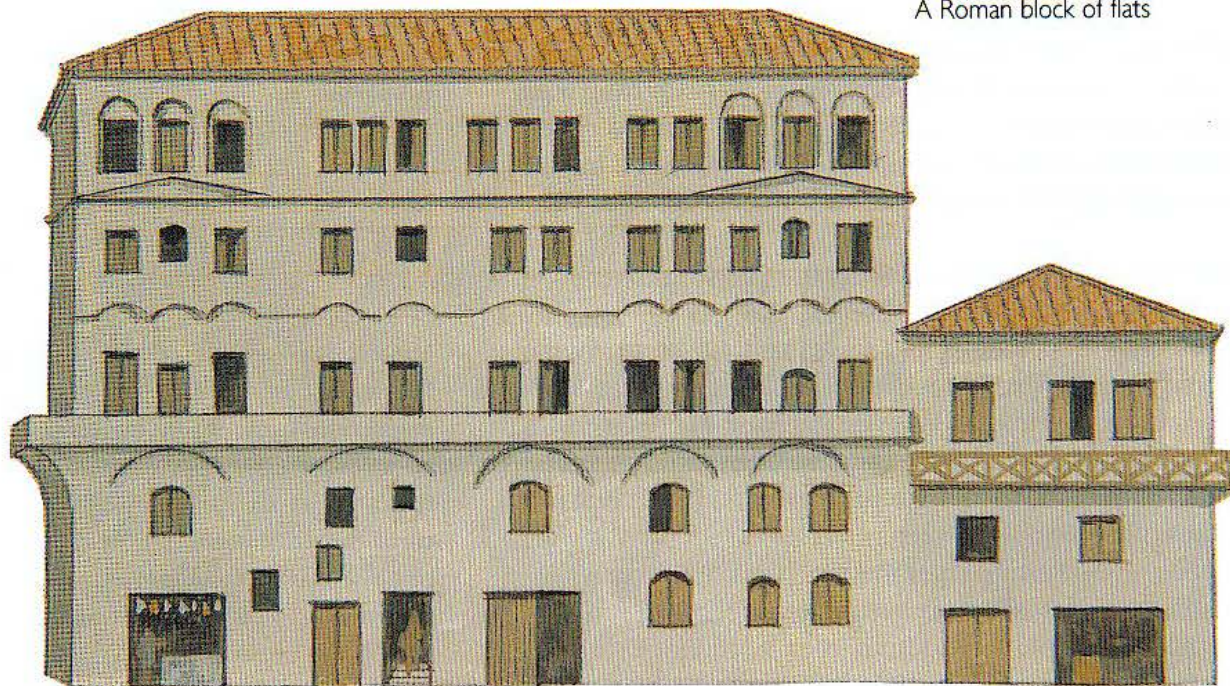
- 1 ubi Flaccus Quīntusque ad forum advēnērunt, cūr attonitī erant?
- 2 quid faciēbant Virginēs Vestālēs?
- 3 ubi (*where?*) magistrātūs iūs dīcēbant?
- 4 ubi Flaccus Quīntusque ad lūdum Orbiliī advēnērunt, quid audīvērunt?
- 5 quid ēmit Flaccus in vestiāriō?

Word-building

Learn the following compounds of **sum, esse, fui**:

absum, abesse, āfui	I am away from, I am absent
adsum, adesse, adfui	I am present
dēsum, dēesse, dēfui + dat.	I fail
īnsum, inesse, īnfui + dat.	I am in
intersum, interesse, interfui	I am among, I take part in
prōsum, prōdesse, prōfui + dat.	I benefit
supersum, superesse, superfui	I am left over, I survive

A Roman block of flats

**Quīntus domum novam invenit**

Translate the first paragraph and answer the questions below on the other two paragraphs, without translating

tandem Flaccus īnsulam intrāvit cuius iānua aperta erat iānitōremque quaerēbat. invēnit eum in aulā dormientem. ēbrius erat. Flaccus eum excitāvit et dīxit: 'ego fīliusque domum quaerimus; habēsne domicilium vacuum?' ille non surrēxit sed

5 Flaccō respondit: 'nūllum domicilium habeō vacuum. abī.' sīc dīxit; oculōs clausit iterumque dormīvit.

cuius of which
iānitōrem the doorkeeper
aulā courtyard
dormientem sleeping; **ēbrius** drunk
domicilium lodging

- pater filiusque in viam tristēs exierant, cum aliquis eōs
revocāvit; fēmina quaedam ē iānuā festināvit, anus rūgōsa, quae
'manēte' inquit; 'marītus meus caudex est et semper ēbrius.
10 errāvit. ūnum cēnāculum habēmus vacuum. venīte.'
dūxit eōs anhelāns ad summum tabulātum. ibi erat cēnāculum,
parvum et sordidum. iānitōris uxor 'ecce,' inquit; 'vīsne hoc
cēnāculum condūcere? quīque dēnāriōs tantum rogō.' Flaccus
irātus erat; 'nimium rogās,' inquit; 'cēnāculum parvum est et
15 sordidum. trēs dēnāriōs tibi dare volō.' illa 'trēs dēnāriōs dīcis,
furcifer? dā mihi quattuor dēnāriōs, sī cēnāculum condūcere vīs.'
Flaccus invītus concessit et quattuor dēnāriōs eī trādīdit. abiit
fēmina ad iānitōrem. Quīntus novam domum tristis spectāvit.

anus rūgōsa a wrinkled old woman
caudex blockhead
cēnāculum garret, attic room
anhelāns panting
summum tabulātum the top storey
condūcere to rent; **dēnāriōs** denarii
tantum only; **nimum** too much
furcifer thief
concessit gave in

- 1 What made Flaccus and Quintus go back into the *insula*? [2]
- 2 What did the doorkeeper's wife tell them? [4]
- 3 Where did she lead them? [2]
- 4 Describe the bargaining between her and Flaccus. [5]
- 5 Briefly describe the characters of the doorkeeper and his wife. [4]
- 6 How did Quintus feel about the garret? [1]

Fābella

Persōnae: Quīntus, Flaccus, iānitor, iānitōris uxor

*Quīntus Flaccusque per Subūram prōcēdunt, domicilium
quaerentēs.*

- Quīntus:** pater, mē manē. nōn possum tē vidēre in tantā turbā.
5 **Flaccus:** festīnā, Quīnte. tē trūde per turbam. ecce, fili, illius
īnsulae iānuā aperta est. venī mēcum.

Flaccus Quīntum in aulam īnsulae dūcit.

- Flaccus:** euge, adsumus. nunc dēbēmus iānitōrem quaerere.
(clāmat) iānitor! iānitor, ubi es?
10 **Quīntus:** nēmō respondet, pater. iānitor abest.
Flaccus: sine dubiō adest alicubi. dēbēmus eum quaerere, tū
illāc quaere, ego hāc.
Quīntus: pater, venī hūc. iānitōrem invēnī. in illō angulō
dormit.
15 **Flaccus:** veniō statim. iānitor, ēvigilā!

iānitor stertit; Flaccus eum vellicat.

- iānitor:** (ēvigilat) quid facis? cūr mē sic vellicās? abī! sine mē
dormīre. (iterum dormit)
Quīntus: quid facere dēbēmus, pater? homō plānē ēbrius est.
20 **Flaccus:** dēbēmus eum excitāre. tū, Quīnte, ad fontem festīnā
et urnam aquae mihi fer.

*Quīntus ad fontem currit reditque urnam aquae manibus
ferēs. Flaccus aquam in caput iānitōris īfundit. iānitor
exsilit, valdē irātus.*

quaerentēs looking for
mē manē wait for me
turbā crowd
tē trūde push (yourself)!

aulam courtyard

sine dubiō without doubt
alicubi somewhere or other
illāc that way; **hāc** this way
angulō corner

stertit is snoring; **vellicat** pinches
sine allow! let!

plānē plainly; **ēbrius** drunk

manibus in his hands
ferēs carrying; **caput** (n.) head
īfundit pours over; **exsilit** jumps up

- 25 **iānitor:** quid facis, furcifer? vīsne mē occidere? quid cupitis?
Flaccus: domicilium condūcere cupimus, iānitor.
iānitor: nūllum domicilium habeo vacuum. abīte! cūr mē
vexātis? sine mē dormire.

*iānitor recumbit et dormit. Flaccus Quintusque ex aulā trīstēs
ambulant. subitō fēmina ē iānuā currit et clāmat.*

- 30 **iānitōris uxor:** manēte, redite. errat marītus meus. caudex est et
semper ēbrius. ūnum cēnāculum habēmus vacuum. in
summō tabulātō est, nōn magnum sed mundum.

- iānitōris uxor anhelāns eōs ad gradūs dūcit. gradūs ascendunt
ad summum tabulātum. illa iānuam aperit cēnāculumque eis
ostendit et minūtum et sordidum, sub tegulīs situm.*

- iānitōris uxor:** ecce, amīcī, domicilium pulchrum, unde
prōspectum habētis ēgregium.
Flaccus: domicilium minūtum est et sordidum. quantum rogās?
40 **iānitōris uxor:** volō cēnāculum tibi vilī locāre. quīnque dēnāriōs
tantum rogō per mēsem.

Flaccus: nimium rogās. trēs dēnāriōs volō tibi dare.

- iānitōris uxor:** quid dīcis, furcifer? trēs dēnāriōs! nōlī nūgās
nārrāre. dā mihi quattuor dēnāriōs, sī vīs cēnāculum
45 condūcere.

Quīntus: pecūniam eī trāde, pater. nōn possumus alterum
domicilium invenire.

*Flaccus invitus quattuor dēnāriōs iānitōris uxōrī trādit; illa
discēdit triumphāns. Quīntus cēnāculum trīstis spectat.*

condūcere to rent

vexātis do you bother?

recumbit lies down again

marītus husband; **caudex** blockhead

cēnāculum garret

summō tabulātō the top floor

mundum clean, neat

anhelāns panting

gradūs (acc. pl.) steps

minūtum tiny

sub tegulīs under the roof tiles

situm sited, positioned

unde from where

prōspectum ēgregium an
outstanding view

quantum? how much?

vilī cheaply; **locāre** to let

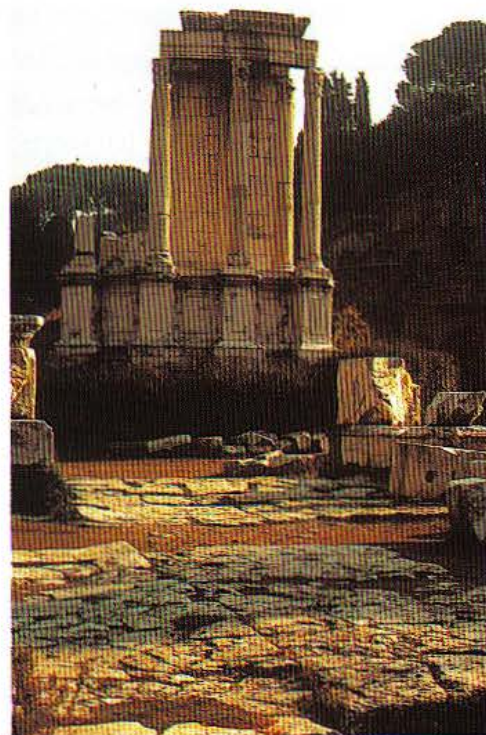
tantum only; **per mēsem** per
month; **alterum** another

triumphāns in triumph

The temple of Vesta, Rome

ROME

Rome was built on the left bank of the river Tiber about 25 km from where it flows into the sea. A small island in the river breaks up the strong current here and the water is shallow and easy to ford. A bridge to this island, the Pons Fabricius, had been built by Horace's time (in 62 BC). This is still standing and is in fact used by traffic. Rome's control of this part of the Tiber was of great importance since anyone travelling along the western side of Italy would almost certainly cross the river at this point. Thus Rome became a key centre for inland trade. Dangerous shoals in the river for a long time stopped Ostia, the port at the mouth of the Tiber, from becoming as important a harbour as the more distant Puteoli near Naples. But Rome was still able to engage in a flourishing trade abroad.



The famous seven hills of the city, especially the rocky Capitoline hill, made it comparatively safe from attack. The Roman orator and politician Cicero, who is soon to enter our story, praised the city's natural strength:

Romulus and the other Roman kings showed great wisdom in laying out the course of the wall along a line of hills which are high and sheer at every point. The one approach, which is between the Esquiline and Quirinal hills, is protected by a huge rampart and ditch. The Capitoline hill is so well fortified by its steep walls of rock that, even in the terrible time when the Gauls invaded, it remained safe and undamaged. The place chosen by Romulus is in addition plentifully supplied with springs, and even if the surrounding marshes are a breeding-ground for malaria, Rome is in fact a healthy site. For the hills channel the breezes and give shade to the valleys.

As Quintus walks with his father along the Sacred Way, the only road of any size in Rome, to the forum, he sees the temple of Vesta where a flame was always kept alight by the Vestal Virgins in honour of the goddess of the hearth, and the great temple of Jupiter on the Capitoline hill, built by Tarquin the Proud. He also passes by the law courts and the platform (*rōstra*) where magistrates stood to address the people. The senate house (*cūria*), the seat of government, had stood close to them on the north side of the forum. It had recently been burnt down by rioters. Horace has arrived in Rome at a very troubled time, as you will see.

The forum, Rome



The forum was certainly no longer the humble market-place which it had once been. Bankers and money-lenders had replaced the shop-keepers and it was now the busy heart of city life. Rome had almost a million inhabitants in Horace's day and it became a city of the greatest splendour. The first emperor, Augustus, boasted that he had found it brick and left it marble. But many squalid areas remained and Horace and his father find a room in one of these, the Subura.

This poor, over-crowded district lay between the Viminal and Esquiline hills. It was such a slum that Augustus, the first emperor, had a wall more than a hundred feet high built in his forum to stop it being seen! Here there were many high-rise blocks of flats of up to four or five storeys. In Horace's time a height limit of 60 feet was enforced, but even so, as the poet Juvenal wrote, these overcrowded, poorly built structures were liable to collapse:

We live in a city largely held up by thin props, for that is how the estate agent supports the tottering house. And when he plasters over the gaping cracks on the long-neglected wall, he tells the occupants not to worry and to sleep soundly, though the place is about to crash down.

or to burn:

If there is a fire panic at the bottom of the stairs, the furthest tenant will go up in smoke, the one who is only protected from the rain by tiles where the soft doves lay their eggs.

A bend in the Tiber enclosed the Campus Martius (Field of Mars), on the other side of the Capitoline hill, to the north-west. This was a huge open space used for military and athletic exercises. The theatre of Pompey was near by, the first stone theatre in Rome. This was completed in 55 BC and could seat an audience of 9,000 to 10,000. Plays both comic and tragic were performed here. The huge Circus Maximus stood between the Palatine and Aventine hills. Here chariot races took place for the amusement of a vast and uncritical audience. The taste of the average Roman was for the violent, sensational and crude.

Rome was the capital city of a great area. Suggest modern equivalents, e.g. in London or Washington, for the buildings described above.

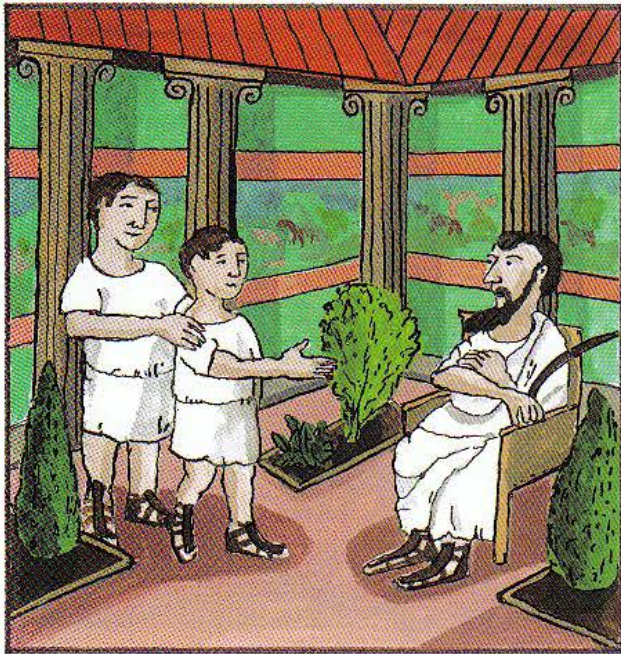
An inscription on a gravestone from Rome reads:

All a person needs. Bones reposing sweetly, I am not anxious about suddenly being short of food. I do not suffer from arthritis, and I am not indebted because of being behind in my rent. In fact my lodgings are permanent – and free!

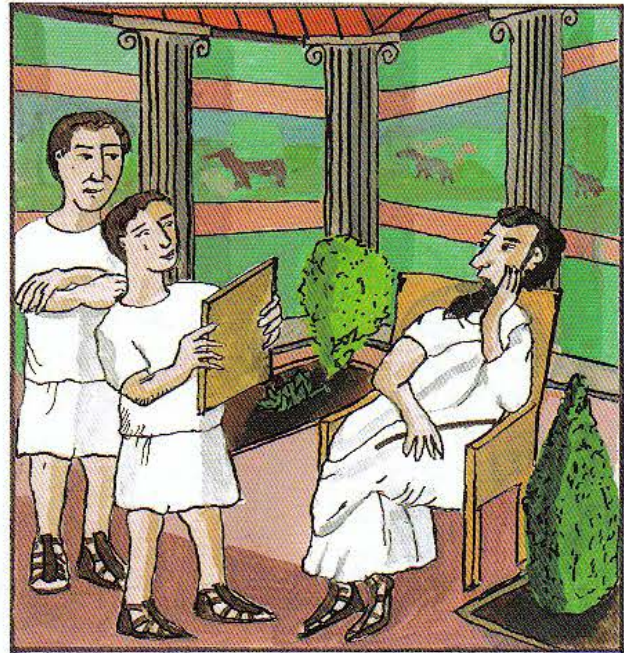
What does this inscription tell us about the life the dead person has escaped?

Chapter 20

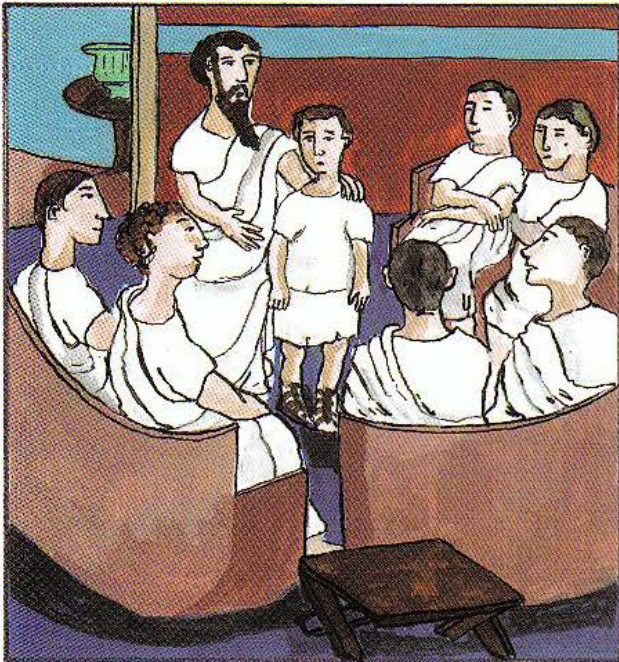
Ludus Orbilii



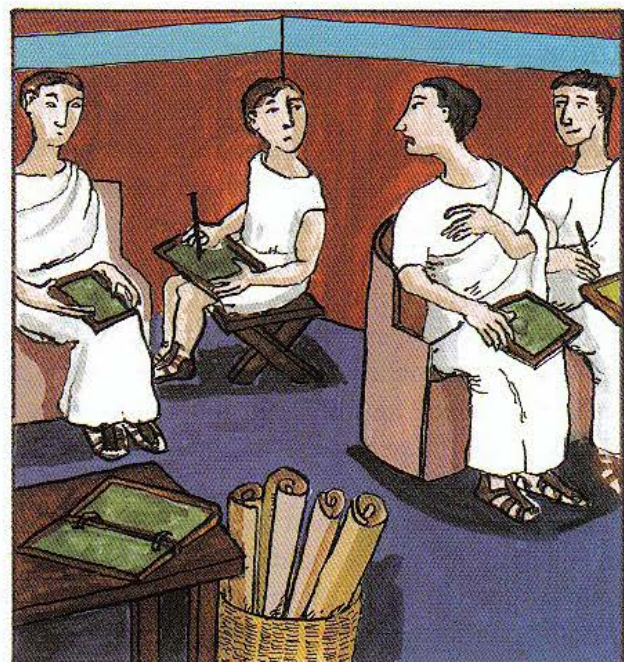
Orbilius ^{porta} barbam ^{pitā} longam habēbat vultumque ^{vakava} severum; in manū ^{hōmīa} ferulā ^{pitā} gerēbat.



Orbilius ^{o jentaa} librum Quīntō tradidit iussitque eum multōs versūs legere.



Orbilius Quīntum in medium dūxit. 'ecce, puerī,' inquit, 'novum discipulum vōbīs commendō: nōmen eī est Quīntus Horātius Flaccus.'



Quīntus miser in angulō scholae sedēbat; interdum puer quīdam sē vertit et nārēs fastīdiōsē corrūgāvit.

Vocabulary 20

verbs

appellō, appellāre, appellāvī	I call (by name)
recitō, recitāre, recitāvī	I recite, read aloud
rīdeō, rīdere, risī	I laugh
induō, induere, induī	I put on
intellegō, intellegere, intellēxī	I understand

nouns

poēta, -ae, m.	poet
grātia, -arum, f. pl.	thanks
grātiās agō + dat.	I thank
schola, -ae, f.	school, schoolroom
discipulus, -ī, m.	pupil
liber, librī, m.	book
gradus, gradūs, m.	step
manus, manūs, f.	hand
versus, versūs, m.	verse
vultus, vultūs, m.	face, expression

adjectives and adverbs

rēctus, -a, -um	straight
rēctē	rightly, correctly
sevērus, -a, -um	severe
facilis, facile	easy
facile	easily

What do the following English words mean:

recitation, risible, intellect, library, manufacture, gradually?

From what Latin words is each derived?

Lūdus Orbiliī

prīmā lūce Flaccus Quīntum excitāvit. ille sē lāvit et novam togam induit. pater filiusque in viam dēscendērunt et festinābant ad Orbiliī lūdum. Flaccus capsulam Quīntī manibus ferēbat partēsque paedagōgī agēbat. celeriter contendērunt et ad lūdum
5 mox advēnerant.

iānuā apertā erat; intrāvērunt et Orbiliū quaerēbant. invēnērunt eum in aulā sedentem. vir gravis erat; longam barbā habēbat vultumque sevērū; in manū ferulam gerēbat. Flaccus accessit et 'ecce!' inquit, 'magister; filiū meū Quīntum ad tē
10 dūcō.' ille Quīntum inspēxit et 'venī hūc, Quīnte,' inquit, 'et pauca mihi respondē.'

Orbilius multa Quīntum rogāvit, primum dē rēbus Rōmānīs; 'quis' inquit 'Rōmā condidit? quis Tarquiniū Superbū Rōmā expulit? quandō Hannibal in Italiā invāsīt?' et multa alia.

15 Quīntus facile respondēre poterat. deinde Orbilius librum eī trādidit iussitque eum legere; Quīntus librum manibus accēpit et facile eum legēbat. Orbilius 'euge,' inquit, 'puer bene legere potest.' deinde librum Graecē scriptū Quīntō trādidit. Flaccus ānxius erat; ad Orbiliū prōcessit; 'filiū meū' inquit 'Graecē
20 nec dicere nec legere potest.' Orbilius attonitus erat; 'quid?'

capsulam satchel

manibus in his hands

partēs paedagōgī the role of tutor

in aulā in the courtyard

sedentem sitting; **barbā** beard

ferulam cane

rēbus Rōmānīs Roman history

invāsīt invaded

euge! good!

Graecē scriptū written in Greek

inquit, 'quid? puer Graecē nec dicere nec legere potest? dēbet statim litterās Graecās discere.' librum Quīntō trādidit Graecē scrīptum et iussit eum omnēs litterās celeriter discere.

- 25 cēterī puerī iam advēnerant. Orbilius 'venī, puer,' inquit; 'tempus est studēre.' Quīntum in scholam dūxit. ubi intrāvērunt, omnēs puerī surrēxērunt magistrumque salūtāvērunt. ille Quīntum in medium dūxit et 'ecce, puerī,' inquit, 'novum discipulum vōbīs commendō. nōmen eī est Quīntus Horātius Flaccus. barbarus est: Graecē nec dicere nec legere potest.'
- 30 omnēs puerī rīdēbant. ille 'tacēte, puerī,' inquit. 'Quīnte, ad angulum ī et litterās Graecās disce.' itaque Quīntus in angulō scholae sedēbat litterīsque Graecīs studēbat. Orbilius cēterōs Iliadem Homēri docēbat; omnēs Homērum facile intellegēbant; omnēs versūs Graecōs rēctē recitābant. interdum puerōrum
- 35 quīdam sē vertit et nārēs fastidiōsē corrūgāvit. Quīntus valdē miser erat; domum redire cupiēbat.

commendō I introduce

barbarus a barbarian

angulum corner

interdum from time to time

nārēs corrūgāvit turned up his nose

fastidiōsē disdainfully

A Roman boy
with his teacher



Word-building

Learn the following compounds of **dō, dare, dedi**:

addō, addere, addidī	I add
condō, condere, condidī	I found
crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī + dat.	I believe, trust
dēdō, dēdere, dēdidī	I give up, surrender
perdō, perdere, perdidī	I lose, waste
prōdō, prōdere, prōdidī	I betray
reddō, reddere, reddidī	I give back, return
trādō, trādere, trādidī	I hand over

Note that although **dō** is 1st conjugation, all its compounds are 3rd.

Quintus miser est

Translate the first paragraph and answer the questions on the second without translating

dum Orbilius Iliadem Homēri cēteris expōnēbat, Quīntus in angulō scholae litterīs Graecīs studēbat. merīdiē magister puerōs dīmīsīt et iussit eōs in aulā paulīsper lūdere. omnēs laetī in aulam cucurrērunt. dum cēterī lūdēbant, Quīntus sōlus stābat; nēmō
 5 cum eō lūdēbat, nēmō eī quicquam dīxit. tandem puer quīdam ad eum accessit et 'nōlī dēspērāre, Quīnte,' inquit; 'Orbilius sevērus est, sed doctus. puerōs ignāvōs sevērē pūnit; eum appellāmus plāgōsum Orbiliū. sed sī dīligenter studēs, cōmis est.' Quīntus eī respondēre volēbat, sed eō ipsō tempore Orbilius puerōs in
 10 scholam revocāvit.

post merīdiem poētae Latīnō studēbant; Quīntus aliquid intellegere poterat. tandem Orbilius puerōs dīmīsīt. Quīntus cum patre trīstis ad Subūrā redībat; 'ō pater,' inquit, 'cēterī puerī magnī et ingeniōsī sunt; omnēs Graecē dīcere possunt. ego
 15 parvus sum et vix quicquam intellegere possum. et magister valdē sevērus est.' ille 'nōlī dēspērāre, cāre fili,' inquit; 'tū dīligenter studēre cupīs. celeriter discēs.'

expōnēbat was explaining

angulō corner

merīdiē at midday

paulīsper for a little while

quicquam anything

doctus learned, clever

ignāvōs idle; **pūnit** he punishes

plāgōsum flogger; **cōmis** friendly

aliquid something

ingeniōsī clever

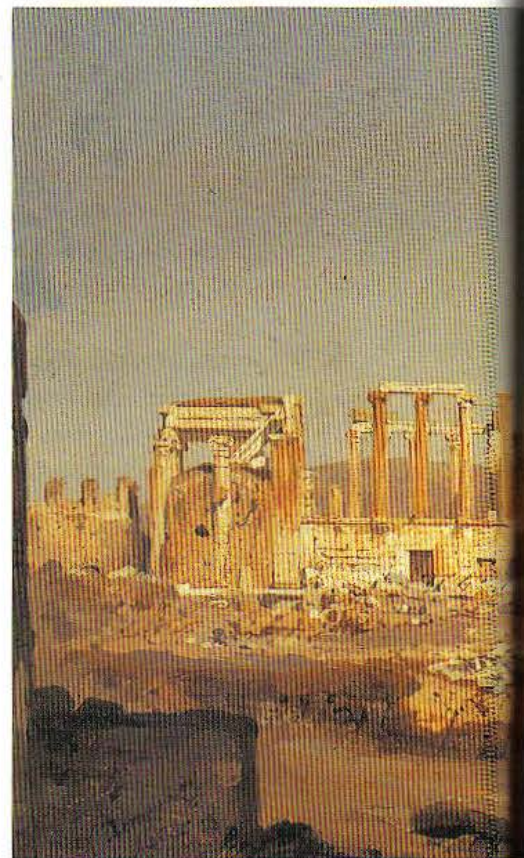
discēs you will learn

- 1 Why were things slightly better for Quintus in the afternoon? [3]
- 2 Why did Quintus despair? [5]
- 3 How did his father comfort him? [4]
- 4 List all the things about Orbilius' school (a) which seem familiar to you; (b) which seem unfamiliar. [3/3]

GREECE AND ROME

Why is it so important that Quintus masters the Greek language? You will remember that when the Greeks captured and sacked the city of Troy, Aeneas and his men fled from its smouldering ruins. They established themselves in Italy after many struggles and hardships, intermarried with Italians and founded the Roman race. The Romans established their rule over the whole of Greece in 197 BC. It was a kind of revenge for the defeat which their legendary ancestors had suffered a thousand years before. But the victors were in fact not at all vindictive. The Roman general declared at the Games at Corinth the following year that all Greek states were now free and independent. The enthusiastic shouting of the liberated peoples was so loud that the birds flying overhead are said to have fallen to the ground stunned.

The Romans' attitude to the Greeks was strangely mixed in Horace's day. On the one hand, they despised the present weakness of a nation which had driven huge forces of invading



Persians from their native soil five centuries before, and more recently had conquered the known world under Alexander the Great. On the other hand, they enormously admired their great art and literature. Educated Romans were bilingual, speaking both Greek and Latin, and Quintus was expected to be the same. When he sails to Athens to complete his education in Greek philosophy, he makes a journey that many Romans had travelled before him.

The extraordinary intellectual and creative inventiveness of the Greeks dazzled the Romans. Their discoveries in mathematics (Pythagoras), geometry (Euclid), astronomy (Ptolemy), science (Archimedes) and natural history (Aristotle), their mastery of the art of speaking (Demosthenes), their unrivalled architecture and sculpture (Pheidias, Praxiteles), their great philosophical tradition (Plato) – all seemed wonderful to the Roman nation.

It was perhaps in literature especially that the superiority of the Greeks lay. The poems of Homer, the tragic plays of Aeschylus, Sophocles and Euripides from the fifth century BC, the historical writings of 'the father of history' Herodotus and of his successor Thucydides, and a whole treasury of lyric poetry – here was a great literary inheritance that gave the Romans everything to study and little to invent. So while Rome had captured Greece, Greece captivated Rome. As Horace himself put it: *Graecia capta ferum victorem cēpit* (Captured Greece captured her wild conqueror).

The Acropolis, Athens





The Pont du Gard, southern France.
The people walking on the top show
the scale of the structure

However, the Romans still felt superior, even while they admired. They had their feet firmly planted on the ground compared with the talented but unreliable Greeks. They rightly saw themselves as a practical and realistic race in contrast with their neighbours across the Adriatic. Their greatest works of art were impressive but heavy feats of engineering. Their major achievement was not to create but to conquer and rule. In the *Aeneid*, Virgil puts in the mouth of Aeneas' father Anchises a fine statement of the world of difference that lay between the two nations:

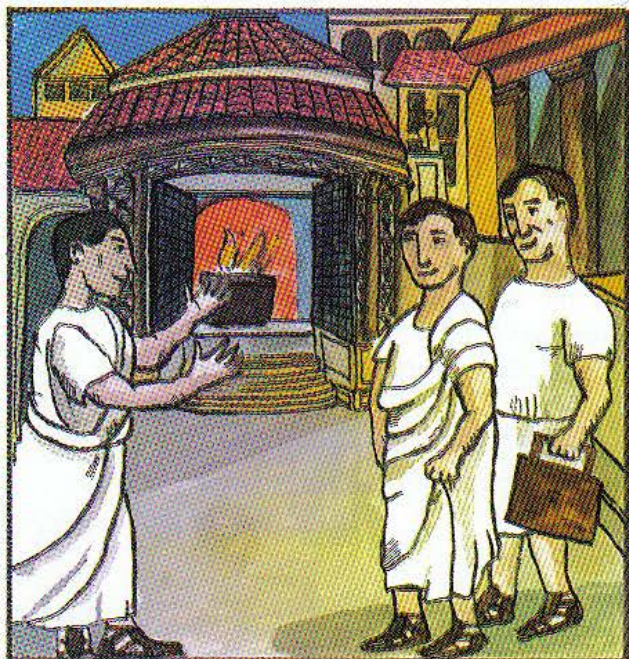
Others [i.e. the Greeks] will hammer out the bronze so that it breathes in softer lines, others will transform marble into living faces, will plead cases in the law courts with superior skill, will trace the movements of the planets with the rod and tell of the rising constellations. You, Roman, must bear in mind how to rule the peoples of the earth under your command (that will be your art), how to create peace and then civilization, how to spare those who submit and to beat down proud resisters.

There have always been some people who admired the Greeks more than the Romans. From what you have read so far, what is your view?

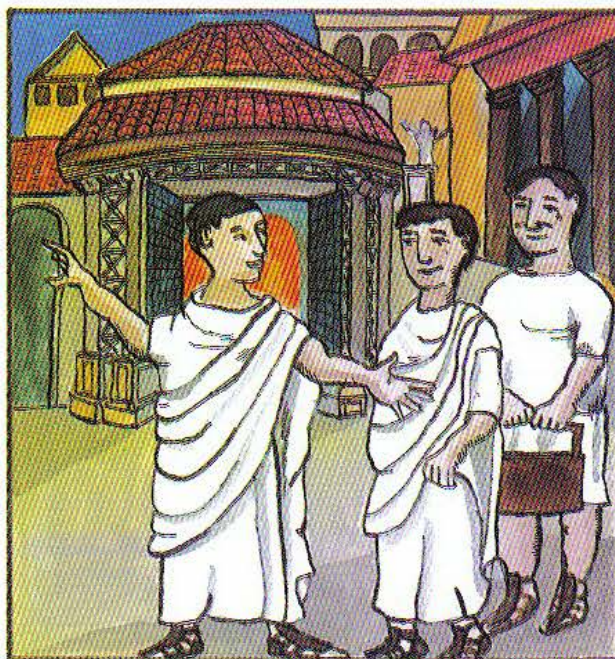
Look up in an encyclopaedia two of the famous Greeks mentioned in the third and fourth paragraphs above and write a paragraph on each of them.

Chapter 21

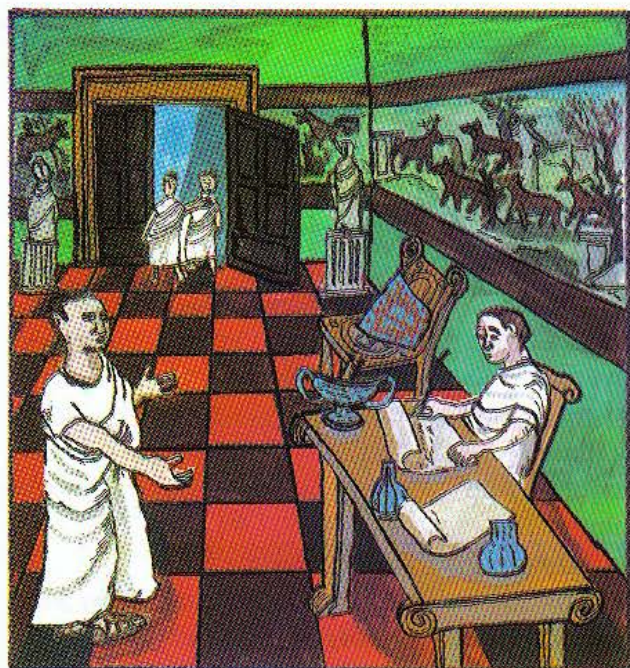
Marcus Quintum domum suam invitat



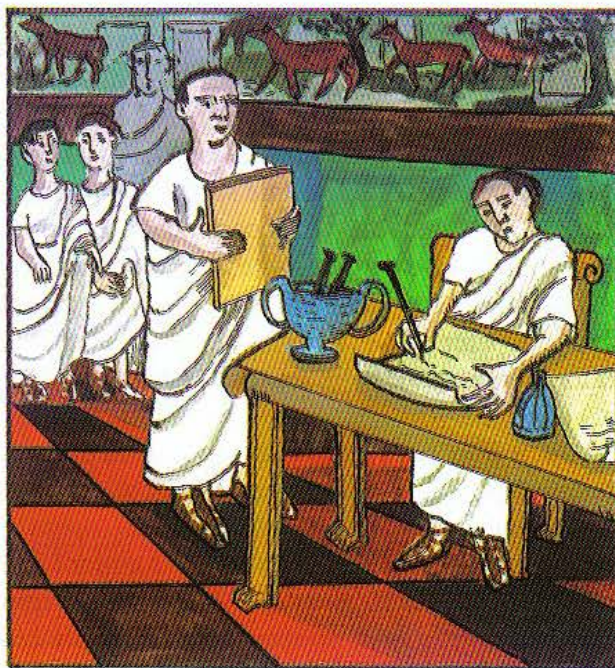
posterō diē Quīntus cum patre domum
ambulābat cum accurrit Marcus.



ille 'manē, Quīnte,' inquit; 'vīsne domum mēcum
venīre patremque meum vīsere?'



Marcus Quīntum domum dūxit; patrem in
tablinō invēnit.



Marcī pater epistolam scrībae dictābat dē
rēpūblicā.

Vocabulary 21

verbs

salvē, salvēte!	greetings!
sinō, sinere, sīvī	I allow
vīsō, vīsere, vīsī	I visit
cōficiō, cōficere, cōfēcī	I finish
intersum, interesse, interfuī + dat.	I am among, I take part in

adjectives

clārus, -a, -um	clear, bright, famous
ingeniōsus, -a, -um	talented, clever
lātus, -a, -um	wide, broad

adverb

praetereā	moreover
------------------	----------

pronoun

aliquis, aliquid	someone, something
-------------------------	--------------------

nouns

epistola, -ae, f.	letter
dominus, -ī, m.	master
ātrium, -ī, n.	hall
ingenium, -ī, n.	character, talents
studium, -ī, n.	study
tablinum, -ī, n.	study (the room)
aedēs, aedium, f. pl.	house
ōrātor, ōrātōris, m.	orator, speaker
soror, sorōris, f.	sister
diēs, diēī, m.	day
merīdiēs, merīdiēī, m.	midday
cotidiē	every day
rēs, rei, f.	thing, matter, property
rēspūblica, reipūblīcae, f.	the republic
rē vērā	in truth, in fact, really
spēs, speī, f.	hope

Marcus Quīntum domum suam invitat

cotidiē Flaccus filium ad lūdum Orbiliū ducēbat. Quīntus celeriter discēbat, et mox Graecē et dīcere et scribere poterat. Orbilius eum laudābat, quod bonus discipulus erat. prīmum Quīntus valdē miser erat. cēterī enim puerī eum vitābant nec cum eō lūdere
 5 volēbant; tandem tamen is quī prīmō diē eum salutāverat accessit et 'Quīnte,' inquit, 'mihi nōmen est Marcus. nōn dēbēs sōlus hīc stāre. venī mēcum comitēsque salutā.' Quīntum ad comitēs dūxit et 'amīcī,' inquit, 'volō vōbīs commendāre Quīntum Horātium Flaccum. salutāte eum et sinite eum lūdīs nostrīs interesse.' cēterī
 10 puerī Marcum suspiciēbant, quod puer erat magnus et lautus; praetereā pater eius erat vir īsignis, quī cōsul fuerat et clārus ōrātor. itaque omnēs Quīntum salutāverunt et eum sīverunt lūdīs suīs interesse.

paucīs post diēbus ubi Orbilius puerōs dīmīsit, Quīntus
 15 domum ambulābat, cum accurrit Marcus. 'Quīnte,' inquit, 'vīsne domum mēcum venīre patremque meum vīsere?' Quīntus verēcundus erat; 'rē vērā' inquit 'mē domum tuam vocās? nōne pater tuus rēbus occupātus est?' ille respondit: 'pater meus semper occupātus est. semper tamen cupit amīcōs meōs vidēre.
 20 trīstis est; hōc annō soror mea, Tullia, dēliciae patris, periit. adhūc eam lūget sed ubi amīcīs meis occurrit, hilarior fit. venī.'

forum trānsiērunt et montem Palātīnum ascendērunt. mox ad Marcī aedēs advēnērunt. Marcus iānuam pulsāvit; iānitor iānuam

vitābant avoided
is quī the one who . . .

commendāre to introduce

suspiciēbant looked up to
lautus smart; **īsignis** distinguished

verēcundus shy
rēbus occupātus occupied by things,
 busy
dēliciae (f. pl.) the darling
lūget is mourning
hilarior fit he becomes more
 cheerful; **pulsāvit** knocked

25 aperuit et Marcum salutāvit; 'salvē, domine,' inquit; 'intrā.' Marcus eum rogāvit: 'ubi est pater?' ille 'pater tuus' inquit 'est in tablīnō. occupātus est. epistolās enim scribae dictat.'

scribae to his secretary
dictat is dictating

Marcus Quīntum in ātrium dūxit. ille numquam aedēs tam magnificās viderat. ātrium erat et lātum et altum; in omnibus lateribus erant magnae iānuae. Marcus Quīntum dūxit ad iānuam quae ā fronte stābat et pulsāvit. aliquis vōce blandā 'intrā' inquit.
30 Marcus iānuam aperuit et Quīntum in tablīnum dūxit.

lateribus sides
ā fronte in front (of them)
blandā pleasant



A grand Roman atrium

Respondē Latīnē

- 1 cūr Orbilius Quīntum laudāvit?
- 2 cūr miser erat Quīntus?
- 3 cūr Marcum suspiciēbant (*looked up to*) cēterī puerī?
- 4 ubi erant aedēs Marcī?
- 5 ubi ad aedēs advēnērunt, quid faciēbat Marcī pater?

Word-building

Learn the following compounds of **pōnō**, **pōnere**, **posuī** I put, place:

compōnō , compōnere , composuī	I put together, compose
dēpōnō , dēpōnere , dēposuī	I put down
dispōnō , dispōnere , disposuī	I put in different places, arrange
expōnō , expōnere , exposuī	I put out, explain
impōnō , impōnere , imposuī	I put into, put on
repōnō , repōnere , reposuī	I put back

Marcus Quīntum patrī commendat

Translate the first paragraph of the passage below and answer the questions on the second

pater Marcī prope mēnsam stābat; vultum trīstem habēbat et
 anxium sed benevolum; togam praetextam gerēbat tabulamque in
 manū tenēbat. ubi Marcus intrāvit, eī arrīsīt et ‘manē paulīsper,’
 inquit; ‘ego epistolam dictō ad Atticum dē rēbus pūblicīs.’ Marcus
 5 Quīntō susurrāvit: ‘Atticus est amīcus intimus meī patris; pater
 semper eī scrībīt dē rēbus pūblicīs.’ iam Marcī pater epistolam
 cōnfēcerat et scribae dixit: ‘epistolam statim signā et cursōrī
 trāde.’

Cicerō ad puerōs sē vertit. ‘venī hūc, Marce,’ inquit, ‘et
 10 amīcum tuum mihi commendā.’ Marcus Quīntum ad Cicerōnem
 dūxit et ‘ecce, pater,’ inquit, ‘volō amīcum meum Quīntum
 Horātium Flaccum tibi commendāre. puer valdē ingeniōsus est.
 Orbilius magnam spem pōnit in ingeniō eius.’ Cicerō ad Quīntum
 sē vertit et eī arrīsīt; ‘salvē, Quīnte,’ inquit; ‘gaudeō quod fīlius
 15 meus amīcum tam ingeniōsum habet.’ deinde pauca Quīntum
 rogāvit dē studiīs; ille studia bene exposuit. Cicerō ‘euge,’ inquit;
 ‘Marcus vērūm dīcit; puer rē vērā ingeniōsus es. sī vīs, tibi licet
 librōs meōs inspīcere. Marce, dūc Quīntum ad bibliothēcam.’

mēnsam a table
benevolum benevolent, kindly
praetextam purple-bordered
arrīsīt smiled at
paulīsper for a little
susurrāvit whispered
intimus closest
scribae to his secretary
signā seal! **cursōrī** to my courier

tibi licet you may
bibliothēcam library

- 1 When Cicero turns to the boys, what does he tell
 Marcus to do? [2]
- 2 When Marcus introduces Quintus to him, why is
 Cicero pleased? [2]
- 3 How does he know that Marcus told the truth
 about Quintus? [3]
- 4 What does he tell Marcus to do? [2]

CICERO

The young Cicero

Marcus Tullius Cicero, the father of Quintus' friend Marcus, was born in 106 BC near Arpinum, a little hill town about 100 km from Rome. His father was a wealthy member of the local nobility, but his family had never played any part in politics in Rome. Cicero proved a very bright child and his father sent him to the best teachers in Rome and then to university in Greece, where he studied law, oratory (rhetoric) and philosophy.

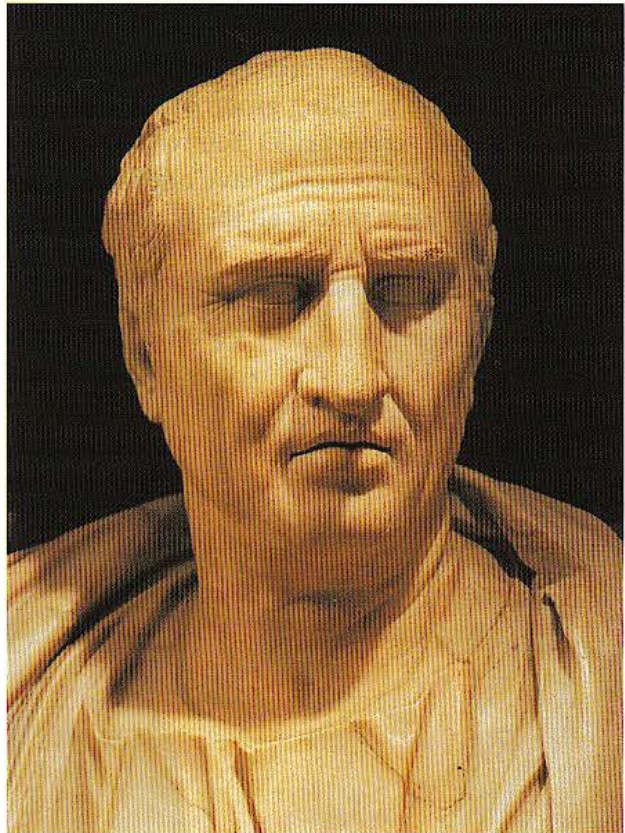
A series of terrible wars was tearing the Roman world apart for much of Cicero's life. When he was seventeen, he himself fought in one of these wars, Rome's conflict with her Italian allies (see the background section of Part I, chapter 15). Rome emerged victorious from this, but now a bloody succession of

civil wars was to begin. These were fought between her great generals in a struggle for power. Some of these generals claimed to be supporting the rule of the senate against the attacks of popular politicians. Others thought that the present system of government no longer worked and wished to reform it in the interests of the people. Cicero tried throughout his life to prop up the old system, but it was doomed to collapse.

Cicero the barrister

The young Cicero was ambitious and decided to make his way by practising in the law courts as a barrister. He did well from the start and in 70 BC leapt to fame when the people of Sicily asked him to prosecute their ruthless Roman governor, Verres, who had plundered the island for personal gain. Verres had said when he was elected that he needed to govern Sicily for three years. One year was to cover his election expenses (he had bribed the electors), one year was to get enough money to secure acquittal when he was prosecuted for misgovernment (he intended to bribe the jury) and one year was to make some profit!

Cicero was taking a big risk since Verres was a noble, and had many powerful friends. But he conducted the case so brilliantly that Verres fled into exile before it was even over. So Cicero was acknowledged to be the leading barrister in Rome at the age of thirty-six.



Cicero

Cicero the consul

Cicero had already been elected quaestor in 76 BC and so was a member of the senate. But he was always looked on with suspicion by the old Roman nobility because he was born a member of the equestrian class (a knight). No one could become a consul until he was forty-three, since much experience was necessary for the post. Cicero became consul at the earliest possible age in 63 BC, but the nobility still despised him as a *novus homō*, a self-made man who was not one of them.

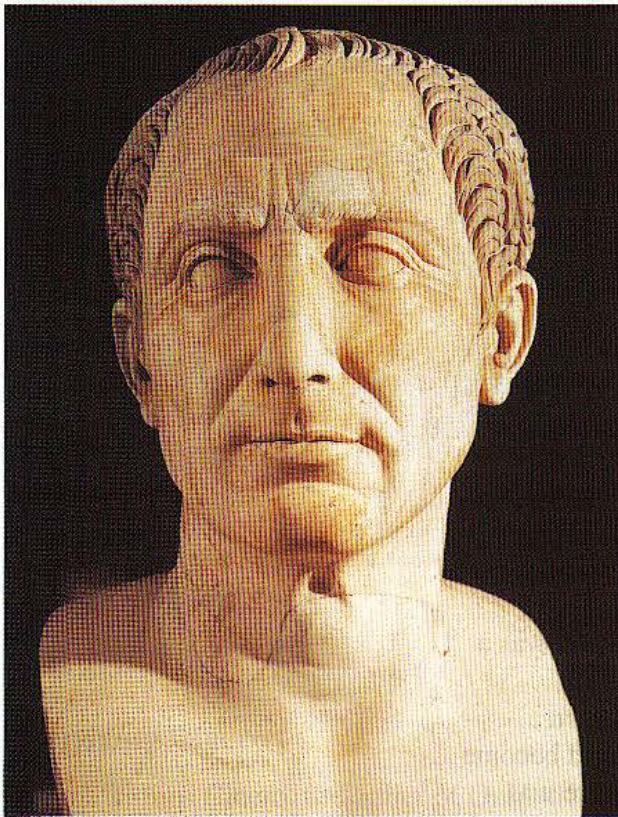
While Cicero was consul, a young noble called Catiline, who had failed in his attempts to become consul himself, tried to overthrow the government by force. Cicero acted decisively. He arrested and executed Catiline's chief supporters in Rome and defeated his army in Etruria. He was hailed by the people as *pater patriae*, and never tired of reminding others of this achievement.

The senators and knights had drawn closer together while they united against the conspiracy, and Cicero hoped to keep this

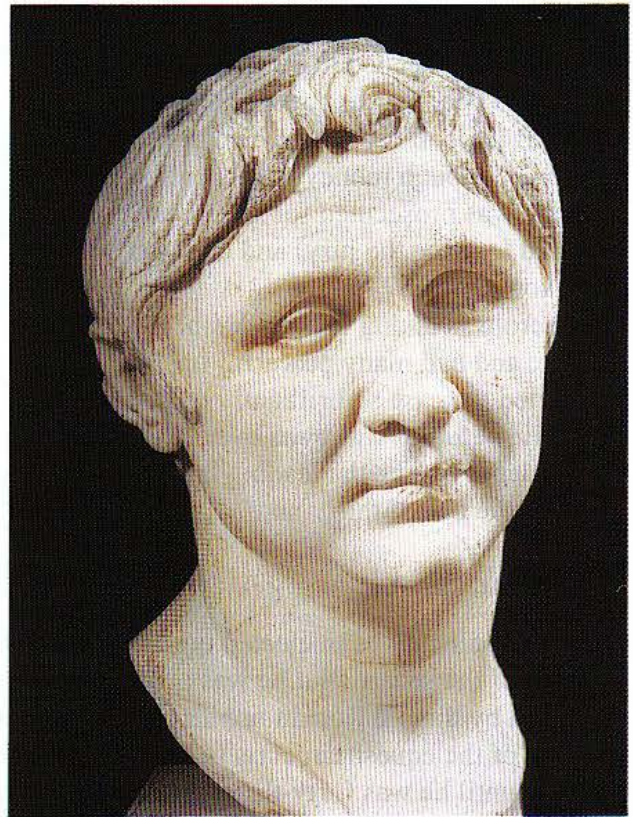
alliance working. His political aim was to maintain the *concordia ordinum* (the harmony of the senatorial and equestrian classes), but this was a dream never to be fulfilled.

Three powerful men

The three most powerful men in the Roman world were now Gaius Julius Caesar, Marcus Licinius Crassus (whom we saw in chapter 14 leading an army through Venusia) and Gnaeus Pompey, whom Cicero admired as a man and supported as the champion of the knights. In 60 BC these three formed a political alliance called the First Triumvirate (a ruling group of three men) and brushed the authority of the senate aside. You will be reading more about this in chapter 25. Cicero would have nothing to do with them, but this did not worry them much; all the power was in their hands.



Gaius Julius Caesar



Gnaeus Pompey

Caesar was consul in 59 BC and then went out to govern Gaul, where he achieved famous conquests. Meanwhile Rome was becoming a dangerous and frightening place to live. Political gangs were carrying on a reign of terror and the leader of one of them, Clodius, prepared to prosecute Cicero for executing Catiline's supporters illegally. Cicero panicked and fled to Greece. He was allowed back the next year and given a warm welcome by the people of Italy, but he soon realized that it was the Triumvirs who

had let him return and that he had to do what they told him. He was no longer independent and was deeply ashamed of the fact.

Then the Triumvirate began to fall to pieces. Caesar and Pompey drifted apart and Crassus was defeated and killed at Carrhae in 53 BC by the Parthians, against whom he was marching in chapter 14 with high hopes of conquest. Cicero himself was sent in 51 BC, very much against his will, to govern a remote province called Cilicia. Here he governed fairly but not very firmly and won a minor military victory of which he was extremely proud, although no one at Rome took it very seriously.

Civil war

He returned home in 50 BC to find that civil war between Caesar and Pompey could not be long delayed. For a time he sat on the fence. Caesar took the trouble to visit him to try to win him over, but in the end he decided to join Pompey's army in Greece. Here he was given nothing to do. When Caesar defeated Pompey at the battle of Pharsalus (48 BC), Cicero was stunned and his political hopes were destroyed. He returned to Italy and was soon reconciled to Caesar, but he now lived largely in retirement. He entered upon the political scene again four years later, however, after the murder of Julius Caesar. As we shall see, this resulted in his death.

Cicero the man

Cicero was one of the most remarkable men who ever lived. He was a brilliant orator, barrister and writer, a philosopher and a capable, if uninspired, poet. He stuck to his principles as a statesman and gave up his life for them.

He was also a great letter writer. After his death, his letters were collected and published in thirty-five books. Sixteen of these are to his family and friends (some with replies from men such as Caesar and Pompey); sixteen are to his closest friend Atticus, to whom he was writing when Quintus met him; and three are to his brother Quintus. Cicero's letters throw an extraordinarily vivid light on the Rome of his day.

Here is part of a letter written to his brother Quintus in February 56 BC, the year after he had returned from exile to find the political gangs at work. Clodius' gang had destroyed Cicero's house on the Palatine hill during his exile, but he received compensation by decree of the senate and quickly rebuilt it. The letter describes a meeting of the people, before whom Clodius was prosecuting the rival gang-leader Milo for using violence in politics. Pompey came forward to speak for Milo:

On 6 February Milo appeared in court. Pompey spoke, or rather tried to. For as soon as he got up, the gangs of Clodius raised a shout, and this went on throughout his whole speech –

he was interrupted not only by uproar but by insults and abuse. When he had finished his speech (for he was extremely brave: he said the lot and at times even amid silence), but when he had finished, up got Clodius. There was such a shout from our side (for we had decided to return the compliment) that he lost all control of his thoughts, his tongue and his expression. This went on for two hours while every insult and even obscene verses were shouted against Clodius and his sister.

Clodius, furious and pale, in the middle of all this shouting asked his supporters, 'Who wants to starve the people to death?' 'Pompey!' answered the gang. Then, at the ninth hour, as if a signal had been given, Clodius' supporters all began to spit at ours. Tempers flared. Clodius' gang shoved, to push us from our place. Our side made a charge; his gang fled; Clodius was thrown from the platform, and then we fled too, in case we should have trouble from the crowd. The senate was summoned to the senate house. Pompey went home.

The following year Clodius was killed in a brawl outside Rome by Milo and his supporters. In the rioting which followed, Clodius' gangs burned his body in the senate house, which was burnt to the ground and had not been rebuilt when Quintus arrived in Rome.

Here is another letter, which Cicero wrote to a friend when his beloved daughter Tullia died in February 45 BC:

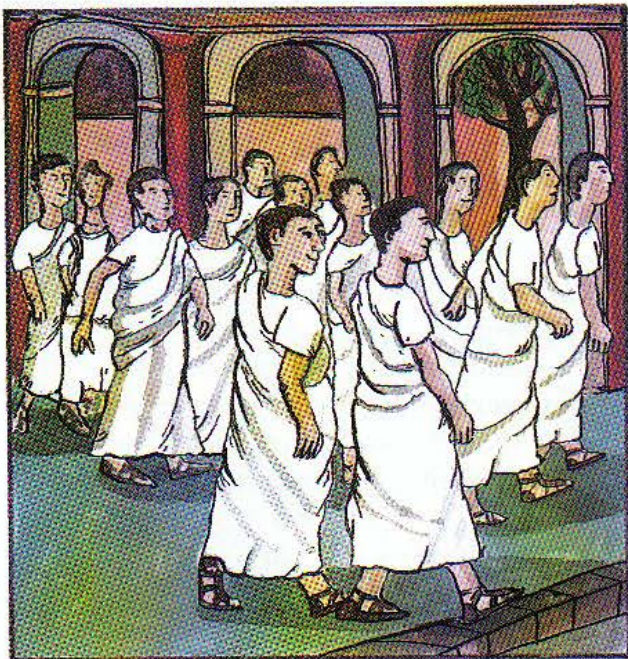
In this lonely place, I don't talk to anyone at all. In the morning I hide myself in a thick, thorny wood and I don't come out of it until the evening. After yourself, my best friend in the world is my solitude. When I am alone, all I talk to is my books, but I keep on bursting into tears. I fight against them as much as I can, but so far it has been an unequal struggle.

After reading this section, compose a date chart outlining Cicero's life.

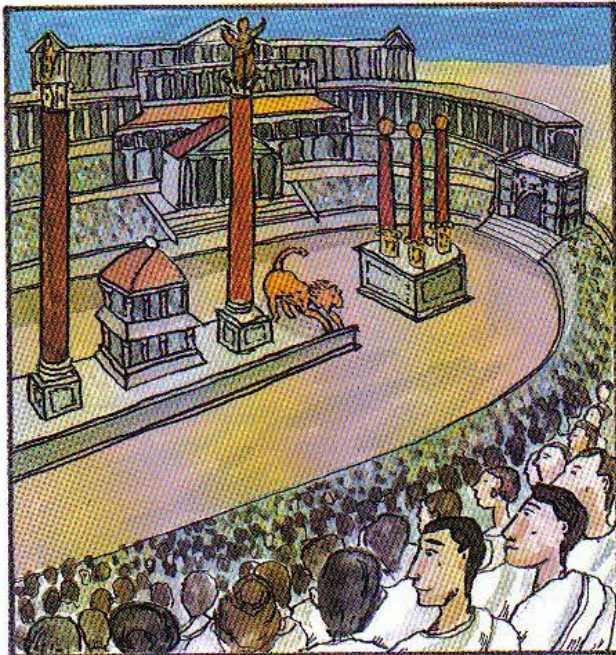
What does the first of the two letters quoted above suggest about the state of politics in Rome at this time? On what occasions might similar scenes occur today?

Chapter 22

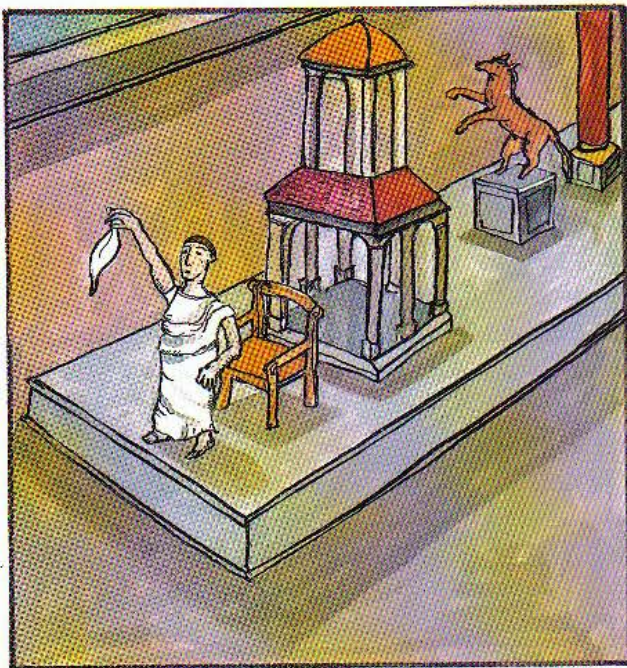
Ludi circenses



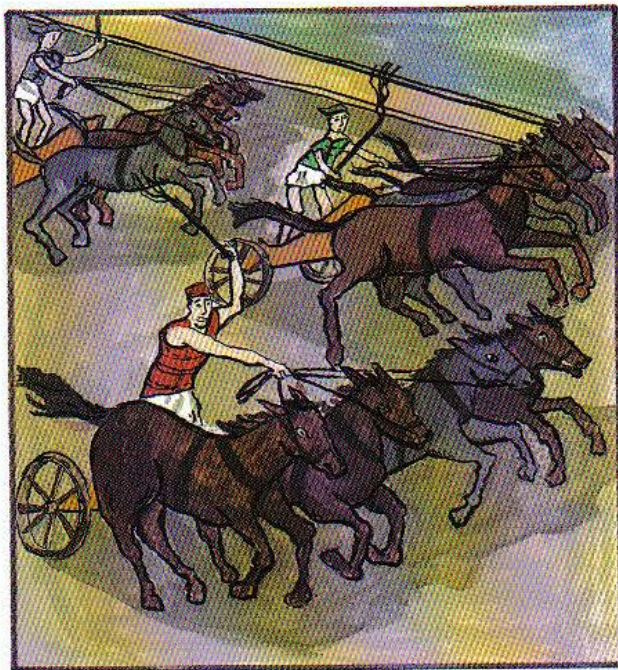
paucīs post diēbus Marcus Quīntum ā forō ad Circum Maximum dūxit.



puerī intrāvērunt sed loca spectātōribus vacua vix invēnērunt.



praetor soliō (*chair*) surrēxit signumque dedit.



continuō ē carceribus (*starting cage*) ēvolāvērunt equī.

Vocabulary 22

<i>verbs</i>		<i>nouns</i>	
spērō, spērāre, spērāvī	I hope	turba, -ae, f.	crowd
volō, volāre, volāvī	I fly	lūdī, -ōrum, m. pl.	the games
faveō, favēre, fāvī + dat.	I favour, support	signum, -ī, n.	sign, signal
pāreō, pārere, pārui + dat.	I obey	vesper, vesperis, m.	evening
frangō, frangere, frēgī	I break	cāsus, cāsūs, m.	mishap, misfortune
perdō, perdere, perdidī	I lose, destroy	currus, currūs, m.	chariot
rapiō, rapere, rapui	I snatch, steal	cursus, cursūs, m.	running; a course
<i>adverb</i>		<i>adjectives</i>	
quō?	where to?	contentus, -a, -um	content
		fractus, -a, -um	broken
		maximus, -a, -um	greatest, very great
		plūrimus, -a, -um	very many
		nōbilis, nōbile	noble, famous
		tālis, tāle	such
		vetus, veteris	old

What do the following English words mean and from what Latin words are they derived: fracture, maximize, perdition, veteran?

Lūdī circēnsēs

lūdī circēnsēs the circus games

paucīs post diēbus Quīntus cum patre ad lūdum Orbiliī ambulābat; iam ad forum advēnerat cum aliquem sē vocantem audīvit. respēxit et Marcum vīdit ad sē currentem. ille, ubi accessit, 'quō is, Quīnte?' inquit. Quīntus 'ad lūdum nīmīrum festinō.' Marcus 'nōlī nūgās narrāre,' inquit; 'fēriae sunt. hodiē nēmō ad lūdum ire dēbet. venī mēcum ad Circum Maximum. praetor lūdōs magnificōs populō dat.' Quīntus, quī lūdōs circēnsēs numquam vīderat, Marcō pārere volēbat, sed pater cautus erat; 'multī scelestī' inquit 'tālibus lūdīs adsunt. periculōsum est.' sed

10 Marcus Quīntum trāns forum iam ducēbat. Flaccus sē vertit et domum rediit.

vocantem calling

nīmīrum of course

nūgās nonsense

fēriae sunt it's a holiday

praetor the praetor

cautus cautious; **scelestī** criminals

periculōsum dangerous

ubi ad Circum advēnērunt, ingēns turba aderat; multa mīlia cīvium, virī, fēminae, puerī ad portās concurrēbant. Quīntus Marcusque intrāre vix poterant; tandem loca vacua invēnērunt et

15 sēdērunt. maxima pompa iam per circum contendēbat; tībīcinēs pompam dūcēbant, deinde milītēs imāginēs deōrum ferēbant, postrēmō plūrimī agitātōrēs currūs quadriugōs lentē agēbant.

pompa procession

tībīcinēs flute players

imāginēs images; **postrēmō** lastly

agitātōrēs (chariot) drivers

quadriugōs four-horsed (adj.)

duodecim twelve

carceribus the starting cage

tandem pompa cōfecta erat. duodecim currūs in carceribus

20 stābant ad primum cursum parātī. praetor soliō surrēxit signumque
 dedit. continuō ē carceribus ēvolāverunt equī. omnēs spectātōrēs
 clāmābant et agitātōrēs incitābant. illī equōs verberābant
 mētamque petēbant. prīmus mētā incolumis circumiit; alter
 mētae interiōrem rotā inflīxit; currus frāctus est; ipse ad terram
 cecidit, habēnīs involūtus; habēnīs sē expēdivit fūgitque ē cursū.
 25 cēterī cursum septiēns circumvolāverunt sine cāsū; vīcit Venetus.
 gaudēbat Marcus, quī illī factiōnī favēbat.

tōtum diem Quīntus Marcusque cursūs spectābat. vesper iam
 aderat cum Marcus 'venī, Quīnte,' inquit, 'tempus est domum
 redire; sine dubiō parentēs nostrī ānxiī sunt.' dum surgit,
 30 crumēnam ē sinū togae tollere temptābat; sed nihil sinū inerat;
 crumēnam perdiderat. 'dī immortāles!' inquit, 'aliquis crumēnam
 meam rapuit.' Quīntus valdē commōtus erat, sed Marcus 'nulliūs
 mōmentī est,' inquit; 'aliā crumēnam domī habēō.'

soliō from his chair

incitābant urged on

verberābant lashed

mētā the turning post

circumiit rounded

interiōrem rotā the inner wheel

inflīxit crashed (x acc. on y dat.)

habēnīs involūtus wrapped up,

caught in the reins

expēdivit freed from

septiēns seven times

Venetus the Blue; factiōnī team

sine dubiō without doubt

crumēnam purse; sinū pocket

nulliūs mōmentī of no importance

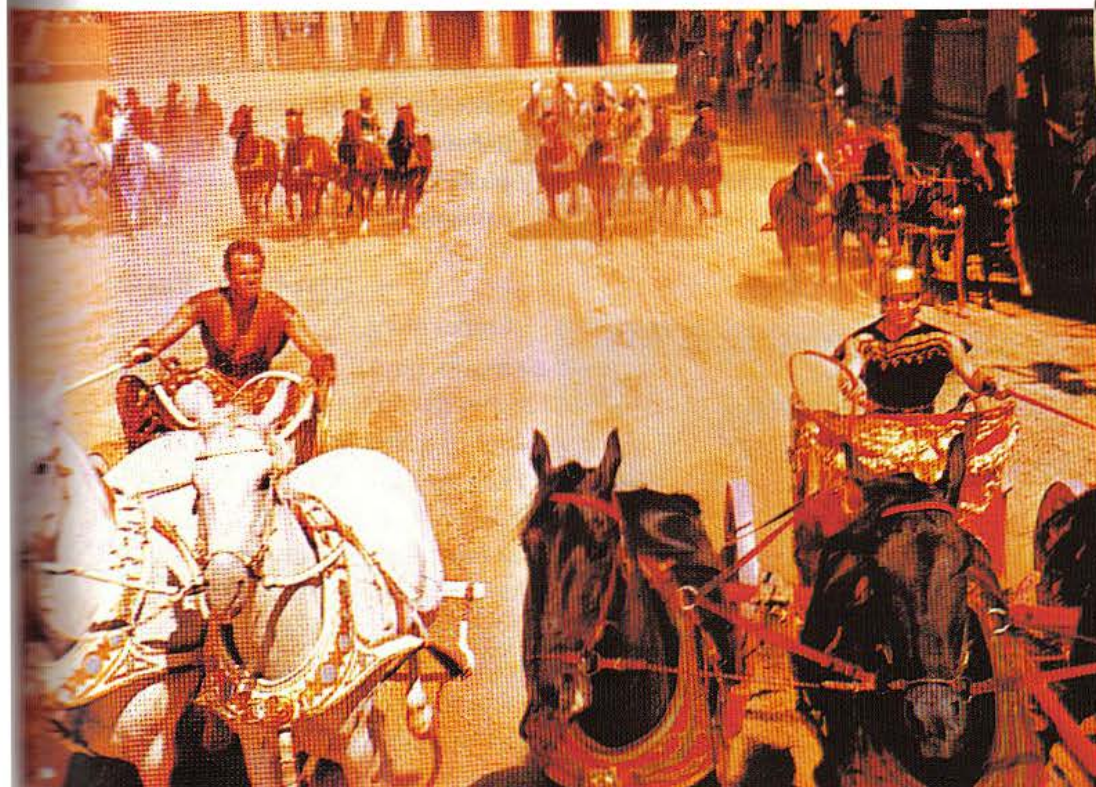
Word-building

Learn the following compounds of *faciō, facere, fēcī* I do, I make:

<i>afficiō, afficere, affēcī</i>	I affect
<i>cōficiō, cōficere, cōnfēcī</i>	I finish
<i>efficiō, efficere, effēcī</i>	I carry out, effect
<i>interficiō, interficere, interfēcī</i>	I kill
<i>perficiō, perficere, perfēcī</i>	I carry through, complete
<i>reficiō, reficere, refēcī</i>	I remake, repair



The praetor starts
the chariot race



The chariot race
from the film Ben Hur

Fābella: Marcus Quīntusque cursibus adsunt

Persōnae: Marcus, Quīntus, spectātor, puella

Marcus Quīntum in Circum Maximum dūcit.

Marcus: festinā, Quīnte. dēbēmus locum vacuum quaerere.

Quīntus: tantam turbam hominum numquam vidī. nūlla loca vacua sunt.

Marcus: ecce, duo loca vacua. pervēnimus. vidē, Quīnte, puella pulchra proxima sedet. euge! pompa paene cōnfecta est. tū, quī post nōs spectās, crūra contrahe! mē trūdis.

proxima next (to us)

pompa the procession

crūra contrahe pull back your legs

trūdis you are pushing

ignōsce (+ dat.) forgive!

līnea arta the seats (are) narrow

spectātor: ignōsce mihi, iuvenis. crūra mihi longa sunt, līnea arta.

Quīntus: vidē, Marce, duodecim currūs in carcere stant. praetor signum dat. iam ēvolant equī.

Marcus: (*clāmat*) festinā, Venete. equōs verberā. ad mētā festinā. mē miserum! spatiōsō orbe mētā circumit. (*clāmat*) quid facis, ignāve? proximus currus tē subit.

verberā lash!

mē miserum! unhappy me!

spatiōsō orbe in a wide circle

ignāve coward!

subit is catching up

tende lōra pull on the reins

Russātus the Red (team)

Quīntus: quid facis, īfelīx? tende lōra sinistrā! ecce! fāvimus ignāvō. Russātus eum superat.

Marcus: (*ad puellam sē vertit*) cūr lacrimās, cārissima? tū quoque Venetō fāvistī?

puella: heu, heu! omnem spem in Venetō posuī, omnem pecūniam.

Marcus: nōlī tē vexāre. ego cōnsolātiōnem tibi offerō. (*eam bāsiāre temptat*)

bāsiāre to kiss

procāx impertinent

puella: nōlī procāx esse, iuvenis. vidē! currūs iterum ad mētā accēdunt.

Quīntus: Russātus mētā propius circumit. ecce! currum in mētā illisit.

propius too close

illisit he has crashed

finem the finish

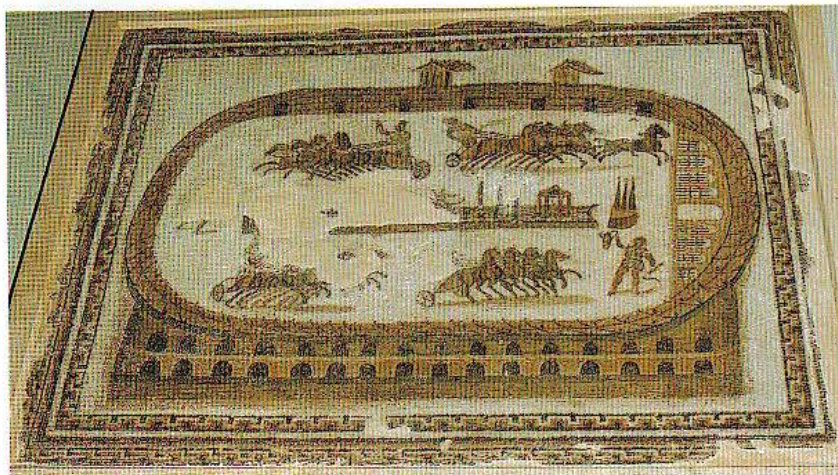
arridet (+ dat.) smiles at

palnam prize, palm

puella: ecce! Venetus eum superāvit. iam ad finem prīmus advenit. (*Marcō arridet*) ille palmam tenet, tū palmam tuam petere dēbēs.

Marcus puellam bāsiat.

Chariot racing



Scintilla ad Flaccum scribit

Translate the first paragraph of the following passage and answer the questions on the letter

paucis post diebus Flaccus epistolam accepit; celeriter signum frēgit; Scintilla omnia scripserat quae Venusiae facta erant, ex quo Rōmam abierant. Flaccus Quīntum statim vocāvit epistolamque recitāvit:

5 Scintilla virō filiōque cārissimīs salūtem plūrimam dat.
 primum, ego Horātiaque valēmus et rēs bene agimus.
 iuvenis quī Horātiam amat nōs iuvat; filius est veteris tuī
 amīcī Terentiī. ovēs cūrat; omnēs iam tetondit; plūrimam
 lānam habēmus. segetēs mātūrae sunt, sed magna siccitās fuit;
 10 ex quo Rōmam abiistis rārō pluit. itaque segetēs nōn bonae
 sunt. vīnētum tamen flōret; plūrimās ūvās habēbimus.
 contentae sumus, sed vōs valdē dēsiderāmus. Argus tristis est;
 Quīntum semper quaerit.

15 et vōs, cārissimī, iter longum cōnfēcistis et Rōmam
 incolumēs advēnistis? Quīntusne iam in lūdō Orbiliī studet?
 domicilium invēnistis? nōndum epistolam accēpimus. sine
 morā scribe longam epistolam et nārrā nōbīs omnia quae
 accidērunt. cūrā, mī cārissime vir, ut valeās, et Quīntum
 filium nostrum cārissimum dīligenter cūrā.

20 Venusiae data Kalendīs Quīntilībus.

- 1 Scintilla's letter follows the form (beginning and end) usual in Roman letters; how does this form differ from that of our letters? [4]
- 2 How are Scintilla and Horatia managing to run the farm? [3]
- 3 Why aren't the crops good? [3]
- 4 What is the matter with Argus? [2]
- 5 What items of news does Scintilla want from Flaccus? [4]

signum the seal

facta erant had happened

ex quo (tempore) since

cārissimīs dearest; salūtem

plūrimam warmest greetings

valēmus we are well

ovēs sheep; tetondit has sheared

lānam wool; segetēs crops

mātūrae ripe; siccitās drought

rārō pluit it has seldom rained

vīnētum vineyard; flōret is

flourishing; ūvās grapes

habēbimus we shall have

dēsiderāmus we miss

domicilium a lodging

nōndum not yet; morā delay

accidērunt has happened

ut valeās that you keep well

data (epistola) given (to the postman)

Kalendīs Quīntilībus on 1 July

THE GAMES

In a place such as Rome where so many citizens were poor or unemployed, the public shows put on for them were of great importance as something to look forward to in their grim lives. And mounting these shows gave the magistrates an opportunity to display their wealth and social status as well as to win popularity – and votes – among the common people who would noisily express their appreciation for the free entertainment. At the time of our story there were sixty-four days of shows in the Roman calendar. Soon, as politicians such as Julius Caesar went all out for self-advertisement, the number was to increase dramatically. And of course shows were held not only at Rome but at towns all over the Roman world, including Verulamium and Caerleon in Britain.

However, these entertainments did not necessarily defuse social tensions. In 59 AD during the gladiatorial games at Pompeii a riot broke out between the locals and visitors from nearby Nuceria. The amphitheatre was closed for ten years. Sadly, the modern world can offer parallels to such pointless brutality: in 1986 thirty-eight were killed and over four hundred wounded when conflict broke out between football fans in the Heysel football stadium in Belgium.

Theatre

In Rome during the first century BC the shows would generally begin with performances in the theatre, continue with gladiatorial displays and end with the races. The drama consisted largely of comedies, slapstick, knockabout farce, acrobatics, ballet and mime, an increasingly popular Roman mix of satire and playful antics. Biting references to leading politicians were speedily picked up by the audience. Serious drama was not unknown but it tended to be swamped in spectacle in a bid for popular appeal by the sponsor. Accius' *Clytemnestra* was staged with 600 mules. And Horace tells us that when spectators became bored there were cries of 'We want bears' and 'We want boxers'.

Gladiators

Until Rome's first permanent amphitheatre was built in 29 BC, exhibitions of gladiators and of wild beast fights took place in temporary enclosures in the forum and the Circus Maximus. Pompey exhibited elephants in the latter at his games in 55 BC and when they stampeded and made for the railings enclosing the arena, there was general panic. Julius Caesar's response in 46 BC was to surround the arena with a ditch ten feet wide and ten feet deep.

Gladiators



The gladiatorial show started with a grand parade with the gladiators riding in chariots to the arena dressed in gold and purple robes. Brass and wind instruments and a hydraulic organ supplied the music.

Who were the gladiators? Those who were put in no-hope situations in the arena were criminals who had been condemned to death. The proper gladiators, on the other hand, had at least a little hope. If they survived long enough, they would win their freedom, or they might be given it after a particularly impressive performance. And they could gain an enormous following, especially among the female members of the crowd. Some of them were criminals condemned to the gladiatorial schools; others were slaves, often prisoners of war, who had been sold to them; and some were free citizens who had enrolled voluntarily or been forced to do so by economic necessity. When they signed on, they swore: 'I undertake to be burnt by fire, to be bound in chains, to be beaten, to die by the sword.' These bleak words are appropriate to an activity which goes back to ancient funeral rituals where fights to the finish were staged as a blood offering to the dead.

In the arena they were variously armed and matched against differently equipped opponents. Here we describe three of them. The heavy-armed Samnite carried a large oblong shield, a sword or spear. His head was protected by a visored helmet, his right leg by a greave and his right arm by a protective sleeve. The Thraex also wore a helmet, carried a light shield and was armed with a reversed sickle. The light-footed *rētiārius* fought bare-headed, wore a tunic and was armed with a three-pronged trident and a dagger, and a net to trap his adversary.

If a gladiator was at his opponent's mercy, the crowd would express passionate judgement as to whether he should be finished off. Thumbs down probably meant that his opponent should drop his weapon and spare him, thumbs pointed to one's own chest probably meant kill him. The president of the games would almost always fall in with popular sentiment. The winner received a crown and prize money, and an attendant with the mask of Mercury, the god who escorted souls to the underworld, came on with a hot iron to make sure that the victim was really dead. Boys covered the pools of blood with clean sand.

Brutality did not stop here. Two criminals might be driven into the arena, only one of them armed. And wild beasts were matched against each other or against humans. Vast hunts were staged in which huge numbers of exotic animals were exterminated. (In 80 AD when the emperor Titus inaugurated Rome's famous amphitheatre, the Colosseum, 5,000 wild beasts were killed in a single day.) Incense-burners were set out to overcome the smell of the animals, and slaves would spray clouds of perfume at the audience as they sat under the shade of an awning that covered the entire circle of the amphitheatre.

It is interesting that the gladiatorial combats did not stop when the Roman empire became Christian. And before we condemn this viciously cruel pastime too scornfully, it is as well to remember that public executions were held in Britain until 1868 and that bull-fighting even now has a huge and fanatical following in Spanish-speaking countries and the South of France.



Fighting a leopard

The races

Quintus goes with Marcus to see the races at the Circus Maximus, a huge rectangle with semicircular ends surrounded by seats which held 250,000 spectators. It is located between the Palatine and Aventine hills. Men and women could sit together here (they were kept apart at the theatre and amphitheatre).

When the praetor dropped a white cloth to start the race, the chariots rushed from the twelve staggered starting boxes, beginning anticlockwise on the first of what were usually seven laps of the 1,100 metre track. They dashed along the central division (*spīna* = backbone) of the stadium, keeping it on the right. Each time a lap was finished, an egg and later also a dolphin were lowered. Most thrilling were the turns around the *mētae*, the turning posts which each consisted of three cones of gilded bronze, at either end of the *spīna*. If a team went too wide of these turning posts, it might be overtaken on the inside but if it more than grazed it it would crash. This was a sport involving considerable skill. The distance covered was about 8 km and the race lasted about fifteen minutes.

Charioteers were mainly slaves, but, like gladiators, they could win immense popularity and might make enough money to be able to buy their freedom. They came from one of four companies of trainers who hired out teams to the promoters who paid the expenses. The charioteers wore the colours of their stables – red, pale green, sea blue and white – and were cheered on by fanatical supporters whose enthusiasm was sharpened by the money they had bet on their team. Gambling was against the law, but it went on on a massive scale both in the circus and in the arena.

Pliny wrote of the racing:

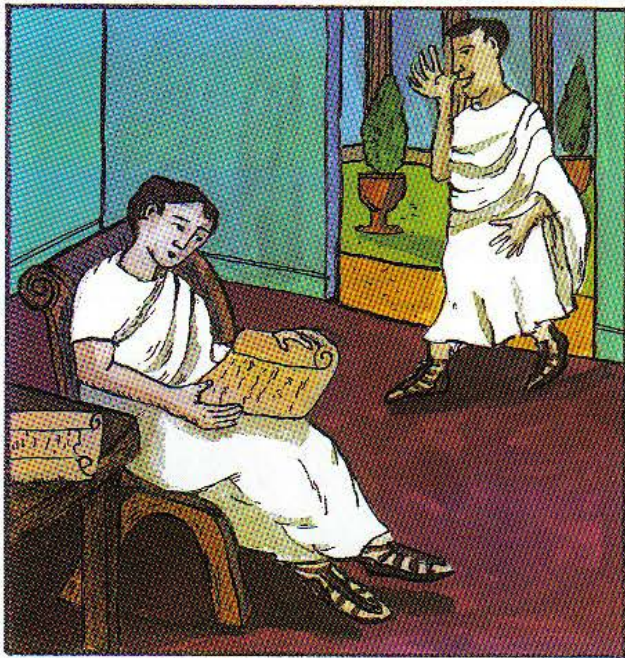
The races are on, a spectacle which has not the slightest attraction for me. It lacks novelty and variety. If you have seen it once, you have seen it a thousand times. So it amazes me that thousands and thousands of grown men should be like children, wanting to look at horses running and men standing on chariots over and over again.

Do you sympathize with Pliny here? Give your reasons.

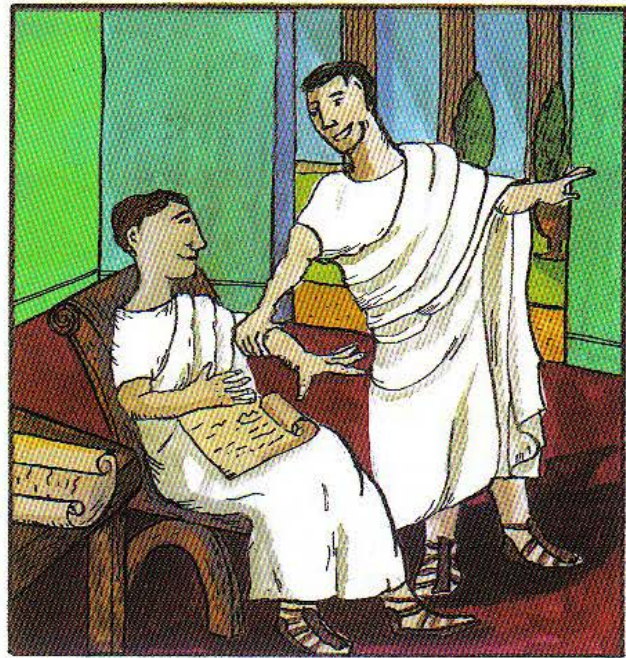
What are the similarities and the differences between modern and Roman sports and between their fans?

Chapter 23

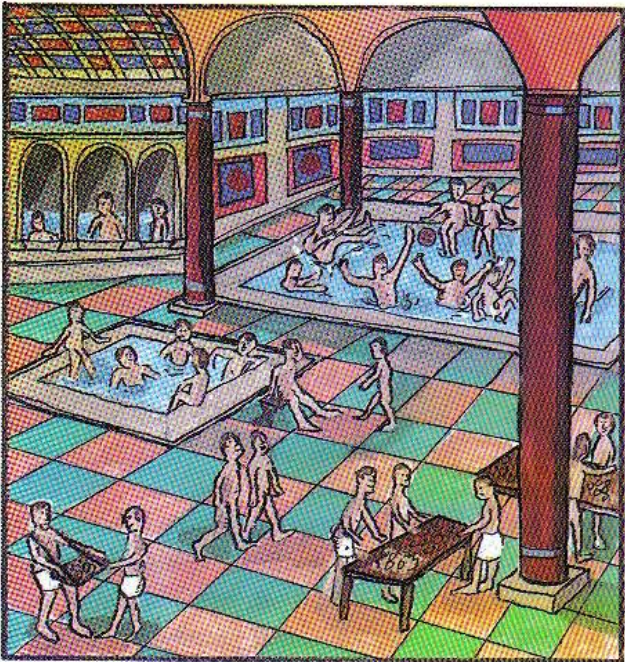
Marcus Quintum ad balnea ducit



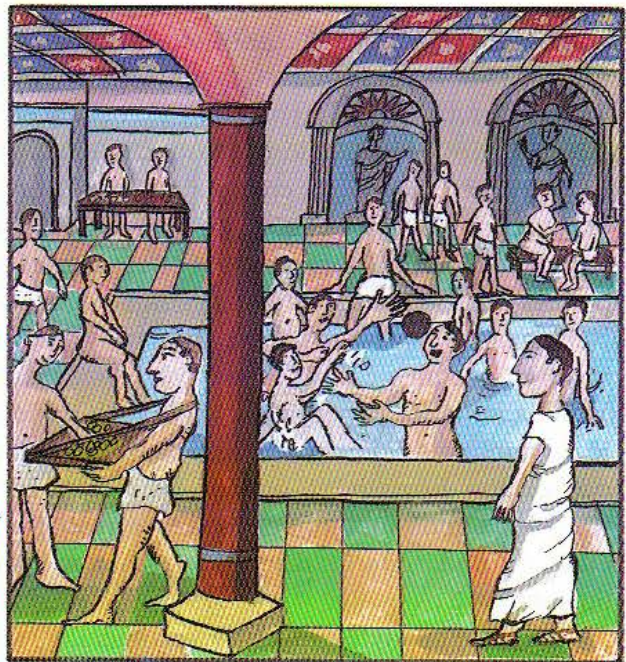
Quīntus, puer summā industriā, librum legēbat
cum Marcus eum magnā vōce vocāvit.



Marcus Quīntō 'venī mēcum' inquit 'ad balnea;
forō nōn longē absunt.'



in balneis aliī in piscinam ingentī clāmōre
insiliēbant, aliī pilis lūdēbant.



Quīntus omnia summā admīratiōne spectābat.

Vocabulary 23

verbs

retineō, retinēre, retinui	I hold back
referō, referre, rettuli	I carry back; I report
īnsum, inesse, īnfui	I am in, I am among
mālō, mālle, mālui	I prefer

adverbs

paulisper	for a little (time)
unde?	whence? from where?
undique	from all sides

nouns

mora, -ae, f.	delay
nimium, -ī, n. + gen.	too much, e.g.
nimium vīnī	too much (of) wine
balnea, -ōrum, n. pl.	baths
ānxiētās, ānxiētātis, f.	anxiety
celeritās, celeritātis, f.	speed

adjective

aeger, aegra, aegrum	sick, ill
-----------------------------	-----------

In the following sentences explain the meaning of the words in italics by reference to their Latin roots:

- 1 He has a *retentive* memory.
- 2 She *related* all that had happened.
- 3 We had an *ingenious* idea.
- 4 They returned with the utmost *celerity*.
- 5 They presented a *petition* to the chairman.

A mosaic at the entrance
to a Roman bath house



Marcus Quīntum ad balnea dūcīt

Quīntus iam diū in lūdō Orbiliī studuerat. puer erat summā industriā studiisque gaudēbat. quondam ubi Orbilius puerōs dimisit, Marcus Quīntō 'ego' inquit 'ad balnea eō. nōne vīs mēcum venīre? forō nōn longē absunt.' Quīntus ōtiōsus erat

- 5 Marcōque pārere volēbat. continuō ad balnea prōcēdēbant; Flaccus cum Marcī paedagōgō post eōs ambulābat.

- mox advēnērunt. intrāvērunt et circumspectābant. plūrimī hominēs in ātriō erant; clāmōrēs undique circumsonābant. aliī in piscīnam sonō ingentī insiliēbant, aliī pilis lūdēbant. botulārii crustulāriique mercēs suās magnā vōcē laudābant. Quīntus omnia summā admīrātiōne spectābat cum Marcus amīcum quendam vidit; Quīntum reliquit et ad eum accessit. Quīntus sōlus ad apodytērium discessit. vestīmenta exuit et in armāriō posuit. prīmum in tepidārium iniit et paulisper in aquā tepidā iacēbat; 10 deinde in calidārium iit; dēnique in piscīnam insiluit et aliquamdiū sē exercēbat.

tandem ad apodytērium rediit vestīmentaue quaesīvit. sed ubi armārium aperuit, nihil inerat; aliquis vestīmenta rapuerat. Quīntus in ātrium recurrit et circumspectābat. subitō hominem

summā industriā of the greatest industry, extremely hardworking
quondam once
ōtiōsus at leisure

paedagōgō tutor

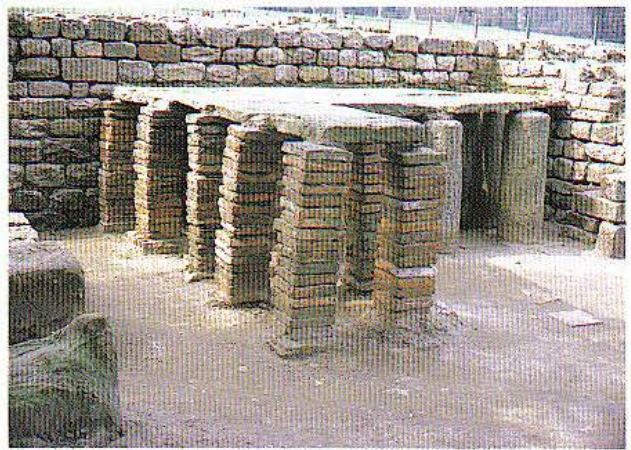
circumsonābant echoed around
piscīnam the pool
insiliēbant were jumping into
pilis with balls
botulārii sausage-sellers
crustulārii sweet-sellers
mercēs suās their wares
apodytērium the changing-room
exuit took off; **armāriō** cupboard
tepidārium the warm room
calidārium the hot room
dēnique finally
aliquamdiū for some time

- 20 cōspexit ad iānuam festinantem quī vestīmenta manibus ferēbat. Quīntus statim magnā vōce clāmāvit: 'dēprehende illum fūrem; vestīmenta mea aufert.' Flaccus, quī in ātriō manēbat, eum audīvit, fūrem vīdit, sine morā petīvit. ille iam ad portam fugiēbat sed Flāccus summā celeritāte cucurrit ipsōque in līmine
- 25 eum dēprehendit. vestīmenta rapuit rettulitque ad filium. Quīntus patrī grātiās ēgit vestīmentaue celeriter induit.

festinantem hurrying
dēprehende seize!
fūrem thief
līmine threshold

Respondē Latīnē

- 1 ubi balnea Quīntus intrāvit, quid vīdit?
- 2 cūr sōlus ad apodytērium Quīntus iit?
- 3 ubi Quīntus ad apodytērium rediit, cūr nōn sē induit?
- 4 quōmodo Quīntus vestīmenta recēpit?



A hypocaust, a heating system under the floor

An apodyterium (changing room)

Word-building

Learn the following compounds of **ferō, ferre, tulī** I carry, bear:

afferō (= adferō), afferre , attulī	I carry to, I report
auferō (= abferō), auferre , abstulī	I carry away
cōnferō , cōnferre , contulī	I carry together
effērō , efferre , extulī	I carry out
īnferō , īnferre , intulī	I carry into, carry against
prōferō , prōferre , prōtulī	I carry forwards, bring out
referō , referre , rettulī	I carry back, I report

Marcus ēbrius est

Without translating, answer the questions below the following passage

Quīntus, ubi vestīmenta induit, in ātrium cucurrit Marcumque quaesīvit. diū quaerēbat; tandem eum invēnit in terrā iacentem post columnam. Quīntus eum tollere temptāvit; ille aegrē surrēxit; vacillāvit iterumque ad terram dēcidit. Quīntus eum
5 summā ānxiētāte spectābat; sed Marcus nōn aeger erat; nimium vīnī cum amīcīs biberat et plānē ēbrius erat. iam accurrerat eius paedagōgus, quī eum sustulit et domum dūxit. Flaccus, hīs rēbus commōtus, Quīntum domum rapuit.

postrīdiē Marcus ad lūdum nōn vēnit. nam pater, quī valdē
10 irātus erat, eum domī retinēbat; Cicerō ipse, vir summā doctrīnā, filiū studia cūrābat. posterō annō Cicerō eum Athēnās mīsīt ad Lycēum, ubi philosophiae studēbat. sed Marcus in studiīs nōn multum prōfēcīt; nam lūdere mālēbat quam studēre. Quīntus trīstis erat quod amīcum tam bonum perdiderat; neque eum
15 postea Rōmae vīdit, sed paucīs post annīs eī Athēnīs occurrit; ipse enim eō tempore in Acadēmīā studēbat.

post columnam behind a column
aegrē with difficulty
vacillāvit tottered
plānē completely
paedagōgus tutor
sustulit raised him
rapuit rushed
summā doctrīnā of the greatest learning
posterō annō the next year
Lycēum the Lyceum (one of the two universities in Athens)
prōfēcīt made progress
Acadēmīā the Academy (the other university in Athens)

- 1 Where did Quintus find Marcus? What was the matter with him? [2/2]
- 2 How did Flaccus feel about the incident? [2]
- 3 Why didn't Marcus come to school the next day? [3]
- 4 How did Marcus get on at the Lyceum? [3]
- 5 Why was Quintus sad? [2]
- 6 Where and under what circumstances did they meet again? [3]

A DAY AT ROME

Let us now follow the daily round of an ordinary Roman who wishes to climb to a higher social level.

He gets up very early in his simply furnished bedroom and splashes some water on his face and hands. He has slept in his tunic and, before he leaves the house, he puts on his toga. He drapes over himself this large woollen garment, roughly semi-circular in shape, winding it round his shoulders and waist. To wear the toga marked a man out as a Roman citizen.

If he bothers with breakfast, it is a light one, consisting of bread with cheese or with honey, washed down with some milk. Then he sets off to visit his patron, a man of higher rank who he hopes will help him to success. He is his patron's client and as such will have to do him favours in return.

Between daybreak and the second hour (see the note at the end of the chapter), he presents himself at his patron's house. This

morning greeting is called the *salūtātiō*. He hopes for a small present of money (*sportula*) or an invitation to dinner that evening. His patron might well insist that he accompanies him to the forum where business begins at the third hour. A Roman writer called Pliny complained about how many things there were to do there. 'I attended a coming-of-age ceremony,' he wrote, 'I went to an engagement or a wedding, one man called me to witness a will, another to give legal advice.' This may well be an exaggeration, but the morning was certainly the time for business, both political, legal and financial.

There would be a welcome interval after the sixth hour for lunch. This was a light meal consisting of fish, eggs or pork with vegetables, followed by fruit. After a rest, a tradition still kept up by the Italians with their siestas, our Roman would probably take some exercise.

He may well pay a visit to the Campus Martius (Plain of Mars). This broad plain, enclosed on its western side by a bend in the river Tiber, was the playground of ancient Rome. Its vast expanse of green was the perfect place for a stroll in the open; it was the ideal location for military training; and the young men of Rome gathered here to practise each and every sport. They ran, rode on horseback, drove chariots, wrestled and threw balls, javelins and the discus. The nearby river with its strong current gave the opportunity for an energetic swim. Roman sportsmen crowded the Campus Martius to such an extent that Julius Caesar thought of creating an even larger sports ground on the other side of the river.

Our Roman moves on at about the eighth hour to the public baths (*balnea*) for a refreshing wash. There were many of these in Rome and they were all extremely cheap. There were separate facilities in the biggest for men and women; different times could be set aside for the two sexes in the smaller ones.

The bather would start in the changing room (*apodytērion*). He would proceed from here to the warm room (*tepidārium*), where he would immerse himself in warm water in preparation for the hot room (*calidārium*). The water was heated by a system underneath the floor called a hypocaust. After a brief bath here, he was oiled with olive oil, which was then scraped off with a strigil (see illustration). Then he walked back through the warm room to the cold room (*frigidārium*) where he leapt into cold water. He now dried himself with a towel and returned to the changing room.



An athlete scraping off oil with a strigil

Strigils and oil flask



It was all a lively, ear-splitting business, and the writer Seneca vividly describes the drawbacks of living near the baths. The noise, he says, was appalling. Vigorous body-builders groaned and panted, masseurs energetically slapped their victims, and the scorer shouted out the totals at ball games. There was the noise of quarrelling, of a thief being arrested, probably as he ran off with somebody's clothes, and of the splashing caused by those who insisted on hurtling themselves into the water. Additional hazards were those who liked singing in the baths as well as the sellers of sweets, sausages and other foods, advertising their wares each with his own strident call.

Finally, dinner (*cēna*) was a big affair, starting at about the ninth hour in summer and the tenth in winter, and it was considered short if it lasted only three Roman hours. This is a long time to spend eating! But there was plenty of conversation and often some entertainment.

Our Roman returns home nervously after dinner through the dark and narrow city streets, earnestly hoping that he will not be mugged.



Roman food

PS (*post scriptum*) There were twelve hours in a Roman day. Each hour was one-twelfth of the time from sunrise to sunset. Thus hours were longer in summer than in winter and varied between about $\frac{3}{4}$ and $1\frac{1}{4}$ modern hours.

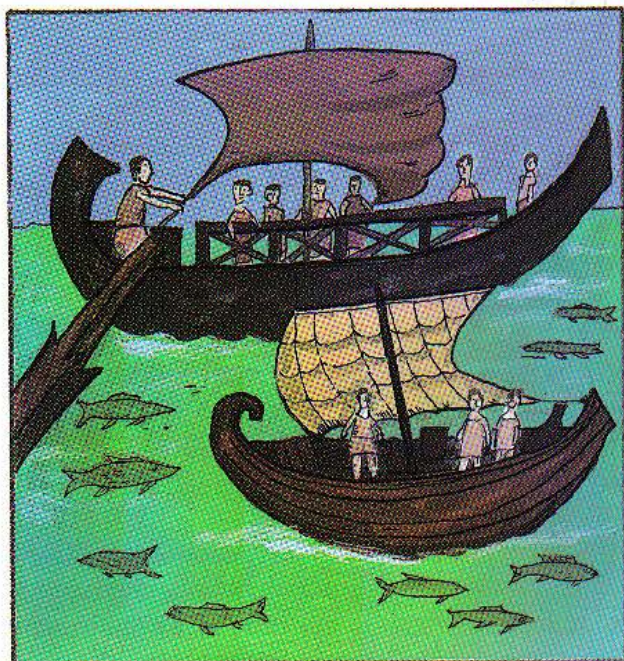
The Roman poet Martial summed up – no doubt satirically – his day in the city:

The first and second hour wear down those greeting their patrons, and the third is business time for the husky-voiced lawyers. Rome prolongs its different employments to the fifth hour. The sixth offers rest for the exhausted and the seventh is the end of the working day. The eighth and some of the ninth see the couches filled with the reclining dinner guest.

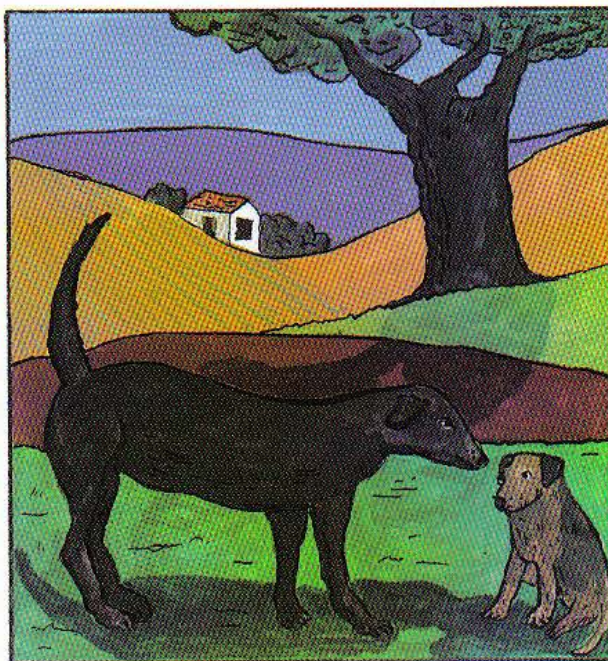
Tell us about your imaginary day at Rome, basing your schedule on Martial's timetable.

Chapter 24

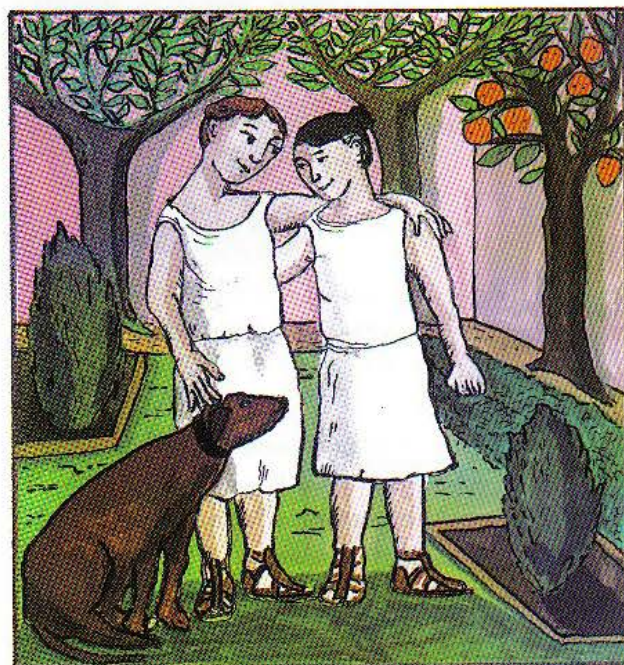
Caesaris triumphi



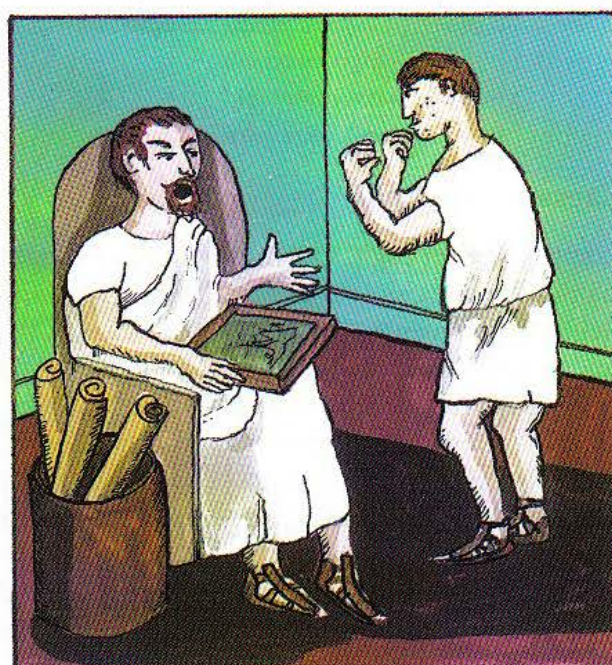
haec nāvis brevior est quam illa; haec nāvis brevissima est.



hic canis maior est quam ille; hic canis maximus est.



numquam puellam amīciōrem vidī quam Horātiam; Horātia amīcissima est.



numquam puerum cognōvī peiōrem quam Decimum; Decimus pessimus est.

What do **brevior** and **brevissima** mean? And what does **brevior quam** mean?

Vocabulary 24

verbs

numerō, numerāre	I count
caveō, cavēre, cāvī	I beware of
praetereō, praeterire, praeterī	I go past, pass
prōvideō, prōvidēre, prōvidī	I foresee
vehō, vehere, vēxī	I carry
fiō, fierī	I become

adverbs

dēnique	lastly, finally
magnopere	greatly
quam	than

conjunction

quamquam	although
-----------------	----------

nouns

victōria, -ae, f.	victory
inimīcus, -ī, m.	enemy
praemium, -ī, n.	reward
spectāculum, -ī, n.	show
cliēns, clientis, m.	client, dependant
ōrdō, ordinis, m.	rank, line, order
spectātor, spectātōris, m.	spectator
genus, generis, n.	race, kind, sort
cōspectus, cōspectūs, m.	sight, view

adjectives

superbus, -a, -um	proud
crūdēlis, crūdēle	cruel
ferōx, ferōcis	fierce

What do the following English phrases mean, and from what Latin word is each of the adjectives in *italics* derived: a *ferocious* beast, a *dire* event, a *spectacular* sight, an *ordinal* number, a *client* kingdom, an *inimical* speech, *innumerable* ants?

Julius Caesar



Caesaris triumphī

tempus celeriter fūgit. Quīntus iam quīnque annōs Rōmae mānserat. plūrēs amīcōs habēbat quam numerāre poterat; in diēs laetior fīēbat. mēse Quīntīlī C. Iūlius Caesar ab Africā Rōmam tandem rediit. quattuor iam annōs bellum cīvile per tōtum orbem terrārum gesserat. omnēs inimīcōs vīcerat, tōtum imperium Rōmānum regēbat. cōstituit igitur triumphōs agere ob victōriās quās reportāverat in Galliā, in Aegyptō, in Pontō, in Africā. fēriās prōnūntiāvit quīndecim diērum. spectācula omnis generis ēdidit, mūnera gladiātōria, vēnātiōnēs, lūdōs scaenicōs et tragicōs et comicōs. nēmō umquam lūdōs splendidiōrēs ēdiderat quam illōs.

- 15 primō diē fēriārum Quīntus māne surrēxit. patrem valēre iussit festīnāvitque ad scholam Orbiliī, ubi amīcō cuidam, Pūbliō nōmine, occurrit. sine morā ad forum contendērunt. ubi advēnērunt, iam aderat ingēns multitūdō, virī, fēminae, puerī, et cīvēs et servī; Quīntus numquam maiōrem turbam vīderat quam illam. interdum senātor per mediam turbam cum comitātū

in diēs day by day
mēse Quīntīlī in the month of July

triumphōs agere to hold triumphs
ob (+ acc.) because of
reportāverat he had won
fēriās holiday
prōnūntiāvit declared
ēdidit he gave
mūnera gladiātōria gladiatorial shows
vēnātiōnēs wild beast hunts
lūdōs scaenicōs dramatic shows
interdum from time to time
comitātū retinue

clientium perrūpit. interdum mulier nōbilis ad Capitōlium
prōcēdebat lecticā imposita, quam ferēbant octō servī. crustulārīi
botulārīique per turbam ambulābant quī mercēs suās maximā
20 vōce venditābant. Quīntus ad botulārium praetereuntem accessit
plūrimōsque botulōs ēmit; in gradibus templī cum amīcō sēdit
botulōsque avidē dēvōrāvit.

mox pompa triumphālis accedēbat. Quīntus Pūbliusque
clāmōrēs plausūsque spectātōrum audire poterant. in prīmum
25 ordinem sē trūsērunt pompamque accēdentem spectābant.
pompam dūxērunt legiōnārīi, armīs fulgentibus indūtī. deinde
plaustra innumerābilis praeteriērunt, quae spolia bellī vehēbant;
plaustra titulōs ferēbant quī nōmina urbium captārū exhibēbant.
30 plaustrum quod spolia Ponticī bellī vehēbat hunc titulum solum
exhibēbat: VENI, VIDI, VICI.

post plaustra captīvī contendēbant, catēnīs gravātī, inter quōs
erat Vercingetorix, Gallōrum fortissimus; nēmō Caesarī hostis
ferōcior fuerat quam ille; etiam nunc superbē sē gerēbat,
quamquam mortem crūdēlissimam mox obitūrus erat.

35 dēnique Caesar ipse in cōspectum veniēbat. palūdāmentum
purpureum gerēbat et in capite corōnam lauream. currū
quadriugō vectus manum dextram identidem tollēbat, turbam
spectātōrum salūtāns. currus Quīntum praeterībat cum subitō
axis frāctus est; Caesar ipse paene ad terram cecidit sed sine
40 morā surrēxit montemque Capitōlīnum pedibus ascendit inter
duōs ordinēs elephantōrum.

Word-building

What do the following pairs of adjectives mean?

amīcus	inimīcus
cautus	incautus
certus	incertus
dignus	indignus
fēlix	infēlix
memor	immemor
nōtus	ignōtus

perrūpit burst through
lecticā imposita lying on a litter
crustulārīi sweet-sellers
botulārīi sausage-sellers
mercēs suās their wares
venditābant advertised
praetereuntem passing
avidē greedily
pompa triumphālis the triumphal
procession
sē trūsērunt pushed (themselves)
legiōnārīi legionary soldiers
fulgentibus shining
indūtī dressed in, wearing
plaustra wagons; **spolia** spoils
titulōs notices; **captārū** captured
exhibēbant displayed
catēnīs gravātī weighed down by
chains
sē gerēbat bore himself, behaved
obitūrus about to meet
palūdāmentum purpureum a
purple cloak
corōnam lauream a laurel crown
currū quadriugō four-horsed chariot
vectus carried by, riding in
dextram right
identidem again and again
axis axle; **frāctus** broken



A Roman triumph

Quintus fortunam suam cognoscit

Translate the first paragraph of the following passage and answer the questions on the second

Quintus Publiusque sē vertērunt et summā difficultāte per turbam sē trūsērunt. ad cūriam advēnerant cum anus divīna eīs obstetit.

illa 'nōne vultis, iuvenēs,' inquit, 'fortunam vestram cognoscere? age, belle iuvenis, manum tuam mihi dā.' sīc dīxit et manum

anus divīna an old fortune-teller

eīs obstetit (+ dat.) stood in their way

belle pretty, handsome

prehendit seized; **concessit** gave in

fīēs you will become

āvulsit snatched away

arrīsīt (+ dat.) smiled at

crumēnam his purse; **sinū** pocket

argentum silver, money

cōgitābat thought, reflected

dē eīs quae about what

(the things which)

nē...quidem not even

revocātūrus erat was going to recall

- 5 Publiū prehēdit. Publius invītus concessit. illa manum eius diū inspexit. deinde 'iuvenis es summā virtūte quī mīles fortissimus fīēs. sed cavē, iuvenis, cavē Germāniam. nōlī in Germāniā militāre. mortem prōvideō, mortem crūdēlissimam in silvīs Germāniae.' Publius manum suam āvulsit. rīsīt et 'nōlō plūra cognoscere,' inquit; 'age, Quīnte, tū fortunam tuam cognosce.'

- 10 Quintus invītus divīnam sīvit manum suam inspīcere. illa, ubi manum Quīntī inspexit, eī arrīsīt. 'fortunam optimam tibi prōvideō,' inquit. 'es iuvenis summō ingeniō. poēta clārissimus fīēs principumque comes. age, cārissime, fortunam meliōrem
- 15 nēminī prōvidī quam tibi; itaque praemium fortunā tuā dignum mihi trāde.' Quintus crumēnam ē sinū sūmpsīt argentumque eī trādīdit. continuō Publium valēre iussit domumque cucurrit. diū cōgitābat dē eīs quae divīna eī dīxerat sed nēminī rem rettulīt, nē patrī quidem. tandem divīna illa ex memoriā eius cecidit, sed
- 20 paucīs post annīs verba eius in animum revocātūrus erat.

- 1 What fortune does the old woman predict for Quintus? [3]
- 2 Why does she claim a reward? [2]
- 3 How does Quintus respond to her demand? [2]
- 4 How seriously do you think he took the old woman's prophecy? [2]
- 5 Why should he have recalled her words later? [2]

THE ROMAN TRIUMPH

One of the most sensational events to be seen in ancient Rome was the triumph of a victorious general. This was not an honour which could easily be won. The *triumphātor* had to be dictator, a consul or a praetor. He must have conquered in person, and so completely that his troops could safely leave for Rome; he must have killed at least 5,000 of the enemy and added new territory to the empire.

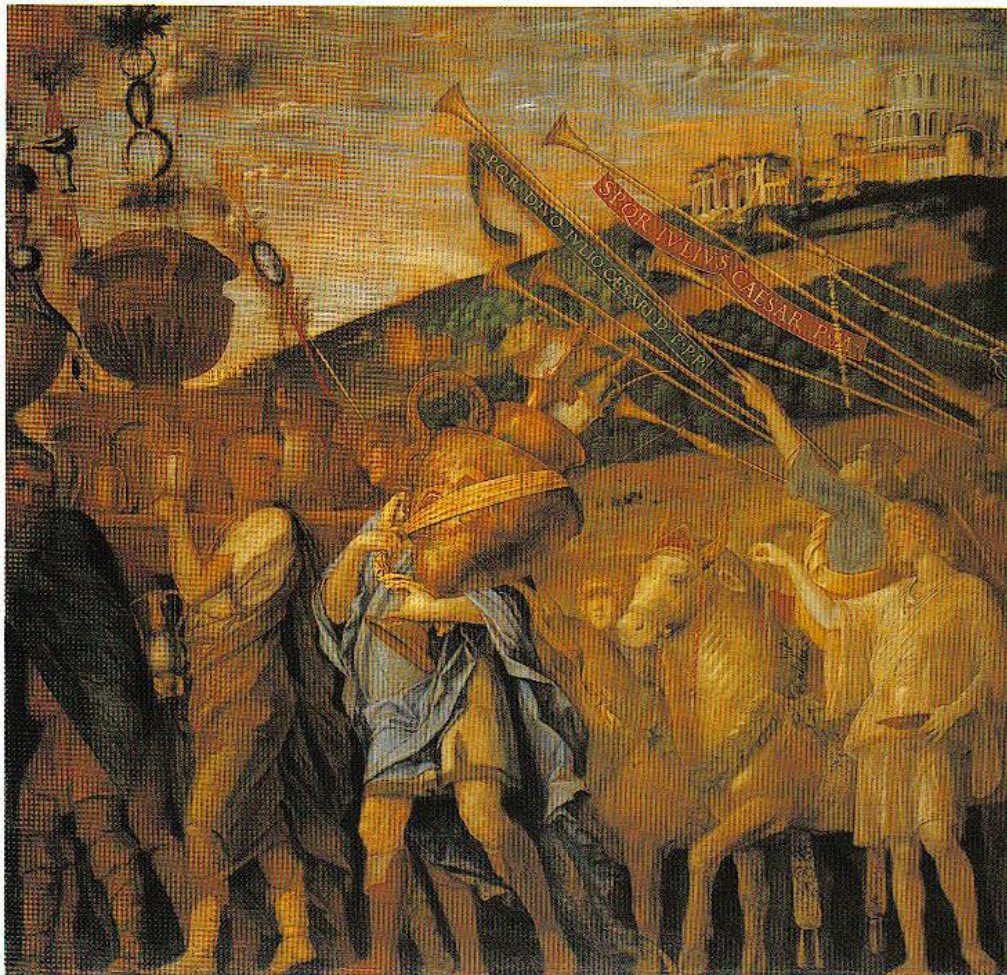
The day of triumph was a holiday for the whole city. Flowers bedecked the buildings and statues, and every altar blazed with fire. The people, wild with excitement, poured forth to line the streets.

The *triumphātor* had spent the previous night with his troops on the Campus Martius. From here the vast triumphal procession

entered the city by a special gate used only on these occasions, the *porta triumphālis*.

The city magistrates led the way, followed by trumpeters sounding the charge. After them came the plunder taken in the campaign, and pictures of the forts, cities, mountains, lakes and seas of the captured territory. Next priests walked, leading the richly adorned white oxen to the sacrifice. And then there were the captives, with the king and his family and chief nobles at their head. Behind them, musicians played and danced. It was a spectacular scene, greeted with deafening applause.

But the cheers redoubled when the *triumphātor* himself came into view, riding in a strange turret-shaped chariot drawn by four white horses. He was robed in gold and purple, his face was painted red, and he was crowned with a laurel wreath. He carried a laurel branch in his right hand and an ivory sceptre in his left. A public slave stood behind him on the chariot holding over his head the crown of Jupiter, an oak wreath made of gold and studded with jewels. The slave continually repeated the words 'Remember that you are a mortal,' amid the hysterical shouting. Since the *triumphātor* was the earthly representative of Capitoline Jupiter, he needed to be reminded that he was also a mere man.



The triumph of Caesar

The victorious soldiers came behind their general wearing olive wreaths, shouting '*lō triumphe!*' (Behold the triumph!) and singing lively songs. The procession went through the Circus Maximus, round the Palatine, and then followed the Sacred Way to the forum. From there it climbed the Capitoline hill to the temple of Jupiter. Meanwhile the chief captives were being put to death in a prison next to the forum.

The oxen were sacrificed outside the temple and the *triumphātor* set his laurel wreath on the lap of the god. Afterwards there was a great banquet in his honour, and then, as evening approached, he went to his home accompanied by the music of flutes and pipes.

So ended a day in which the jubilant Romans celebrated with uncontrolled emotion the military qualities which had made their nation great.

Julius Caesar's triumphs in 46 BC

The triumphal procession of Julius Caesar described in this chapter was part of possibly the most spectacular series of triumphs in Roman history. Over the course of a month, Caesar held four triumphs in celebration of four great campaigns.

As well as staging these vast celebratory pageants, Caesar gave generous gifts to his veterans and to the people of Rome. Each of the former received a minimum of 24,000 sesterces and a grant of land; the latter were given two months' rations of grain and olive oil as well as 300 sesterces. In addition Caesar flung a vast public banquet at which 22,000 dining couches were laid out in the forum.

He put on a sensational series of public shows, a gladiatorial contest in the forum, plays in Greek and Latin in the four districts of Rome, chariot races, athletic competitions and a mock sea-battle with 4,000 oarsmen and 2,000 marines. He also staged wild beast hunts in a specially built wooden amphitheatre for four days running. And the entertainment ended with a battle between two armies in the Circus Maximus, each consisting of 500 infantry, 30 cavalry and 20 elephants.

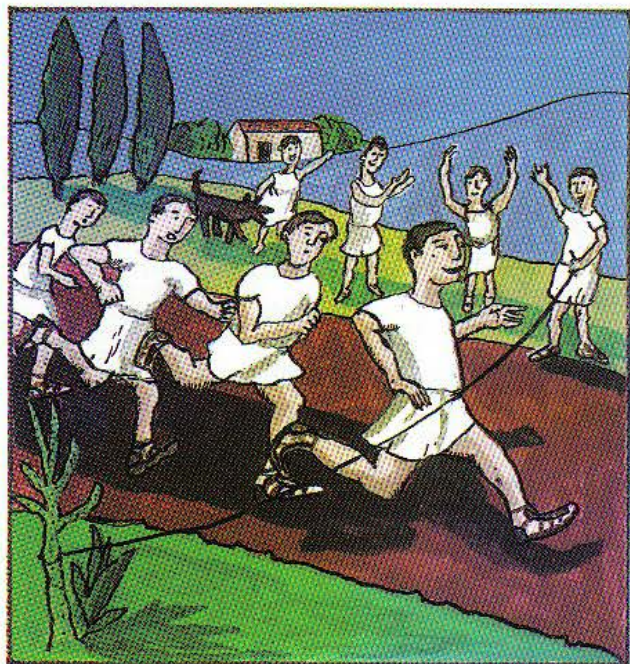
So vast a crowd flocked to see these events that large numbers of visitors had to sleep in tents placed along the streets of the city and many of them were killed in the crush.

What do you think were Caesar's motives in laying on these extravagant celebrations? (You may remember Juvenal's phrase 'pānem et circēnsēs' from the background section of chapter 17.)

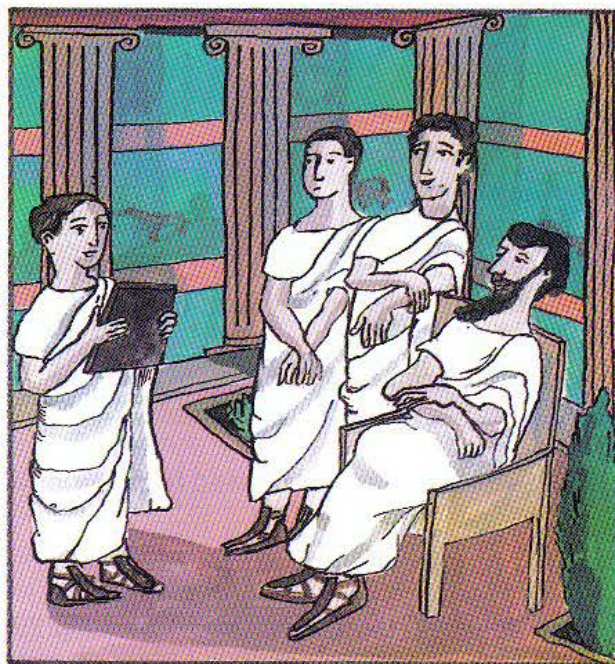
Think of any great parade or procession that has taken place in modern times. In what ways, if any, is it like a Roman triumph?

Chapter 25

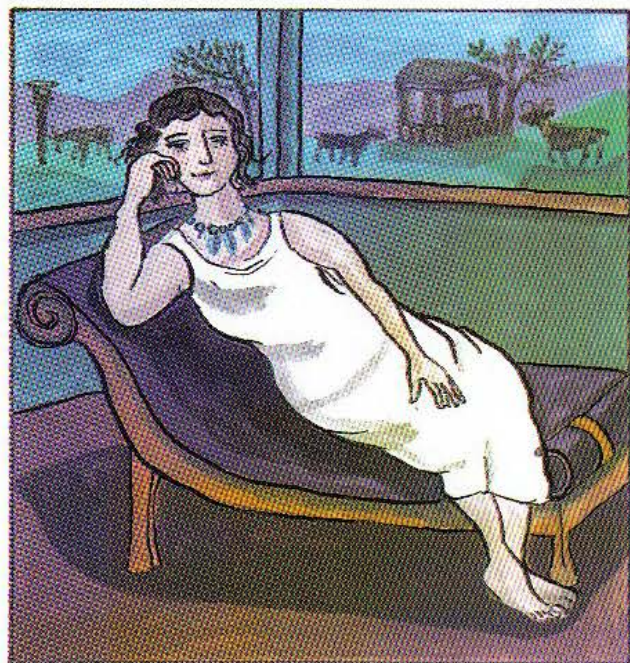
Quintus togam virilem sumit



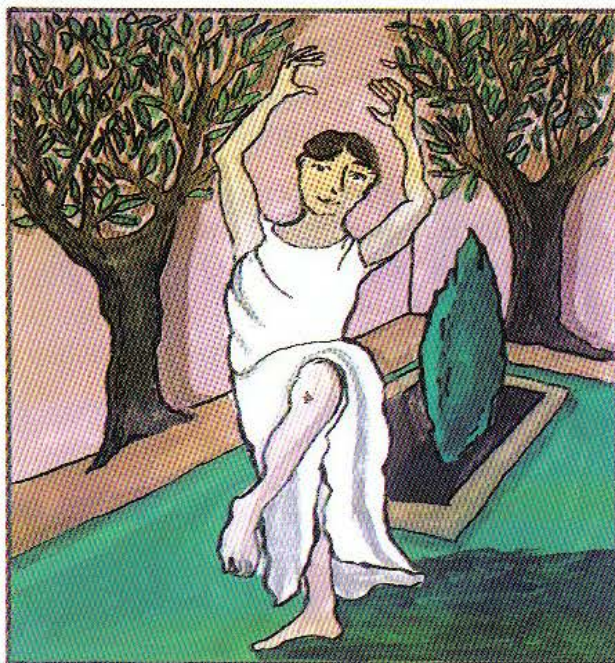
Pūblius celerrimē cucurrit; nēmō celerius currere potest quam ille.



Quīntus Homērum facillimē legit; nēmō Homērum melius legit quam ille.



numquam puellam pulchriōrem vīdī quam Iūliam; Iūlia pulcherrima est.



Horātia saltū (*dancing*) magnopere gaudet; nēmō saltū magis gaudet quam illa.

Vocabulary 25

verbs

lūceō, lūcēre, lūxī	I shine
sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī	I take (up); I put on

nouns

diligentia, -ae, f.	care, diligence
litterae, -arum, f. pl.	letters, literature
campus, -ī, m.	plain, field
facilitās, facilitātis, f.	ease, facility
lēx, lēgis, f.	law
multitūdō, multitūdinis, f.	multitude, crowd
iūs, iūris, n.	right, justice
tumultus, tumultūs, m.	riot, uproar

adjectives

brevis, breve	short
īsignis, īsigne	outstanding, distinguished
puerilis, puerile	of boys, childish
virilis, virile	of men, manly
toga virilis	the toga of manhood

adverb

quam + superlative, e.g. quam celerrimē	= as quickly as possible
-------------------------------------------------------	--------------------------

List twelve English words derived from Latin words in this vocabulary.

Quīntus togam virilem sūmit

Quīntus iam nōn puer erat sed iuvenis, togam virilem sūmere parātus. amīcōrum plūrimī ā lūdō Orbiliī discesserant et rhētoricae studēbant. ipse nōlēbat diūtius in lūdō studēre; cupiēbat lātiōrem campum inīre. hiems praeterierat, vēr iam
5 aderat. Quīntus in scholā sedēbat dum Orbilius dē poētā quōdam vetere disserēbat; Quīntus nullī poētae studuerat frīgidiōrī quam illī. Orbiliū nōn audiēbat, sed carmen ipse scrībēbat; hōs versūs iam fēcerat quī eī maximē placēbant:

diffūgērunt nivēs, redeunt iam grāmina campīs
10 arboribusque comae...

Orbilius eum vīdit scrībentem. 'Quīnte,' inquit, 'quid facis?' Quīntus respondit: 'ego, magister? nihil faciō. tē audiō.' Orbilius 'nōn tibi crēdō, Quīnte,' inquit. 'venī hūc et dā mihi illam tabulam.'

rhētoricae rhetoric

disserēbat was lecturing

frīgidiōrī more boring

nivēs the snows; grāmina (n. pl.)
grass; comae leaves

The goddess of flowers,
the embodiment of spring





Teacher and boy

15 Quīntus invītus magistrō pārui. surrēxit tabulamque eī
trādīdīt. Orbilius īrātus erat, sed, ubi tabulam eius īnspexit, etiam
magis īrātus erat. nam in angulō tabulae Quīntus imāginem
scrīpserat magistrī.

angulō corner; **imāginem** picture

18 ille Quīntum ferōciter īnspexit et maximā vōce 'quid?' inquit,
20 'quid? dum ego poētā optimum expōnō, tū imāginēs magistrī
scrībīs et versūs pessimōs? vidē! hī versūs nē rēctī quidem sunt.
venī hūc.' haec dīxit et ferulam sūmpsīt; sex plāgās Quīntō dedit,
trēs quod magistrum nōn audīverat, trēs quod malōs versūs
scrīpserat. Quīntus ad sēdem rediit, et dolēns et īrātus.

nē... quidem not even

ferulam cane; **plāgās** strokes

25 Quīntus, ubi domum rediit, patrī omnia nārrāvit. Flaccus, ubi
omnia cognōvit, 'Quīnte,' inquit, 'paene quīnque annōs in lūdō
Orbiliī mānsistī; dīligentissimē studuistī. iam iuvenis es. tempus
est togam virīlem sūmere et studia puerīlia dēpōnere. iam dēbēs
ad rhētorem īre.' postrīdiē Quīntus, quī vīgintī annōs nātus erat,
30 togam virīlem sūmpsīt.

dolēns smarting, in pain

paucīs post diēbus Flaccus filiū ad Hēliodōrum dūxit. ille
optimus erat rhētorum, quī iuvenēs ōrātiōnēs facere īnstituēbat ac
multa docēbat dē iūre et lēgibus. discipulōrum eius plūrimī in
rēpūblicā īsignēs fiēbant. Hēliodōrus pauca eum rogāvit;
35 Quīntus ad omnia facillimē respondit. ille Flaccō dīxit: 'iuvenis
est magnō ingenīō. paucōs libentius in numerum discipulōrum
meōrum accēpī.'

rhētorem the rhetoric teacher

vīgintī annōs nātus twenty years old

īnstituēbat trained

libentius more gladly

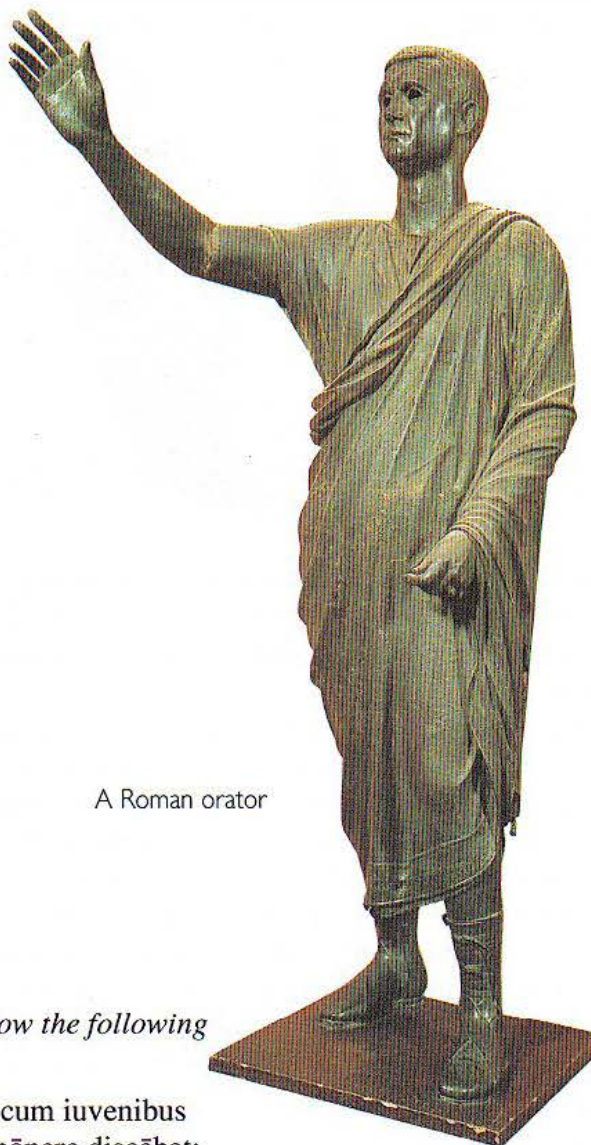
Respondē Latīnē

- 1 dum Orbilius dē poētā vetere disserēbat, quid faciēbat Quīntus?
- 2 ubi Orbilius Quīntum vīdit scrībentem, quid dīxit?
- 3 ubi Quīntus tabulam eī trādīdīt, cūr etiam magis īrātus erat Orbilius?
- 4 ubi Quīntus eī omnia nārrāvit, quid respondit pater?
- 5 quis erat Hēliodōrus?

Word-building

What do the following adjectives mean?
From what noun is each formed?

labōriōsus, -a, -um
periculōsus, -a, -um
glōriōsus, -a, -um
fābulōsus, -a, -um
ōtiōsus, -a, -um
fōrmōsus, -a, -um



A Roman orator

Quintus rhētoricae studet

Without translating answer the questions below the following passage

cotīdiē Quīntus ad scholam Hēliodōrī ibat et cum iuvenibus nōbilibus rhētoricae studēbat. ōrātiōnēs compōnere discēbat; contrōversiis intererat; plūrima dē iūre, plūrima dē lēgibus cognōscēbat. studia longa et difficillima erant nec Quīntum multum dēlectābant; mālēbat enim litterīs studēre, in prīmīs poētīs Graecīs. nihilōminus summā dīligentiā studēbat quod patrī placēre cupiēbat.

contrōversiis debates

dēlectābant pleased

in prīmīs above all

nihilōminus nevertheless

Idibus Martiis on 15 March

Idibus Martiis Quīntus, ubi Hēliodōrus discipulōs dīmīsīt, domum lentē redībat. illā nocte maxima tempestās fuerat, sed iam diēs amoenus erat; sōl lūcēbat, aura lēnis per viās flābat. itaque Quīntus cōstituit ad Campum Martium ire; volēbat enim in flūmine Tiberī natāre. forum trānsiit et mox ad Viam Triumphālem advēnit. sed ubi ad theātrum Pompēi vēnit, maximam turbam hominum vīdit prō theātrō stantem.

amoenus pleasant; lēnis gentle

flābat was blowing

natāre to swim

- 1 What did Quintus learn in the rhetorical school?
- 2 Why didn't he like these studies much? Why did he work hard?
- 3 Why did he decide to go to the Campus Martius?
- 4 What did he find on his way there?

[2]

[2+2]

[3]

[3]

INTO ADULTHOOD

The toga virilis

While girls generally left their childhood behind on the eve of their marriage when they would dedicate their toys and dolls to the household gods (the Lares), a boy could come of age at any stage of his teens. He and his father would agree when this should happen. The ceremony regularly took place on 17 March, the festival of Liber and Libera. The youth laid his boy's tunic (the straight tunic – *tunica rēcta* – so called because it was woven straight) before the Lares and, in the case of a freedman's son such as Quintus, his leather collar with its amulet.* Instead of the purple-boarded *toga praetexta* he wore the white *toga pūra* or *toga virilis* of adulthood. Escorted by family and friends, he went to the *tabulārium*, the Public Records Office, on the slopes of the Capitol. Here he was registered as a full citizen and enrolled in his tribe, one of the voting groups of ancient Rome.

An upper-class youth was now in a position to enter on public life and learn the ropes of public administration under the guidance of his father or some other distinguished individual. Here Cicero describes his own sixteenth year:

When I had formally put on the *toga virilis* I was taken by my father to the lawyer Quintus Mucius Scaevola. The idea was that – so far as was humanly possible – I should never leave the old man's sight. There were all manner of things that Scaevola used to talk about with intelligence and penetration. I formed the habit of memorizing all his epigrammatic remarks as a useful addition to my knowledge.

We have marked Quintus' journey into adulthood by sending him to the *rhētor*.

The rhētor

Rhetoric, or the art of speaking, was the basic tertiary or further education to which well-to-do boys proceeded on leaving the *grammaticus*. Philosophy was an optional extra which was taken by relatively few. Rhetoric had been developed as a teachable skill by the sophists, the travelling teachers of the Greek world, in Athens in the last quarter of the fifth century BC. They raised questions about beliefs which had been previously taken for granted – such as whether the gods had any effect on the world of men – and their weapon was argument. Thus one of the things they taught was the art of speaking.

Rhetoric, taught by the *rhētor*, involved learning how to argue a case clearly and elegantly, and it has been called the art of



A young man in a toga

*A free citizen's son wore a golden locket (*bulla*).

persuasion. The whole study was reduced to a complex system with many technical terms and rules. Students studied model speeches, composed their own on set subjects, and took part in debates, often on imaginary law cases. The practical importance of rhetoric in a world without newspapers, television or radio can scarcely be exaggerated. The public speech was the only way of communicating with your fellow citizens in the mass and any Roman who hoped to make his mark had to strive to excel in this art.

In Horace's day, debates divided into (1) abstract, general themes such as 'Should one marry?' and (2) particular themes related to a situation, for example with the students imagining themselves as the young Hannibal in Carthage wondering, 'Should I cross the Alps to invade Italy?'

We have sent Quintus to the *rhētor* Heliodorus. The latter was a historical figure and a friend of Quintus who describes him as '*Graecōrum longē doctissimus*' ('by far the most learned of the Greeks'). But we do not know whether he in fact kept a rhetorical school at Rome, though it is quite likely that he did since most of the teachers of rhetoric were Greek.

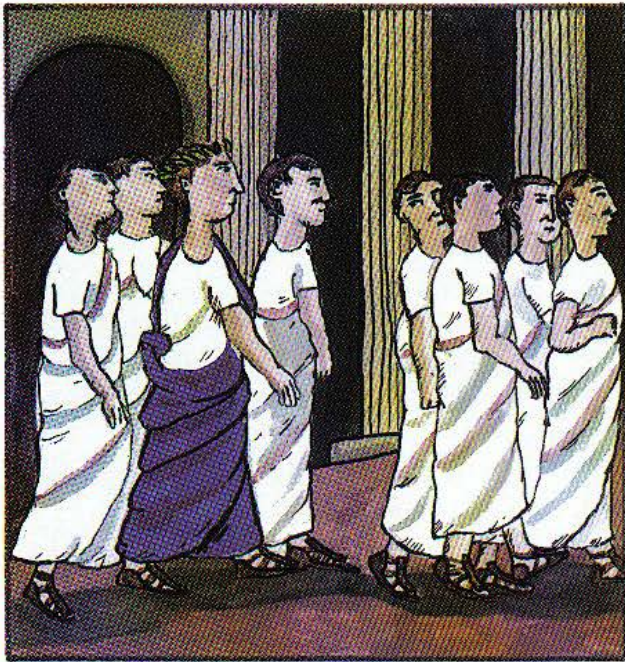
When a youth had completed his rhetorical studies, he was ready to embark on a career in politics, which often began, as in Cicero's case, with practising at the bar, or in business, which many preferred to the hurly burly of politics, while others would go on to study philosophy as Quintus is to do.

A son banished from home studies medicine. When his father falls ill, and all the other doctors despair of saving him, he is summoned and says that he can cure him, if he drinks the medicine he gives him. The father, having drunk part of the medicine, says that he has been poisoned. The son drinks the rest, but the father dies, and the son is accused of parricide.

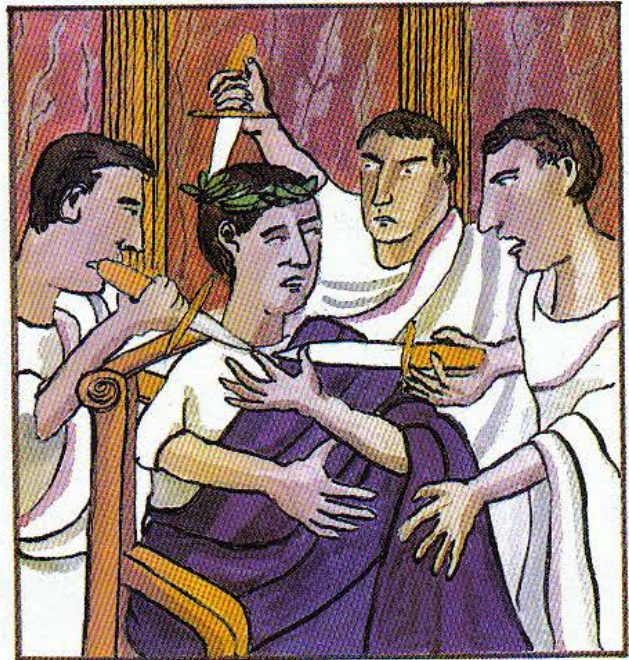
Present the case either for or against the accused.

Chapter 26

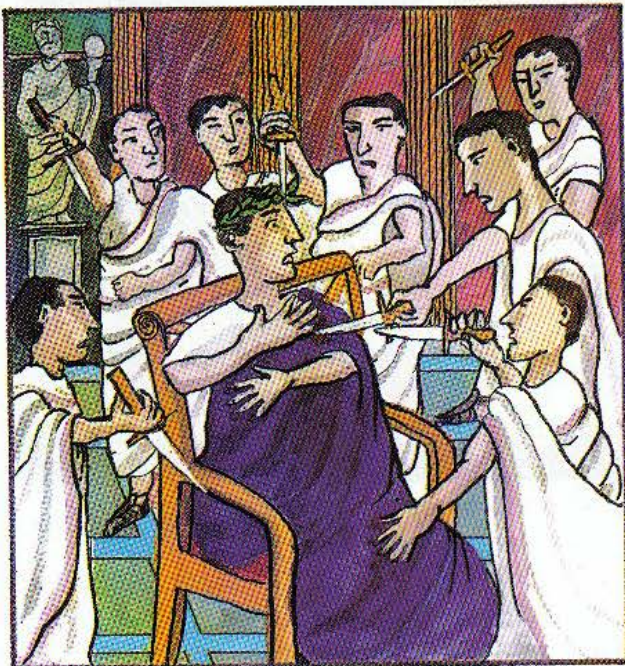
Idus Martiae



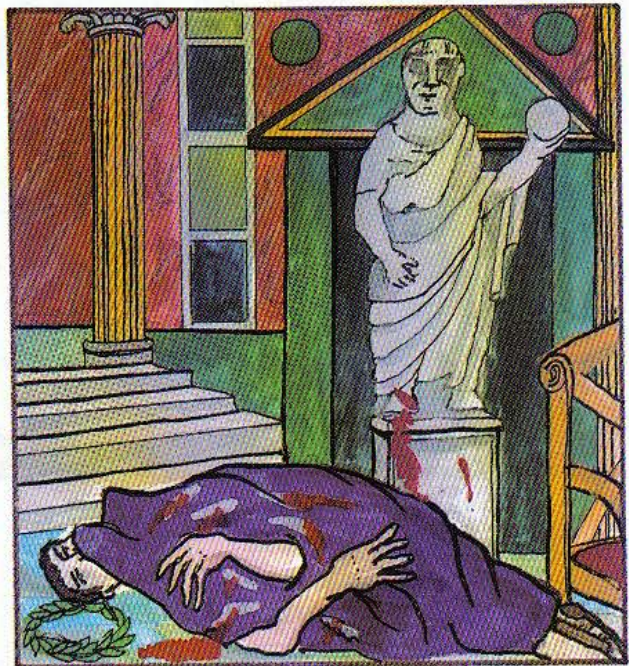
Quīntus Iūlium Caesarem vīdit theātrum cum magistrātibus intrantem.



coniūrātī Caesarem circumstantēs eum undique oppugnāvērunt.



inter aliōs Caesar Brūtum vīdit in sē currentem.



coniūrātī Caesarem reliquērunt in terrā ante statuam Pompēiī iacentem.

Vocabulary 26

verbs

ardeō, ardēre, arsi	I burn, am on fire
accidit, accidere, accidit	it happens
feriō, ferīre	I strike
perveniō, pervenīre, pervēnī	I arrive, reach

adverbs

num?	surely not?
satis + gen.	enough

preposition

prō + abl.	in front of; on behalf of, for
-------------------	--------------------------------

nouns

causa, -ae, f.	cause, reason
gladius, -ī, m.	sword
tyrannus, -ī, m.	tyrant
theātrum, -ī, n.	theatre
pars, partis, f.	part
timor, timōris, m.	fear
caput, capitis, n.	head

adjectives

armātus, -a, -um	armed
quantus, -a, -um?	how great?
ultimus, -a, -um	furthest, last

What are: (1) an ardent lover, (2) an ordinal number, (3) a cautious advance, (4) an ultimate goal, (5) a capital city? From what Latin word is each English adjective derived?



A procession of senators

Idūs Martiae

Quīntus, ubi multitudinem hominum vīdit prō theātrō Pompeī stantem, cognōscere cupiit causam tantī conventūs. itaque per turbam ad primum ōrdinem sē īnsinuāvit, unde omnia vidēre poterat. plūrimī senātōrēs aliīque virī īsignēs theātrum inībant. deinde Quīntus vīdit Gāium Iūlium Caesarem cum magistrātibus

conventūs gathering

sē īnsinuāvit wormed his way



The killing of Caesar, a scene from Shakespeare's *Julius Caesar*

intransentem. togam purpuream gerēbat et in capite corōnam lauream. omnēs senātōrēs surrēxērunt Caesaremque salūtāvērunt.

dum sēdet, multī senātōrēs eum circumstant. deinde senātor quīdam eum aliquid rogat et togam eius manibus tenet. eō ipsō tempore alter senātōrum eum pugiōne ferit; tertius brācchium vulnerat. Caesar surgere temptāvit, sed coniūrātī eum undique oppugnābant.

inter aliōs Caesar Brūtum vīdit amīcum suum intimum in sē currentem; 'et tū, Brūte?' inquit. tum caput togā obvolvīt et dēcidit ad terram, tribus et vīgintī vulneribus cōnfossus.

coniūrātī Caesarem reliquērunt in terrā iacentem ante statuam Pompēiī. ē theātrō ērūpērunt et populō clāmāvērunt: 'mortuus est tyrannus; populum Rōmānum liberāvimus.' sed omnēs tacitī stābant, rē dīrā obstupefactī.

Quīntus sē vertit et domum cucurrit. ubi domum advēnit, patrem vocāvit. Flaccus eum ānxius audīvit omnia nārrantem. paulisper tacuit. tandem 'quid iam futūrum est?' inquit; 'rēspublica in magnō periculō est. sine dubiō tumultūs vidēbimus. tū, Quīnte, cavēre dēbēs.'

quīntō diē post mortem Caesaris, ubi Quīntus ad forum advēnit, ingentem turbam vīdit tōtum forum complentem. nōn poterat pervenīre ad viam quae ad scholam Hēliodōrī ferēbat. itaque in ultimā parte forī manēbat gradūsque templī ascendit, unde omnia vidēre poterat.

purpuream purple

corōnam lauream a laurel crown

pugiōne with a dagger

brācchium his arm

coniūrātī the conspirators

intimum closest

obvolvīt wrapped

cōnfossus pierced

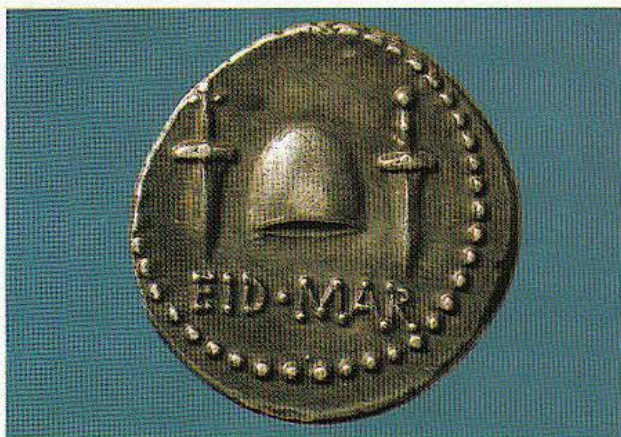
ērūpērunt burst out

obstupefactī dumfounded

futūrum going to happen

vidēbimus we shall see

complementem filling



The daggers, the cap of liberty
and the Ides of March

Word-building

Remember that **con-** either = 'together' or simply strengthens the meaning of the uncompounded verb, e.g. **iaciō** = 'I throw', **coniciō** = either 'I throw together' or 'I hurl'.

What is the meaning of the following compound verbs?

concurrō, **conclāmō**, **cōnficiō**, **commoveō**, **convocō**,
compōnō, **conveniō**, **conferō**

The prefix **per-** either means 'through', like the preposition, e.g.

percurrō I run through
perrumpō I break through

or gives the notion of completeness, e.g.

faciō	I do	perficiō	I carry through, complete
suādeō	I persuade	persuādeō	I (completely) persuade
veniō	I come	pervenio	I come all the way, I reach

This prefix is attached to some adjectives, e.g.

facilis	easy	perfacilis	extremely easy
dūrus	hard	perdūrus	extremely hard

The prefix **dī-/dis-** means 'in different directions', e.g.

dīmittō I send in different directions, I dismiss
dispōnō I put in different places, I arrange
diffugiō (I) flee in different directions, scatter
discurrō (I) run in different directions, run about

The preposition **circum** + acc. = 'around'; it is found prefixed to many verbs, e.g.

circumveniō I surround
circumvolō I fly around
circumeō I go around
circumdūcō I lead around

Caesaris fūnus

Translate the first paragraph and answer the questions below on the second

Quīntus in gradibus templī stāns magnam pompam cōspexit in forum prōcēdentem. magistrātūs feretrum ferēbant, in quō iacēbat corpus Caesaris. in medium forum prōcessērunt feretrumque prō rōstrīs dēposuērunt. Marcus Antōnius, Caesaris

5 amīcus, rōstra ascendit et ōrātiōnem ad populum habuit. Caesarem laudāvit, coniūrātōs vehementer accūsāvit, populum ad furōrem excitāvit.

ubi Antōnius ōrātiōnem cōnfēcit dēscenditque dē rōstrīs, hominēs ubīque clāmābant et furēbant. duo hominēs, quī prope

10 rōstra stābant, gladiīs armātī facēsque manibus tenentēs, ad feretrum accessērunt. feretrum facibus accendērunt. aliī accurrērunt et virgulta in flammās iēcērunt; aliī subsellia rapuērunt et imposuērunt. mox ingēns pyra ardēbat et corpus Caesaris flammīs cremātum erat. deinde manūs hominum ē forō

15 cucurrērunt coniūrātōs quaerentium, certī mortem Caesaris vindicāre.

- 1 What was the effect of Antony's speech on the crowd? [2]
- 2 What did the two men standing near the platform do? [2]
- 3 How did other members of the crowd react? [4]
- 4 What did the men who ran from the forum intend to do? [2]

THE END OF THE REPUBLIC

A key moment in the long drawn-out death of the Roman republic occurred in 60 BC. As we saw in chapter 21, the three most powerful men of the time, Julius Caesar, Gnaeus Pompey and Marcus Licinius Crassus, joined in an alliance known as the First Triumvirate. They made it clear that nothing would stand in their way and, when he became consul in 59 BC, Caesar made sure that nothing did. The Triumvirate was supported by the army, the knights and the people, and so the senate was unable to oppose it. Nobody paid any attention to Cicero's frantic appeals to save the republic.

Over the next decade Caesar fought his famous and brilliant campaigns in Gaul (France, Holland and Belgium), through which he established a justified reputation as one of the greatest generals in the history of the world. He ensured that his military genius gained a wide circulation by writing his own history of his campaigns in the seven books of his *Commentaries of the War in Gaul*. These show him not only as a great general but as a fine war correspondent. They are direct and plain in style but always exciting. His two raids on Britain (in 55 and 54 BC) proved of

fūnus funeral

feretrum bier

corpus body

rōstrīs the Rostra

vehementer violently

furōrem madness

furēbant ran mad

facēs torches

virgulta (n. pl.) brushwood

subsellia (n. pl.) benches

cremātum burnt; manūs bands, gangs; certī resolved

vindicāre to avenge



Mark Antony

little lasting value but had all the glamour of perilous journeys into the unknown. However, the situation at Rome was less happy for him. The alliance between Pompey, Crassus and himself, all of them ruthlessly ambitious, lasted a surprisingly long time; it threatened to dissolve in 56 BC, but the three met and patched things up. Crassus, however, was killed in Parthia in 53 BC (see the end of chapter 21), and Pompey became more and more closely allied to the senate. Caesar and Pompey were being driven further apart, and the senate voted on 1 January 49 BC that Caesar, who was still in Gaul, should lay down his command.

Caesar's response came on 10 January, when he brought his army into Italy. This was really a declaration of civil war since it was treason for a general to enter Italy at the head of an army. Caesar fully realized the great significance of what he was doing. He spent one hour in solitary thought. Then he crossed the river Rubicon, which marked the frontier between Gaul and Italy, and exclaimed '*iacta ālea est!*' ('The die is cast!')

Pompey and most of the senate withdrew across the Adriatic to Greece. Caesar defeated Pompey's supporters in Spain, then followed him to Greece and in 48 BC won a great victory over him at Pharsalus. Pompey fled on horseback and succeeded in escaping to Egypt, but was stabbed to death as he landed. Ptolemy, the boy king of Egypt, sent his head to Caesar, hoping to win favour with him, but the victor was revolted and distressed by this grisly gift.

Other wars were to follow – including the lightning campaign in Pontus in Asia when he polished off his opponents there with the celebrated boast '*vēnī, vīdī, vīcī*' ('I came, I saw, I conquered'). He had a notorious love affair with Cleopatra, the irresistible Egyptian queen. He was by now the most powerful man in the Western world, and, great statesman that he was, he embarked on a series of major reforms and a vast building programme. Yet many worried that he was taking so much power into his hands. He was appointed dictator, first in 49 BC and then for life in February 44 BC. Though he refused the title *rēx* (king), he put on the purple robe worn by the Tarquins, and his supreme power struck many as intolerable. A conspiracy to assassinate him led by Marcus Brutus and Gaius Cassius succeeded in 44 BC. His mutilated body fell at the foot of the statue of his great opponent Pompey, as you have read.

It was now the task of his friend Marcus Antonius and of his great-nephew and heir Octavian to avenge his death.

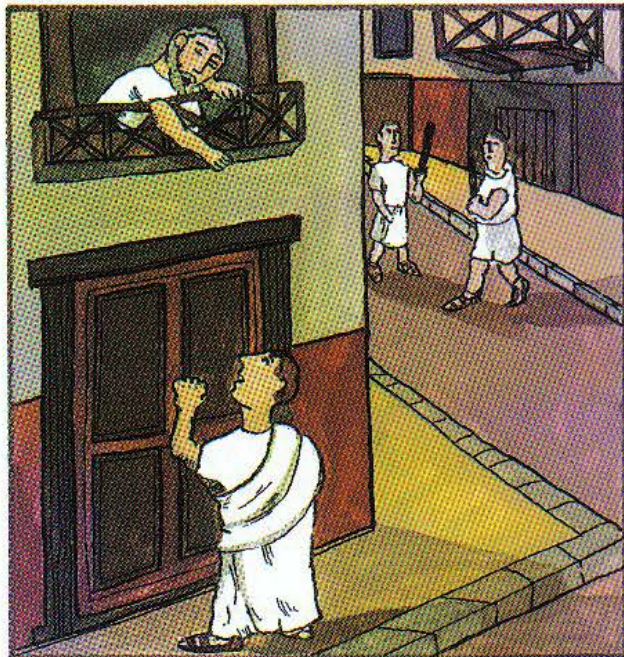


Octavian

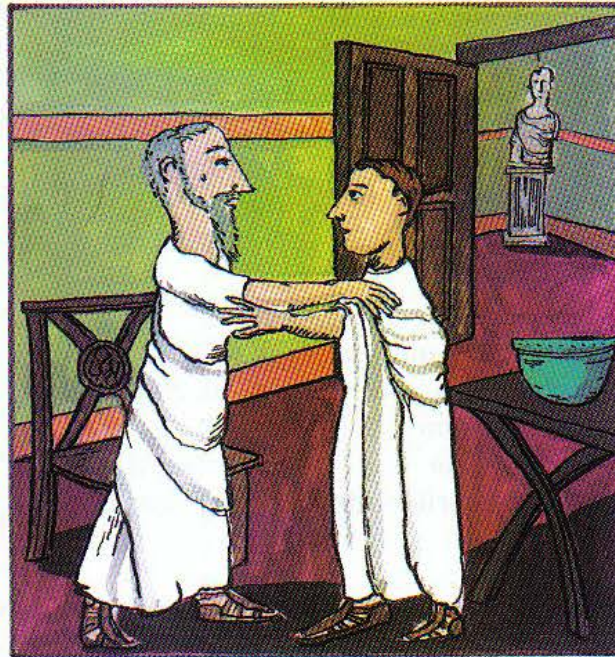
Write a paragraph describing Julius Caesar's thoughts as he sat by the Rubicon.

Chapter 27

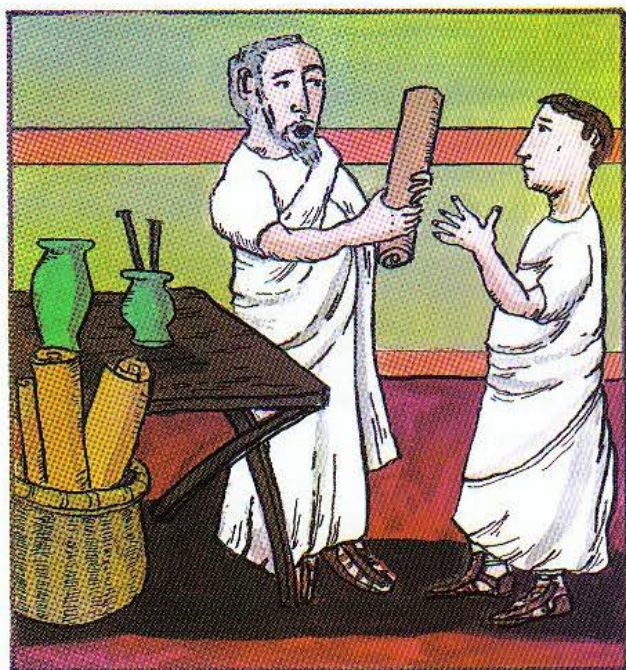
Quintus Roma discedere parat



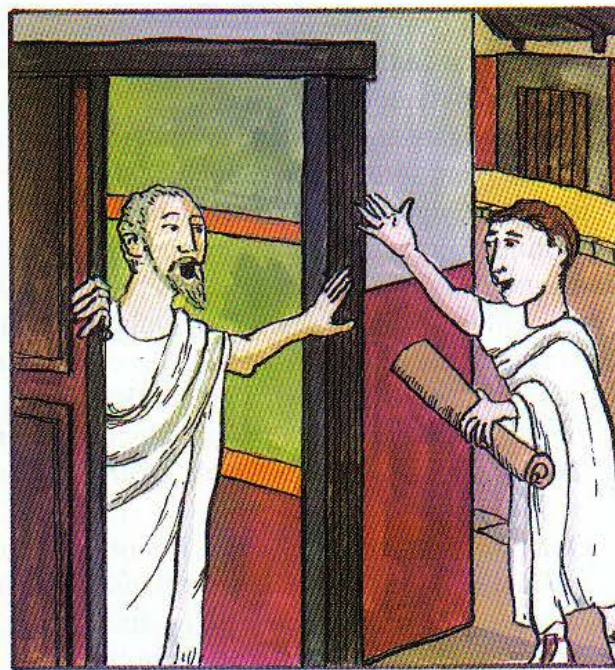
Quīntus iānuam diū pulsāt. tandem Hēliodōrus ē fenestrā prōspicit.



Quīntus Hēliodōrum valēre iubet; nam mox Athēnās nāvīgābit.



ille 'cum Athēnās advēneris,' inquit, 'hanc epistolam amīcō meō trāde; ille tē iuvābit.'



Quīntus grātiās eī agit et 'cum Athēnās advēnerō,' inquit, 'epistolam tibi mittam.'

These captions introduce two new tenses; what time do they express?

Vocabulary 27

verbs

vexō, vexāre, vexāvī	I worry, annoy
augeō, augēre, auxī	I increase
accendō, accendere, accendī	I set fire to
colligō, colligere, collēgī	I collect, gather
ruō, ruere, ruī	I rush

adjectives

benignus, -a, -um	kind
plēnus, -a, -um + abl.	full (of)
scelestus, -a, -um	wicked, criminal
ūllus, -a, -um	any
cīvilis, cīvile	of citizens, civil
prūdēns, prūdētis	prudent, sensible, wise

nouns

philosophia, -ae, f.	philosophy
exitium, -ī, n.	destruction
imperium Rōmānum, n.	the Roman empire
ōtium, -ī, n.	leisure
orbis, orbis, m.	circle, globe
orbis terrārum	the globe, the world
potestās, potestātis, f.	power
portus, portūs, m.	port

adverbs

crās	tomorrow
ergō	and so
māne	early (in the morning)

Form English words from the following Latin words and make up an English sentence to illustrate the meaning of each: **augeō, cīvilis, imperium, orbis, benignus.**

Quīntus Athēnās nāvigāre parat

Quīntus domum cucurrit territus et omnia patrī nārrāvit. ille caput dēmīsit oculōsque manibus operuit. tandem 'Quīnte,' inquit, 'bellum cīvile prōvideō. cīvēs furunt. magistrātūs urbem regere nōn possunt. Rōmā discēdere dēbēmus. tū, Quīnte, dēbēs

5 Athēnās nāvigāre et philosophiae studēre; ego Venusiam redībō et mātrem tuam sorōremque cūrābō.'

postrīdiē Quīntus māne ad scholam Hēliodōrī festīnābat. iter difficillimum erat quod multae manūs scelestōrum per viās errābant; rēs rapiēbant, aedēs accendēbant. Quīntus tandem ad

10 scholam advēnit; iānuā clausa erat; Quīntus iānuam pulsāvit sed nēmō aperuit. ad aedēs igitur Hēliodōrī cucurrit, quae nōn longē aberant. diū iānuam pulsābat. tandem Hēliodōrus fenestram aperuit et prōspexit. Quīntum vīdit; dēscendit iānuamque aperuit. 'intrā celeriter,' inquit, et ubi Quīntus intrāvit, iānuam iterum

15 clausit.

Quīntus tōtam rem eī exposuit. Hēliodōrus respondit: 'pater tuus vēra dīcit; vir prūdētissimus est. urbs in maximō periculō est. ducēs enim nec pācem nec lēgēs cūrant; nihil cupiunt nisi suam potestātem augēre. bella cīvīlia prōvideō et proelia tōtum

20 per orbem terrārum redintegrāta; cīvēs cum cīvibus pugnābunt, patrēs cum filiīs. numquamne pācem vidēbimus et ōtium? quis deus, quis homō rempūblicam servāre poterit? tōtum imperium Rōmānum in exitium ruit.'

dēmīsit lowered; **operuit** covered
furunt are running mad

clausa shut; **pulsāvit** knocked on

fenestram window

redintegrāta renewed

25 nōn poterat plūra dicere; oculi lacrimis plēnī erant. paulisper
tacēbat, deinde 'ergō tū, Quīnte,' inquit, 'Athēnās ibis
philosophiaeque ibi studēbis? euge! iuvenis es magnō ingeniō, et
sī diligenter studueris, multa discēs et valdē doctus fies. sed
manē; ego epistolam scribam ad amicum meum quī in Acadēmā
scholās habet.'

doctus learned

scholās habet gives lectures

30 in tablinum exiit; mox revēnit epistolamque Quīntō trādidit.
'cum Athēnās advēneris,' inquit, 'hanc epistolam Theomnēstō
trāde; vir est summā ēruditiōne, vetus meus amicus. ille tē
benignē accipiet et tua studia cūrābit. deī tē servābunt. valē.'

ēruditiōne learning

Quīntus grātiās eī ēgit domumque festināvit.

Word-building

Learn the following compounds of **speciō** (which is only used in compounds):

aspiciō (= ad-speciō), aspicere , aspexi	I look at
cōspiciō , cōspicere , cōspexi	I catch sight of
dēspiciō , dēspicere , dēspexi	I look down at
īspiciō , īspicere , īspexi	I look at, inspect
prōspiciō , prōspicere , prōspexi	I look forward, look out
respiciō , respicere , respexi	I look back at

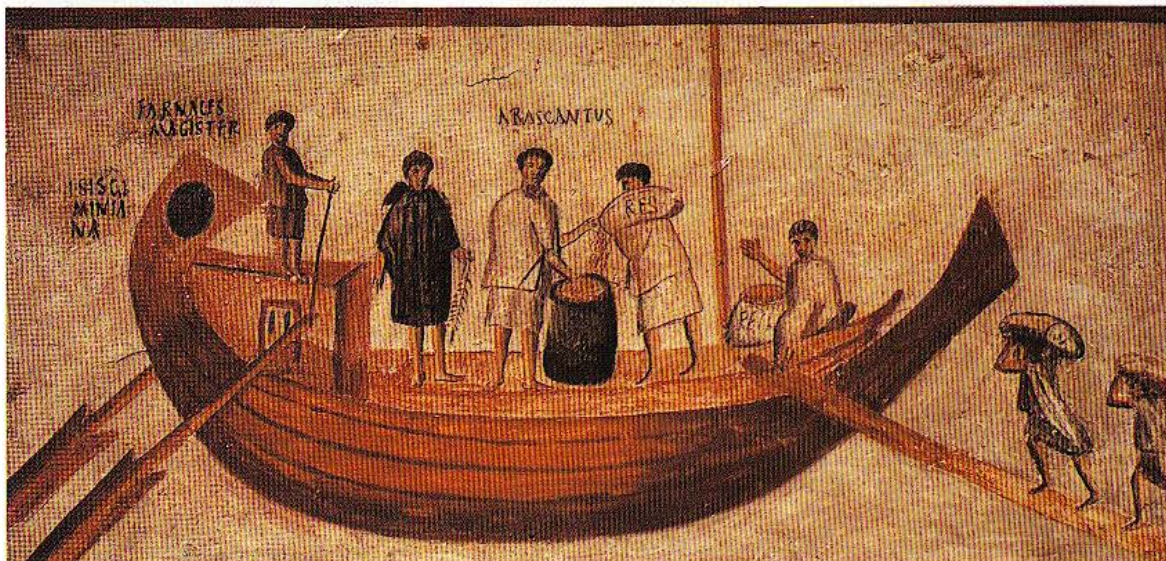
Quīntus Rōmā discēdit

Translate the first paragraph and answer the questions on the rest

Quīntus ubi domum rediit patrem invēnit rēs compōnentem. ille
'age, Quīnte,' inquit; 'nōlī cessāre; sine morā ad portum ībimus
nāvemque quaerēmus quae ad Graeciam tē feret. nōlō diūtius in
urbe manēre; melius est statim discēdere.'

5 Quīntus librōs et vestīmenta collēgit et mox parātus erat. pater
filiusque statim in viam exiērunt festinābantque ad portum.

A Roman merchant ship
in the harbour at Ostia



vesper aderat cum ad Ostia advēnērunt. Flaccus 'sēra hōra est,' inquit; 'noctem in caupōnā manēbimus; crās māne ad portum ībimus nāvemque quaerēmus.'

Ostia (n. pl.) Ostia, the port of Rome
sēra hōra late
caupōnā inn

- 10 prīmā lūce surrēxērunt et festīnāvērunt ad portum. plūrimās nāvēs prope lītus vīdērunt, et magnās et parvās. ex aliīs nautae frūmentum ferēbant ad horrea; ex aliīs servī, catēnīs vīctī, exībant. ubīque clāmōrēs et tumultus. Flaccus filiusque secundum lītus ambulābant nāvem idōneam quaerentēs. tandem
15 parvam nāvem invēnērunt quae illō ipsō diē ad Graeciam nāvigātūra erat. magister eōs benignē accēpit et viāticum modicum rogāvit.

horrea (n. pl.) granaries
catēnīs vīctī bound with chains
secundum (+ acc.) along
idōneam suitable
nāvigātūra about to sail
viāticum modicum a modest fare

- 1 How did Quintus prepare for his journey? [2]
2 When they got to the port of Rome, why did they stay in an inn? [2]
3 What did they see in the port the next morning? [4]
4 How did the captain of the ship receive them? [2]

Fābella: Idūs Martiae

Persōnae: Iūlius Caesar, Calpurnia (uxor eius), Decimus Brūtus

Caesar post noctem turbulentam ad senātum ire parat.

turbulentam wild

Caesar: quanta tempestās tōtam per noctem furēbat!
Calpurnia, dum dormit, ter exclāmāvit: 'succurrite!
5 Caesarem trucidant.'

ter three times
trucidant they are murdering

intrat Calpurnia.

Calpurnia: quid facis, Caesar? num in animō habēs ad senātum ire? nōlī hodiē ex aedibus exīre.

Caesar: quid dīcis? certē ad senātum ībō. nūlla causa timōris est.

Calpurnia: Caesar, prōdigia numquam magnī fēcī, sed nunc multa mē terrent. leaina, ut dīcunt, in viīs peperit; mortuī ē sepulcrīs surgunt; caelum sanguine ardet. omnia mortem tuam praedicunt.

prōdigia (n. pl.) portents
magnī fēcī I have valued much
leaina a lioness; **ut** as, so
peperit has given birth
sanguine with blood
praedicunt foretell
vītāre to avoid; **dēcernunt** decree
attinent concern, point to
praedicunt foretells
exardescēns flaming
ōmina (n. pl.) omens
nihilī faciō I count for nothing
tē aegrum esse that you are sick
supplicō (+ dat.) I beg

15 **Caesar:** hominēs ea vītāre nōn possunt quae deī dēcernunt omnipotentēs. ībō ad senātum. nam haec prōdigia nōn ad mē attinent sed ad hominēs ūniversōs.

Calpurnia: cum pauperēs pereunt, nūlla prōdigia in caelō vidēmus; sed mortem principum praedicunt caelum ipsum, ignibus exardescēns.

Caesar: ōmina nihilī faciō. ad senātum ībō.

Calpurnia: Caesar, nōlī hodiē exīre. Marcum Antōnium ad senātum mitte, quī dīcet tē aegrum esse. tibi supplicō; fac sicut tē moneō.

25 **Caesar:** nōlī tē vexāre, uxor cārissima. domī manēbō.

intrat Decimus Brūtus.

Caesar: ecce! adest Decimus Brūtus. ille hunc nūntium ad senātum feret.

Decimus: salvē, Caesar. vīsne mēcum ad senātum venīre?
senātōres tē exspectant.

Caesar: salvē, Decime; temporī vēnistī. senātōribus salūtem dā et haec eīs dīc: 'Caesar ad senātum hodiē venīre nōn vult.'

temporī in good time

Calpurnia: dīc eum aegrum esse.

Caesar: nōlī haec dīcere, Decime. dīc: 'Caesar ad senātum venīre nōn vult.' id satis est.

Decimus: sed, Caesar, cūr ire nōn vīs? dīc mihi causam. senātōrēs mē rīdēbunt, sī nūllam causam dīxerō.

Caesar: nōlō venīre; id satis est senātōribus. sed hoc tibi dīcam sōlī, quod amīcus es fīdus: Calpurnia, et propter somnium dīrum quod nocte vīdit et propter prōdigia quaedam quae eam terrent, mē domī manēre iubet.

sōlī (dat.) alone; **fīdus** faithful
propter somnium dīrum because
of a terrible dream

Decimus: num prōdigia vāna et somnia Caesar timet?
senātōrēs tē rīdēbunt sī haec cognōverint. omnēs tē exspectant. venī mēcum.

vāna empty

Caesar: bene mē monēs, Decime. Calpurnia, timōrēs tuī vānī sunt. nōlī somnia et prōdigia timēre. togam prōfer; ad senātum ībō.



Trajan's harbour, Ostia

TRADE BY WATER

As the hub of a great empire, Rome was the centre of a vast trading network extending from the Baltic coast to southern Arabia, India and China. A Greek of the second century AD wrote:

From every land and sea is imported everything that the seasons bring forth, everything that all the countries, the rivers, the lakes and the skills of Greeks and barbarians produce. And so if anyone wants to see all these things he must either travel over all the world to look at them or must come to Rome. For all that each nation produces and manufactures is here in abundance. So many merchant ships come here carrying their cargoes from every corner of the earth in every season of the year and with each return of harvest, that the city is like a common workshop of the world. You can see so many cargoes from India and if you wish from Arabia Felix too that you may guess that the trees have been left permanently bare for the inhabitants and if they need anything they must come here to beg for their own products... Egypt, Sicily and Rome's empire in Libya are her farms... Everything comes together here, trade, shipping, farming, metallurgy, all the crafts that are and have ever been, everything that is bred and grown. What one cannot see in Rome simply does not exist.

Luxury goods abounded, but the main imports were olive oil, wine and grain. Something like 200,000 tonnes of this grain had to be imported annually to keep Rome's huge population fed.

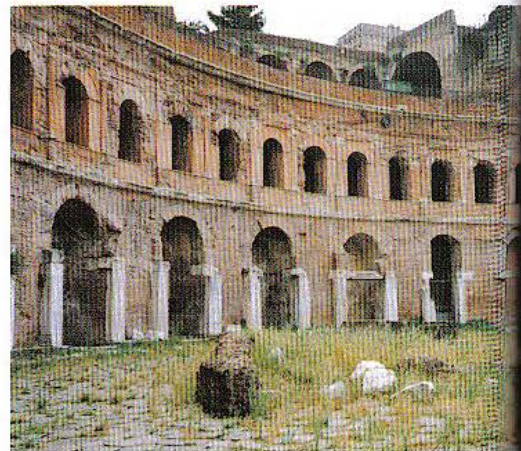
The Roman empire was criss-crossed with a vast and supremely efficient road system, which will be discussed in Part III, chapter 44. However, most of the trade came by sea – which made larger loads possible and took less time than land travel, but carried considerable risks. Trimalchio, the fictitious multi-millionaire from a novel by Petronius, makes this very clear:

I built five ships, I loaded them up with wine – which was then worth its weight in gold – and I sent them to Rome. But all the ships were wrecked. That's fact, not fiction. Neptune gulped down three million sesterces in a single day.

But he also stresses the vast financial rewards when things went well:

Do you think I gave up?... I built more ships, bigger, better and luckier ones... and I loaded them up again with wine, bacon, beans, perfume and slaves... On one voyage I rounded off a million sesterces.

At the time at which our course is set, Rome's harbour was the port at Ostia where the Tiber flowed into the sea. This was not suitable for large cargo ships (*nāvēs onerāriāe*), and these had to dock at Puteoli on the bay of Naples, some hundred and fifty miles



The Markets of Trajan, Rome



to the south.* From here smaller ships would take the cargoes up the coast to Ostia. Here they were unloaded into a kind of barge (*nāvis cōdicāria*) to be carried up the Tiber to Rome.

These barges had flat keels and ample holds and their mainmast was equipped with a beam which could be used as a crane to lift merchandise. They were tied to teams of oxen which were driven up the right bank of the river to the city's port area on the Tiber, to the south-west of the Aventine hill, where they were tied up to the pairs of mooring rings which can still be seen in the retaining walls of the Tiber. Here the merchandise would be stored in vast warehouses before being taken off to Rome's numerous markets to be sold.

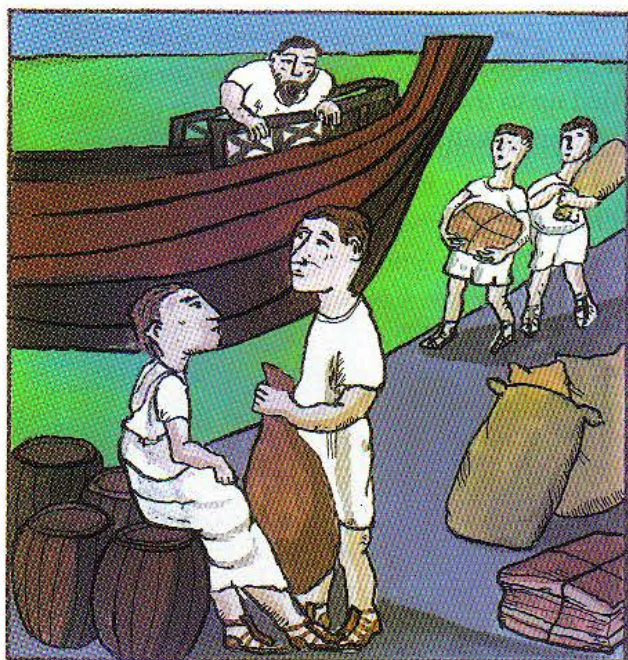


Draw a picture of a barge being unloaded at the city port in Rome.

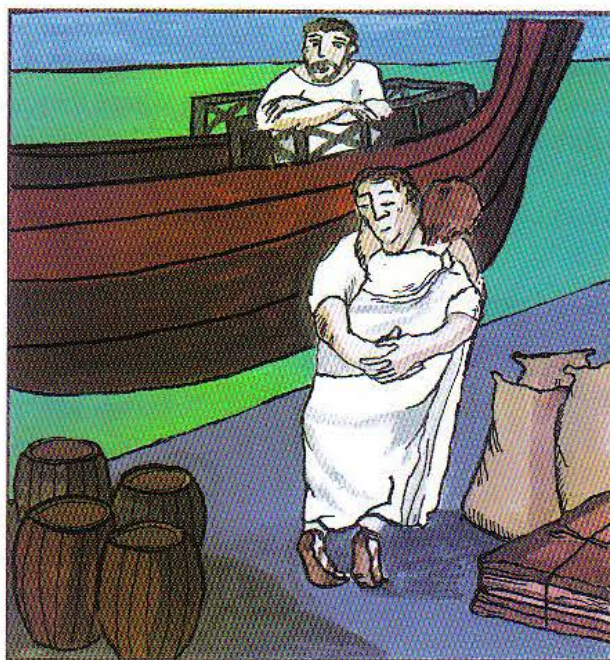
* Over the course of the next two centuries, the emperors Claudius and Trajan had larger and deeper harbours dredged out near Ostia, to avoid the extra transportation from Puteoli.

Chapter 28

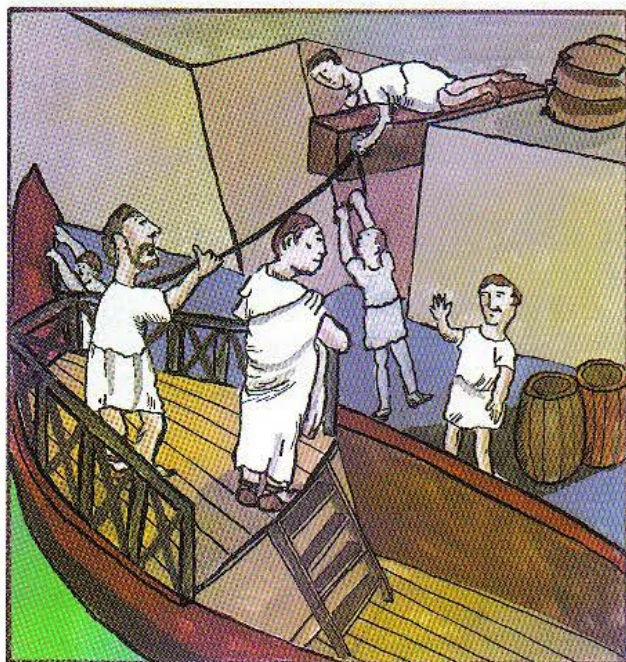
Quintus ad Graeciam navigat



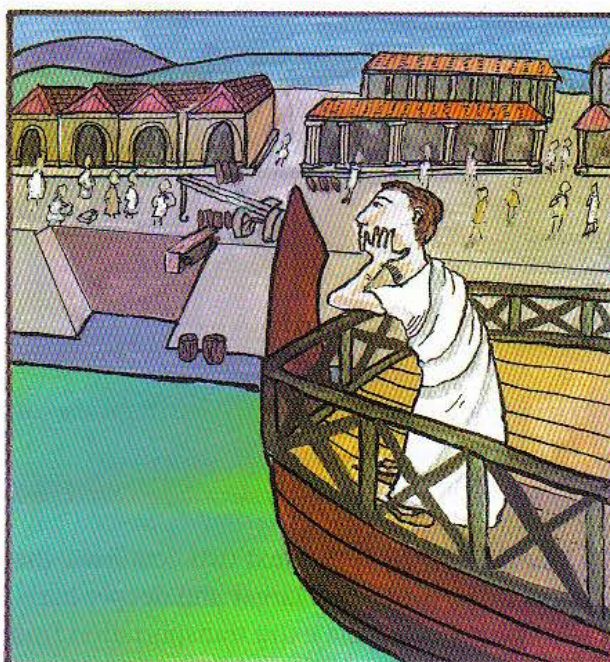
magister, cui Flaccus argentum trādidērat,
Quīntum in nāvem vocāvit.



Flaccus, cuius oculi lacrimis plēni erant,
Quīntum valēre iussit.



nautae, quibus magister signum dederat, nāvem
solvērunt.



Quīntus, quī in puppe (*stern*) nāvis stābat, ad
lītus respiciēbat.

Vocabulary 28

verbs

crēscō, crēscere, crēvī I grow, increase**edō, ēsse, ēdī** I eat**solvō, solvere, solvī** I loose, untie,
cast off

nouns

lūna, -ae, f. moon**argentum, -ī, n.** silver, money**nūbēs, nūbis, f.** cloud**viātor, viātōris, m.** traveller

adjectives

dexter, dextra, dextrum right**dextrā (manū)** on the right (hand)**sinister, sinistra, sinistrum** left**sinistrā (manū)** on the left (hand)**reliquus, -a, -um** remaining**vīvus, -a, -um** alive, living

adverbs

inde thence, from there**cum primum** as soon as

Explain the meaning of the following English phrases with reference to the Latin roots of the words in italics: a *lunar* month, a *crescent* moon, an *edible* fungus, a *vexatious* problem, a *vivid* picture.

Quintus ad Graeciam nāvigat

magister, cui Flaccus viaticum iam trādiderat, Quīntum in nāvem vocāvit. Flaccus, cuius oculī lacrimīs plēnī erant, ad Quīntum sē vertit; 'valē, fili cārissime,' inquit; 'cum primum ad Graeciam advēneris, epistolam ad nōs scrībe. deī tē servābunt; nam puer bonō ingenio es.' Quīntus, patrem complexū tenēns, 'valē, cāre pater,' inquit; 'hoc prōmittō; cum primum ad Graeciam advēnerō, epistolam longissimam vōbīs scrībam in quā omnia nārrābō dē itinere. et tū, cum Venusiam redieris, mātī et Horātiae et Argō salūtem plūrimam dā. sī deīs placēbit, vōs omnēs mox vidēbō.'

Flaccus sē vertit et sine morā ē portū festināvit. Quīntus eum spectābat abeuntem. deinde nāvem cōnscendit. nautae, quibus magister signum dederat, nāvem solvērunt. ubi ad apertum mare advēnērunt, vēla sustulērunt. Quīntus, quī in puppe nāvis stābat, ad lītus respiciēbat, futūrōrum īnscius; nec patrem nec mātrem nec sorōrem umquam postea vīsūrus erat.

iter quod Quīntus inībat longum et difficile fuit. tōtum lītus Italiae praetervectī, tandem ad Siciliam advēnērunt et per fretum Siciliēse nāvigāverunt; ibi ā dextrā habitāverat Scylla, quae comitēs Ulixīs rapuerat vīvōsque ēderat; ā sinistrā Charybdīs fuerat, vertex terribilis, quī Ulixem ipsum paene dēvōrāverat. Quīntus montem Aetnam procul cōnspexit flammās in caelum prōicientem; Aenēam Trōiānōsque in animum revocāvit, quōs Cyclōps paene cēperat.

inde per apertum mare ad Graeciam nāvigābant; nūlla terra iam in cōspectū erat; ubīque caelum, ubīque mare. subitō ventī crēscunt; undae māiores fiunt; nūbēs caelum obscurant. nāvis maximō in periculō erat; viātōrēs flēbant deōsque ōrābant. nautae ipsī dēspērābant mortemque timēbant.

viaticum fare**complexū** in his embrace**vēla** (n. pl.) sails**sustulērunt** raised; **puppe** stern**futūrōrum** of the future**īnscius** ignorant**vīsūrus** going to see**praetervectī** having sailed past**fretum Siciliēse** the straits ofMessina; **vertex** whirlpool**dēvōrāverat** had swallowed down

30 sed magister, quī prōram in tempestātem vertit, nāvem
servāvit. mox ventī cadunt undaeque minōres fiunt. omnēs grātiās
deīs reddidērunt quod ē tempestāte incolumēs ēvāserant.

reliquum iter sine periculō cōnfēcērunt decimōque diē ad
Pīraeum, portum Athēnārum, advēnērunt.

Respondē Latīnē

- 1 ubi Quīntus patrem valēre iussit, quid eī prōmīsīt?
- 2 ubi per fretum Siciliēse nāvigāverunt, quid vidīt Quīntus?
- 3 in apertō marī, cūr nāvis maximō in periculō erat?
- 4 in hōc periculō, quid fēcērunt viātōrēs? quid fēcīt magister?

Word-building

The present participles of some verbs are used
as ordinary adjectives (with ablative -ī).

What is the meaning of the following?

amāns, amantis
ardēns, ardentis
intelligēns, intelligentis
neglegēns, neglegentis
placēns, placentis

prōram prow



Piraeus

Quīntus Athēnās advenit

Translate the first paragraph and answer the
questions on the letter

nāvis tandem ad mōlem religāta est; Quīntus in terram exiit
festināvitque ad urbem, cupiēns ante noctem eō advenīre. vesper
iam aderat cum ad agoram advēnit, sed lūna lūcēbat, quae
Acropolim illūminābat. diū omnia spectābat; Parthenōna vidēre
5 poterat, templum nōbilissimum deae Athēnae, et multa alia
monumenta dē quibus in librīs saepe lēgerat.

tandem ad caupōnam rediit et epistolam scrīpsit, sicut patrī
prōmīserat:

10 Quīntus patrī mātīque cārissimīs Horātiaeque salūtem
plūrimam dat.

hodiē Athēnās advēnī. iter longissimum fuit nec sine
periculō, sed tandem decimō diē incolumēs ad portum
advēnimus. ego statim in mediam urbem festināvī et
monumenta illa nōbilia, dē quibus totiēns lēgī, spectāvī.

15 et vōs, cārissimī, quid agitis? omnia cupiō audire quae
domī fiunt. segetēsne bonae sunt? Argusne valet? epistolam
statim ad mē scrībete. mox epistolam longiōrem ad vōs
scrībam. interea cūrāte ut valeātis.

mōlem pier; religāta moored

agoram the agora (city centre)

Acropolim (acc.) Acropolis

Parthenōna (acc.) Parthenon

sicut just as

totiēns so often

quid agitis? how are you?

segetēs crops; valet is well

cūrāte ut valeātis take care that you
keep well



The Parthenon, Athens

- 1 What does Quintus say about the journey? [3]
- 2 What news does he want to hear? [4]
- 3 What does he promise to do? [2]

GREECE

From the dark age to the golden age

Troy fell in about 1,250 BC, but the Achaeans' triumph was short-lived. Soon tribes of Greeks living to the north destroyed their civilization and Greece was plunged into a dark age. However, very gradually it emerged from the darkness. Homer, who lived during the second half of the eighth century BC, was a triumphant example of the rebirth of the arts, and writing had been rediscovered by the end of that century.

The reborn Greek civilization was at its height in the fifth century BC. It is in Athens above all that we can find evidence of its glories. In that city democracy was invented in 507 BC by Cleisthenes. This may be the greatest of the gifts which the Greeks have bequeathed to the modern world. It was in Athens also that drama, philosophy and science flourished, and it was there that the great buildings which Quintus admires were built at the inspiration of the outstanding Athenian statesman Pericles. The most famous of these is the Parthenon, the temple of the virgin goddess Athene, built on the top of Athens' precipitous citadel, the Acropolis. Inside stood Pheidias' monumental statue of Athene, thirty-nine feet high and made from gold and ivory.

The tragedy underlying the greatness of the Greek achievement was that the numerous city states of Greece found it impossible to unite with each other. They did this once when in 480 BC a great Persian army and fleet invaded their country and found itself opposed and driven out in a series of famous battles. The names of Thermopylae and Salamis live on and you may wish to investigate them. But the end of this glorious century was

marked by a long and bloody conflict between Athens and her allies and her leading Greek opponent Sparta and her allies. In 404 BC, after nearly thirty years of war, Athens lost.

From Macedonia to Rome

Over the course of the next century the Greek states achieved a delicate balance. None was supreme and there was no unity. It was a situation that enabled Philip, king of the northerly state of Macedonia, to gain power over the rest of Greece. The great Athenian orator Demosthenes tried in his speeches to urge his fellow countrymen to resist Philip. However, Athens and her allies were defeated by the Macedonians in 338 BC.

Philip united the Greek states under his leadership and planned to invade Persia. However, he was assassinated in 336 BC on the eve of his departure. He was succeeded by his twenty-year-old son Alexander. The latter's vast eastern conquests justly gave him the title 'the Great'. He won the huge Persian empire as well as Egypt where he founded the important city of Alexandria. He marched into India but here his troops cried 'enough'. In 323 BC he died of a fever at the age of thirty-two.

After the death of Alexander, his three leading generals carved up his empire between them. Antigonius took the old kingdom of Macedonia, Seleucus took Syria and all Alexander's conquests as far as Afghanistan and India, and Ptolemy took Egypt. The cultural centre of the Greek world shifted from Athens to Alexandria in Egypt, Ptolemy's capital. We call the period from Alexander's death in 323 BC to that of Cleopatra, Queen of Egypt, in 30 BC the Hellenistic age.

In the second war which Rome waged with Carthage, the war against Hannibal, Macedonia came in on the side of Carthage. Rome defeated Macedonia and thus became involved in the politics of the eastern Mediterranean. She found herself fighting a war with Macedonia and Syria from which she emerged victorious. Afterwards Rome was indisputably the centre of the Mediterranean world; the Hellenistic kingdoms, the legacy of Alexander, one after another became part of the Roman empire, ruled by Roman governors. This was the situation in Greece, now the Roman province of Achaea, when Quintus arrived at Athens. The city's days of political independence were long past.

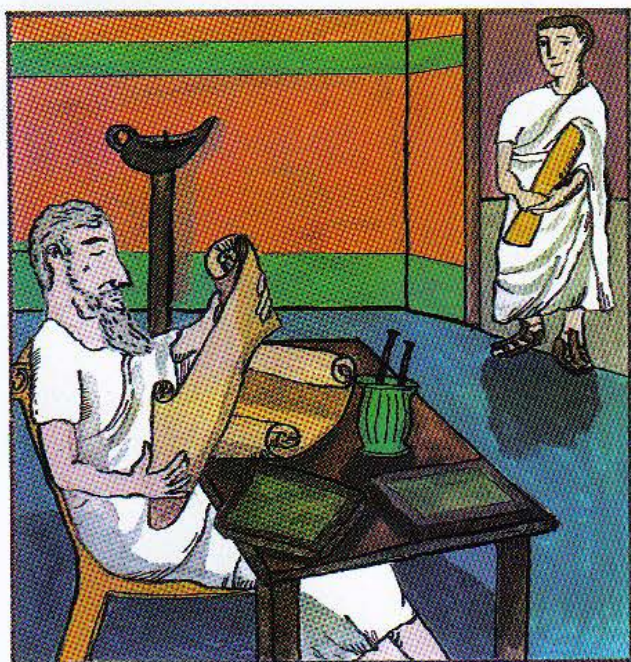


Philip II
of Macedonia

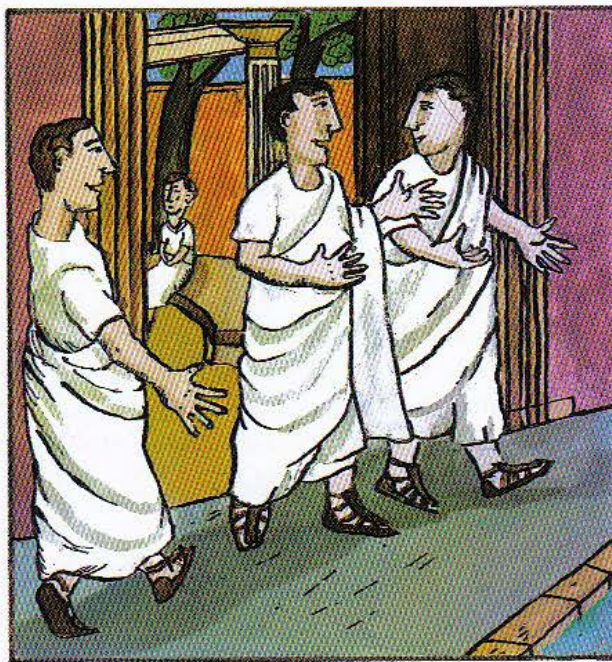


Alexander the Great

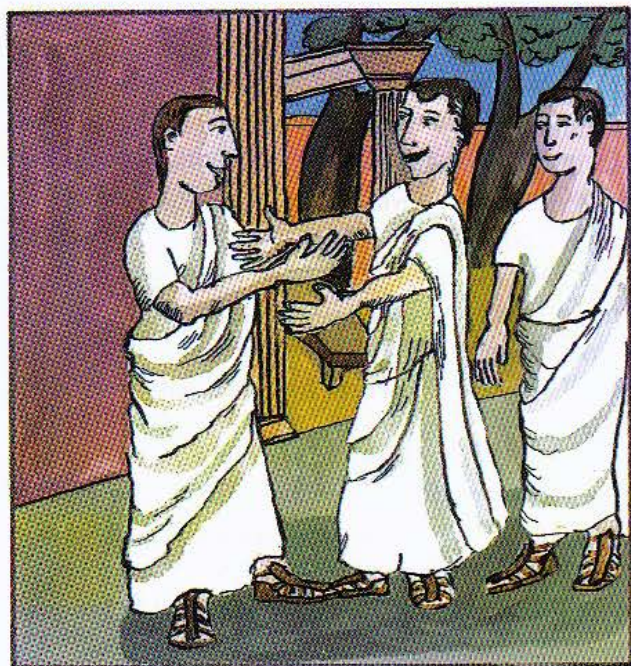
What impression do you gain from the above of the strengths and weaknesses of the Greeks?



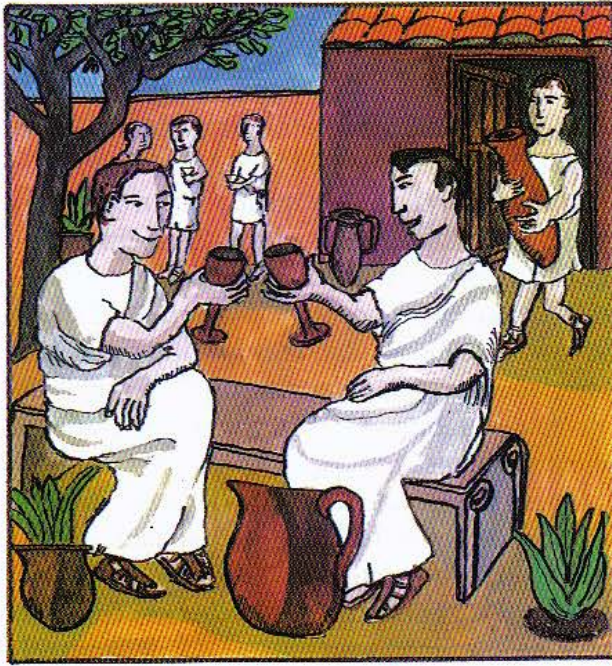
Theomnēstus ad mēnsam sēdēbat librum legēns.



Quīntus ad portās redībat cum intrāvērunt duo iuvenēs rīdentēs et magnā vōce colloquentēs.



Marcus sē vertit et 'dī immortalēs!' inquit; 'nōne Quīntum videō? oculis crēdere vix possum.'



mox in tabernā sēdēbant vīnum bibentēs.

Vocabulary 29

verbs

condō, condere, condidī I found, establish
cōfidō, cōfidere + dat. I trust

nouns

scholam habeo I give a lecture
vīta, -ae, f. life
negōtium, -ī, n. business
adventus, adventūs, m. arrival

adjectives

doctus, -a, -um learned
grātus, -a, -um pleasing, welcome; grateful
hūmānus, -a, -um human; humane, kind
iūcundus, -a, -um pleasant, delightful
dulcis, dulce sweet

adverbs

libenter gladly
quandō? when?

pronouns

alter, altera, alterum one or the other
 (of two); second
uter, utra, utrum? which? (of two)
utrum... an? whether... or?
quisquam, quicquam anyone, anything
 (after a negative)

prepositions

propter + acc. on account of,
 because of
super + acc. above, over

conjunctions

nisi unless; except
ut as, when
sicut just as, like

Explain the following English phrases by reference to the Latin roots of the words in italics:
 a *legal* requirement, *civil* war, an *intelligent* pupil, a *popular* demonstration,
 a *gradual* improvement, *juvenile* crime, a *tumultuous* reception, a *vital* decision.

Acadēmīa

postrīdiē Quīntus māne surrēxit festīnāvitque ad Acadēmīam,
 epistolam ferēs quam Hēliodōrus ad Theomnēstum scrīpserat.
 ille princeps erat scholae quam Platō trecentīs ante annīs
 condiderat; nūlla schola per tōtum orbem terrārum nōbīlior erat
 5 nec melior quam illa. Quīntus, ubi intrāvit, duōs iuvenēs vīdit in
 ātriō colloquentēs. accessit ad alterum et ‘Theomnēstum quaerō’
 inquit. ‘vīsne mē ad eum dūcere?’ ille respondit: ‘venī mēcum. ad
 eum tē dūcam.’ Quīntum per porticum longissimam ad
 Theomnēstī tablīnum dūxit. Quīntus eī grātiās reddidit
 10 iānuamque pulsāvit.

Theomnēstus ad mēnsam sedēbat, librum legēs. vir gravis
 erat et venerābilis; barbam longissimam habēbat vultumque
 sevērissimum. Quīntum īspexit et ‘quid cupis, iuvenis?’ inquit.
 Quīntus respondit: ‘discipulus tibi fierī cupiō.’ ille ‘utrum rē vērā
 15 studēre cupis?’ inquit ‘an lūdere?’ Quīntus respondit: ‘epistolam
 ferō quam Hēliodōrus ad tē scrīpsit.’ ille epistolam accēpit; ubi
 eam lēgit, Quīntō arrisit. ‘tū iuvenis es optimō ingeniō, ut dīcit
 Hēliodōrus, neque quisquam discipulōrum dīligentius studet.

prīnceps chief, principal

colloquentēs chatting

porticum (f.) colonnade

venerābilis venerable

barbam beard

arrisit (+ dat.) smiled at



The Academy

libenter igitur tē in numerum discipulōrum meōrum accipiam. abi
nunc. crās ad theātrum redī et scholam meam audi.'

Quīntus laetissimus ad ātrium rediit. ad portās accēdēbat cum
intrāvērunt duo iuvenēs ridentēs et magnā vōce colloquentēs.
alterum Quīntus agnōvit; oculīs suīs crēdere vix poterat: Marcus
Cicerō aderat. Quīntus eum vocāvit. ille sē vertit et 'dī
immortālēs!' inquit, 'nōne Quīntum videō? nēmō mihi grātior
Rōmā vēnit quam tū. venī mēcum; in urbem ībimus et aliquid vīnī
bibēmus.'

agnōvit recognized

dī immortālēs! immortal gods!

aliquid vīnī some wine

Quīntum in urbem dūxit et mox in tabernā sēdēbant vīnum
bibentēs. 'age, Quīnte,' inquit, 'omnia mihi nārrā. quandō Athēnās
advēnistī? quid Rōmae fit? quid audīvistī dē patre meō? utrum in
periculō manet an in ōtium recessit?' Quīntus omnia eī nārrāvit dē
studiīs suīs, dē morte Caesaris, dē periculīs urbis. Marcus 'vēra
dīcis, Quīnte. tempora numquam difficiliōra fuērunt. propter eam
causam pater mē Athēnās mīsīt, quod ipse maximō in periculō est.
itaque in Lycēō studeō. sed haec studia mihi nōn placent; scholās
Cratippī vix intellegō et librī philosophōrum frigidī sunt. praetereā
in angustiās quāsdam incidī. nam omne argentum quod pater mihi
dedit iam cōsūmpsī. pater plūs argentī mihi nōn mittet nisi
meliōrem fāmam dē mē audīverit. quid faciam?'

Lycēō the Lyceum

frigidī boring

angustiās (f. pl.) difficulty

cōsūmpsī I have used up

Respondē Latīnē

- 1 quid faciēbat Theomnēstus cum Quīntus tablinum eius intrāvit?
- 2 cūr volēbat Theomnēstus Quīntum in numerum discipulōrum suōrum accipere?
- 3 ubi ad ātrium rediit Quīntus, cui occurrit?
- 4 cūr Marcī pater eum Athēnās mīserat?
- 5 quōmodo Marcus in angustias quāsdam inciderat?

Word-building

What is the meaning of the following groups of words?

mīles, mīlitis, *m.*; mīlitō, mīlitāre; mīlitāris, -e; mīlitia, -ae, *f.*
 mors, mortis, *f.*; mortuus, -a, -um; mortālis, -e, immortālis, -e.
 numerus, -ī, *m.*; numerō, numerāre; numerōsus, -a, -um; numerābilis, -e; innumerābilis, -e.

Marcus epistolam ad Tīrōnem scrībit

Translate the first two paragraphs and answer the questions on Marcus' letter without translating

Quīntus paulisper cōgitābat; deinde 'Marce,' inquit, 'utrum ad patrem scrībere dēbēs an ad Tīrōnem? nōne pater tuus Tīrōnī maximē cōnfidit? sī ille dē tē bene dīxerit, sine dubiō pater plūs argentī tibi mittet.'

cōgitābat reflected

- 5 Marcus 'Quīnte,' inquit, 'mē optimē monēs. epistolam nūper ā Tīrōne accēpī. statim ad eum rescrībam.' ad mēnsam sēdit et hanc epistolam ad Tīrōnem scrīpsit:

nūper lately

ad mēnsam at the table

Cicerō filius Tīrōnī suō dulcissimō salūtem dat.

tabellārium cotidiē valdē expectābam: tandem vēnit

tabellārium postman

- 10 quadrāgēsīmō diē postquam ā vōbīs discessit. eius adventus mihi fuit grātissimus; nam et maximam cēpī laetitiam ex epistolā cārissimī patris, et tua iūcundissima epistola summum gaudium mihi attulit.

quadrāgēsīmō fortieth

- 15 gaudeō quod grātōs rūmōrēs dē mē accēpistī, mī dulcissime Tīrō, et hōs rūmōrēs aliīs refers. errāta enim aetātis meae maximum mihi attulērunt dolōrem. iam nūntium tibi grātissimum referam: Cratippō nōn solum optimus discipulus sum sed etiam velut filius. nam eum libenter audiō; sum tōtōs diēs cum eō et saepissimē ille mēcum cēnat.

errāta aetātis meae the errors of my youth

velut like

- 20 librārium, sī vīs, mihi quam celerrimē mitte, quī mihi hypomnēmata exscrībet. cūrā ut valeās.

librārium copyist, secretary

hypomnēmata my lecture notes

- 1 How long did it take the post to get from Rome to Athens? [1]
- 2 Why was Marcus so pleased by his post? [3]
- 3 What reports did he ask Tiro to pass on to others? Why do you think he was so anxious for Tiro to do this? [4]
- 4 How does he describe his relations with his tutor, Cratippus? [4]
- 5 What was his final request to Tiro? Why do you think he asked Tiro to do this? [3]

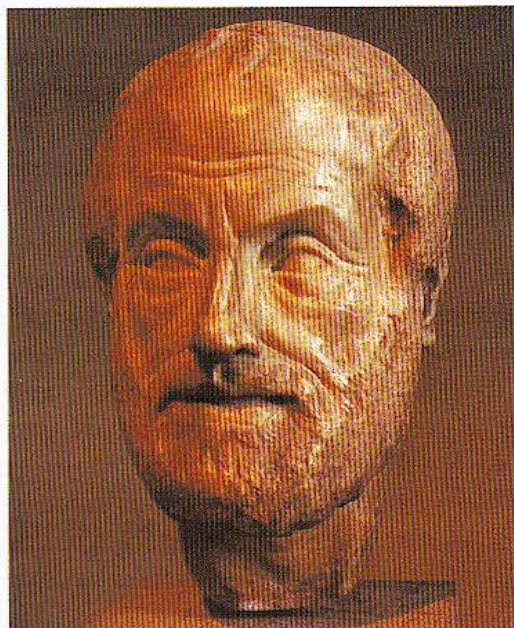
STOIC AND EPICUREAN

What is a philosopher? The literal meaning of the word is a 'lover of wisdom'. Philosophers try to discover the truth about the world we live in. They suggest ways in which we can lead our lives for the best. They tell us about the nature of good and evil, and about what sort of behaviour is best for us both as individuals and as members of a society. The most important question for Greek philosophers was 'What is the greatest good?' Their teaching was highly valued by men of action in the ancient world. Marcus Cicero's teacher Cratippus was made a Roman citizen by Julius Caesar. Cratippus was the head of the Lyceum, the philosophical school founded by the famous Greek thinker Aristotle who was tutor to Alexander the Great.

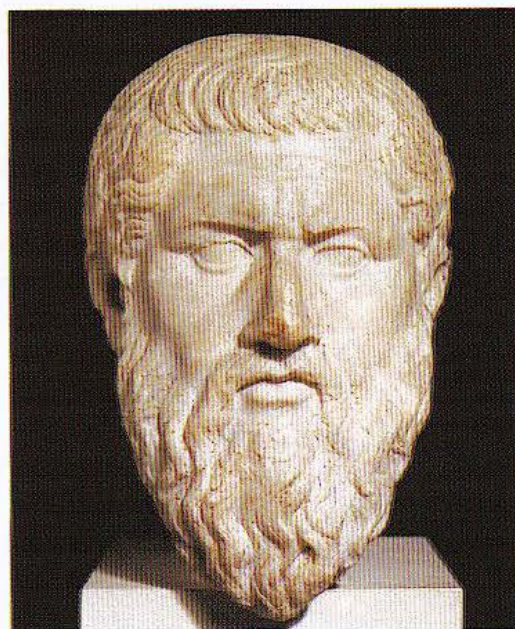
The founder of the Academy, of which Theomnestus was head when Horace arrived in Athens, was Aristotle's teacher, Plato, who lived from about 429 to 347 BC. He was the greatest of the Greek philosophers. His works are still studied by philosophers today, and the most famous of them is the *Republic*. We call this book a 'dialogue', a conversation between two or more people, because Plato presents his views through an imaginary discussion led by his own teacher Socrates. The *Republic* sets forth the view that the ideal state should be governed by philosophers since they know best what is good and what is bad.

As time passed, new schools were founded, notably the Stoic and the Epicurean, the two philosophies which dominated the Roman world in Quintus' day. The Stoics preached that to be virtuous was the only good and not to be virtuous the only evil. Man must always act in accordance with reason. He should accept whatever happens to him with calm, giving way neither to intense joy nor to excessive grief. Thus he will come into harmony not only with the universal brotherhood of man but also with God. Brutus, the assassin of Julius Caesar, seemed to many to display the Stoic qualities at their noblest.

The Stoic school was founded by Zeno of Cyprus (335–263 BC) who came to Athens early in life and taught there in the Painted Porch (Stoa) from which the philosophy took its name. It had a greater effect on Roman life than any other philosophy, lasting from its introduction to Rome in the second century BC until the third century AD. It proved a humane influence in the treatment of slaves whom Stoics believed to be equal with other men because all alike are the sons of God. The Stoic emperor Antoninus (86–161 AD)



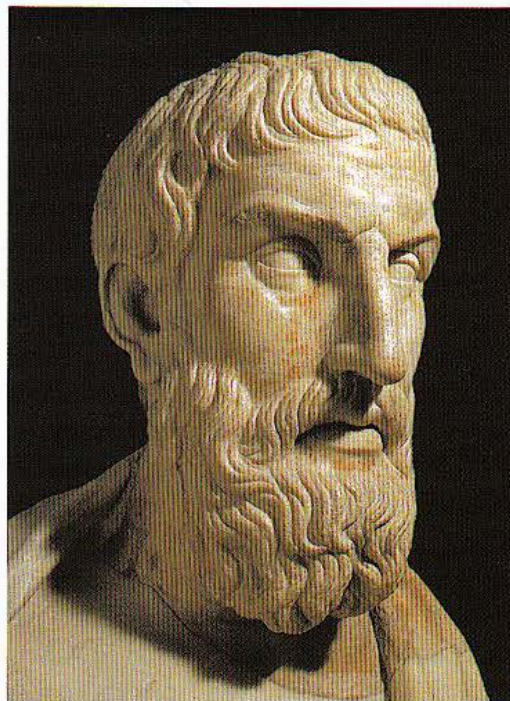
Aristotle



Plato

wrote, 'My city and my country, so far as I am Antoninus, is Rome, but so far as I am a man, it is the world' and 'Men exist for the sake of one another.'

The Stoics involved themselves in the real world of politics and war, but the followers of Epicurus (341–270 BC), who had founded the other main philosophy of the age, tried to avoid such disturbing pursuits. Epicurus' main purpose was to lead men to a happy life. This did not mean that they should always aim at the most obvious pleasures. After all, an evening of drinking is followed by a hangover. Their ideal was peace of mind. The fear of death, for example, could be overcome by the belief that the soul dies with the body and that there is no danger of survival. The great Roman poet Lucretius (94–55 BC) gives twenty-eight proofs that the soul is mortal. The Epicureans recommended withdrawal from the turmoil and confusion of the active life into the study of philosophy. This is celebrated by Lucretius in the following passage:



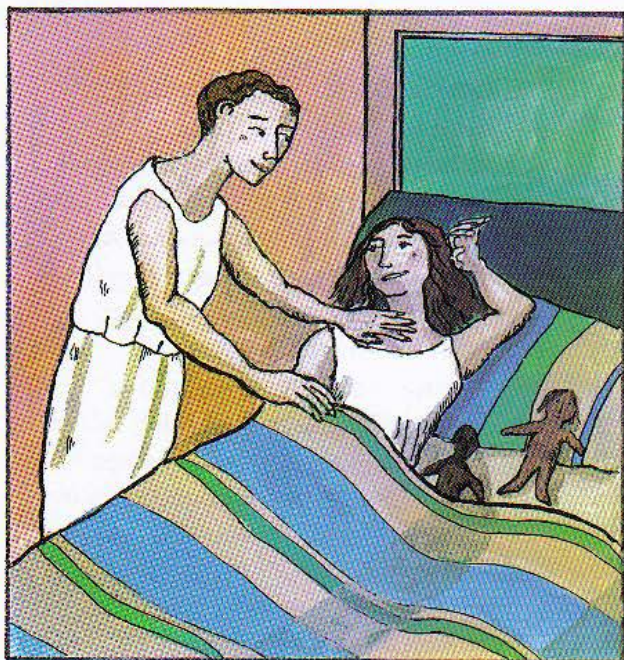
Epicurus

It is sweet, when the winds are lashing the waves on the high seas, to view from the land the great struggles of someone else. But nothing is sweeter than to dwell in the serene temples built on the teaching of the wise, from where you can look down on others and see them wandering this way and that and going astray while they seek the path of life, as they strive to outdo each other in their ability and their claims to noble birth, struggling night and day by supreme efforts to rise to the height of power and gain dominion over the world.

If you had lived in Roman times, would you have been a Stoic or an Epicurean? Give the reasons for your choice. (You may be interested to know that Quintus became an Epicurean.)

Chapter 30

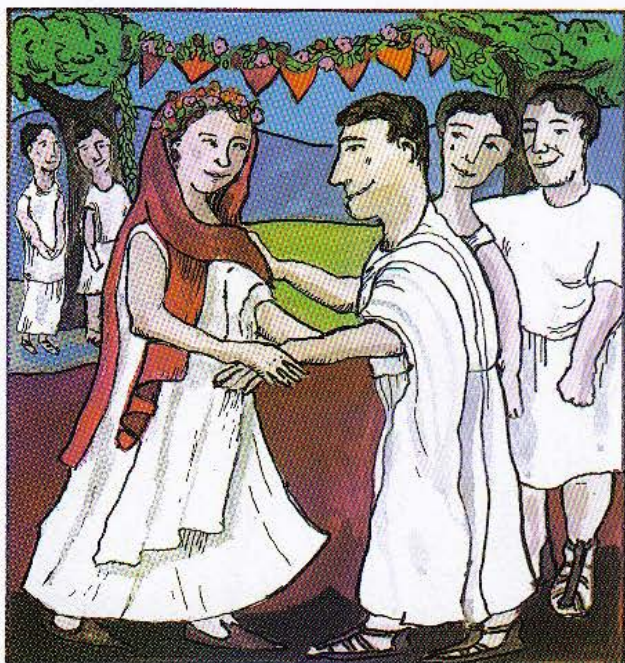
Horatiae nuptiae



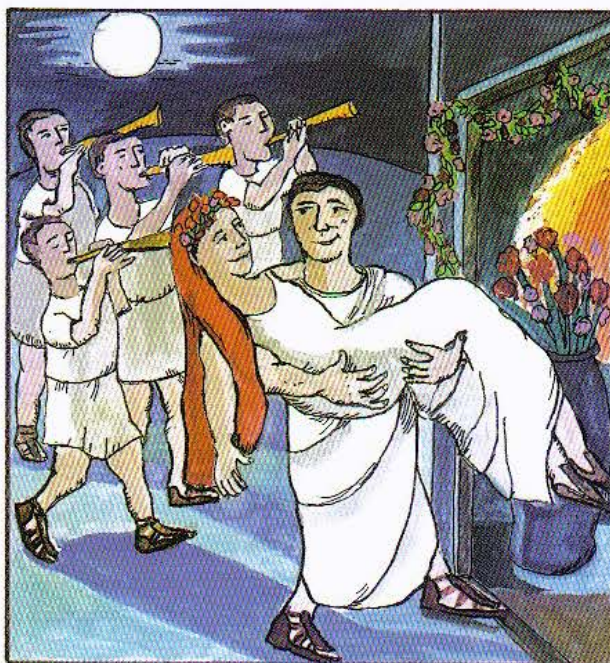
Horātia ā mātře excitāta surgit.



Scintilla Horātiam excitātam ad nūptiās sē parāre iubet.



Horātia ad nūptiās parāta Decimum salūtat.



Decimus Horātiam ad novam domum ductam super limen tollit.

Vocabulary 30

NB From this chapter on, a fourth part (the *supine*) of each verb is given. See the Grammar, p. 140.

verbs

dēlectō, dēlectāre, dēlectāvī, dēlectātum	I please, delight
supplicō, supplicāre, supplicāvī, supplicātum + dat.	I pray to, beg
arcessō, arcessere, arcessivī, arcessitum	I summon
mē gerō	I behave myself
rem gerō	I conduct a matter
nūbō, nūbere, nūpsī, nūptum + dat.	I marry
nūptiae, -ārum, f. pl. nūptiālis, nūptiāle	wedding of a wedding, nuptial
tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātum	I raise, lift
pereō, perīre, perīī, peritum	I perish, die
sentiō, sentire, sēnsī, sēnsū	I feel, realize

adverbs

herī	yesterday
nūper	lately

nouns

chorus, -ī, m.	chorus
dōnum, -ī, n.	gift
līmen, liminis, n.	threshold
lūmen, lūminis, n.	light
mōs, mōris, m.	custom
mōs maiōrum	the custom of our ancestors
sōl, sōlis, m.	sun

adjectives

aequus, -a, -um	equal, fair
aequē	equally, fairly
antiquus, -a, -um	old, ancient
dubius, -a, -um	doubtful
sine dubiō	without doubt
dīves, dīvītis	rich
potēns, potentis	powerful

What are: a *solar* eclipse,
a *choral* song,
an *illuminating* lecture,
a *nuptial* celebration,
a *sensitive* remark?



A Roman marriage ceremony

Horatiae nuptiae

cotidie Quīntus, māne excitātus, surrēxit et festīnāvit ad Acadēmiam. diligenter studēbat et multīs scholīs aderat Theomnēstī aliōrumque doctōrum. mox plūrimōs amīcōs habēbat inter iuvenēs quī in Acadēmīā studēbant.

doctōrum of teachers

- 5 quondam in tabernā cum amīcō quōdam sēdēbat cum tabellārius epistolam eī trādidit ā patre scrīptam. ille epistolam summō gaudiō acceptam continuō lēgit:

quondam once

tabellārius postman

- Flaccus Scintillaque filiō cārissimō salūtem plūrimam dant. tuam epistolam accēpimus et gaudēmus quod incolumis Athēnās advēnistī et in Acadēmīā studēs. omnēs Venusiae valēmus. nūntium magnī mōmentī tibi mittimus.

magnī mōmentī of great importance

- pater Decimī, veteris amīcī tuī, nūper vēnit ad mē et 'filius meus' inquit 'filiam tuam adamāvit et amōre eius perit, ut dicit. itaque visne tū eam Decimō spondēre, sī illa eum accipiet?' hoc nōbīs maximē placuit. nam vir dīves est probātusque ab omnibus. itaque dē dōte disserēbāmus; ille rem aequē gessit, et mox pactum cōnfēcerāmus. Horātiam igitur arcessītā rogāvī quid sentīret dē hōc mātīmōniō; illa Decimum bene cognōvit et eī nūbere cupiēbat. paucīs post diēbus spōnsālia cōnfēcimus. multī cognātī amīcīque ad epulās vocātī testēs erant pactī. Decimus Horātiae ānulum dedit quem illa in tertium digitum imposuit.

adamāvit has fallen in love with

amōre eius with love for her

spondēre to betroth

probātus respected; **dōte** dowry

disserēbāmus we discussed

pactum an agreement

quid sentīret what she felt

spōnsālia (n. pl.) engagement party

cognātī relations; **epulās** (f. pl.) feast

testēs witnesses; **ānulum** a ring

digitum finger

pūpās dolls

- herī nūptiās perfēcimus. prīmā lūce Horātia, ā mātē excitāta, sē parābat. pūpās et cētera puerīlia mātī trādita valēre iussit. deinde vestimenta nūptiālia induit, tunicam candidam et pallam lūteam; postrēmō flammeum in capite induit corōnamque flōrum. numquam virginem pulchriōrem vīdī quam eam.

pallam lūteam yellow robe

flammeum bridal veil

corōnam garland

virginem maiden, bride

indūtus wearing

auspicēs the augurs

auspicia the auspices

rīte duly, according to custom

cōnseruērunt joined

lūnōnī Juno, goddess of marriage

bene verruncet good luck!

sūmptuōsam sumptuous

Hesperus the evening star

tībīcinēs flute players

facēs torches; **solitum** customary

ades be present! = come!

- iam aderat Decimus ipse novam togam indūtus plūrimīs cum amīcīs. mox auspicēs advēnērunt et auspicia bona prōnūntiāvērunt. Horātia Decimusque dextrās manūs rīte cōnseruērunt. omnēs lūnōnī supplicāvērunt et conclāmāvērunt 'bene verruncet!' deinde cēnam sūmptuōsam ā mātē tuā parātā ēdimus.

- 35 tandem Hesperus aderat. tempus erat Horātiae domum suam relinquere. mātrem valēre iussit nōn sine plūrimīs lacrimīs. deinde Decimus eam ad novam domum dūxit. tībīcinēs pompam dūxērunt iuvenēsque facēs in manibus tenentēs. chorus puerōrum puellārumque carmen solitum canēbant: 'Hymen ō Hymenaeae,* Hymen ades ō Hymenaeae!' ubi ad Decimī aedēs pervēnērunt, Decimus Horātiam super līmen sustulit dōnaque eī obtulit, ignem et aquam, quod iam Horātia domina facta erat familiae. sic omnia secundum mōrem maiōrum cōnfēcerāmus.

facta erat had become

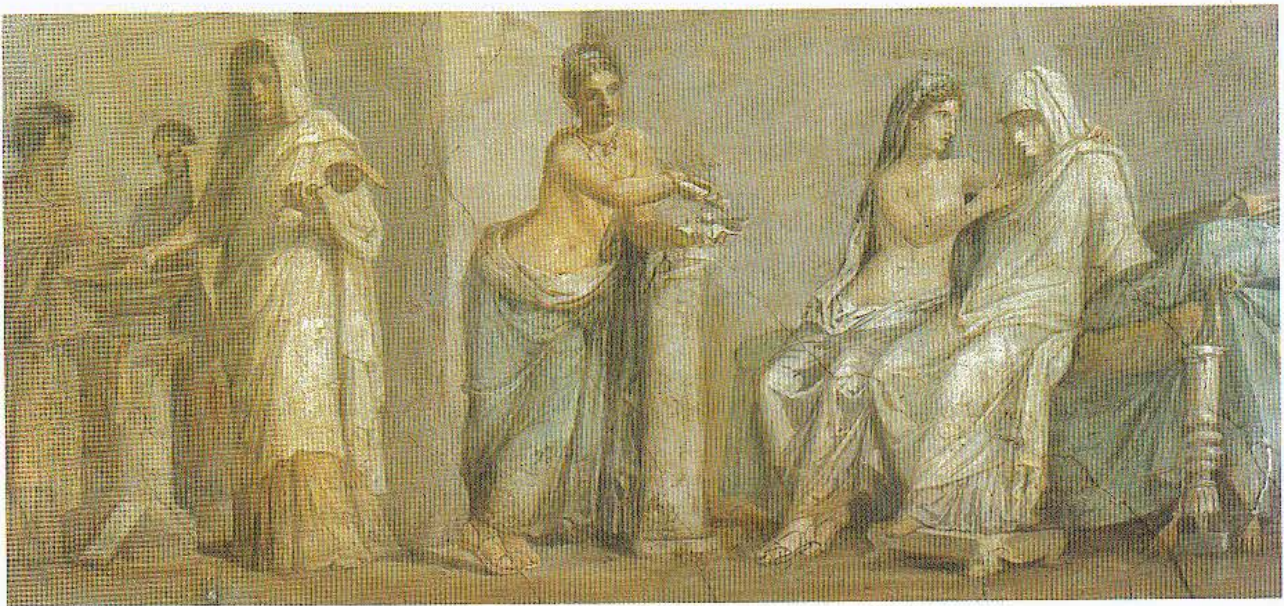
secundum (+ acc.) according to

- 45 hic nūntius sine dubiō tē summō gaudiō afficiet. scribe igitur ad Horātiam grātulātiōnemque eī mitte optimī mātīmōniī. cūrā ut valeās.

* **Hymen, ō Hymenaeae:** *Hymen* was the god of marriage; *Hymenaeus* means the wedding song. The poet Catullus wrote a wedding song in which these words are used as a refrain at the end of each verse. He starts by setting the scene: the wedding feast is coming to an end, the evening star (*Vesper*) is rising in the sky (*Olympō*); the young men who form the choir tell each other to get up, leave the rich feast (*pinguēs mēnsās*), and prepare to sing the wedding song when the bride (*virgō*) appears:

Vesper adest, iuvenēs, cōsurgite: Vesper Olympō
exspectāta diū vix tandem lūmina tollit.
surgere iam tempus, iam pinguēs linquere mēnsās,
iam veniet virgō, iam dicētur hymenaeus.
Hymen ō Hymenaeae, Hymen ades ō Hymenaeae.

tempus (supply **est**) it is time
linquere = **relinquere**
dicētur will be sung



A marriage scene

Word-building

- 1 Perfect passive participles are often used as ordinary adjectives, like those you have already met, e.g.

parātus, -a, -um (from **parō**) having been prepared, i.e. ready
terrītus, -a, -um (from **terreō**) having been terrified, i.e. terrified

So also:

doctus, -a, -um (from **doceō**) learned (having been taught)
nōtus, -a, -um (from **nōscō**) known (having been learnt)
nūptus, -a, -um (from **nūbō**) married; **nūpta, -ae, f.** a bride, a wife

- 2 The neuter of the perfect passive participle is often used as a noun, e.g.

dictum, -ī, n. a saying (a thing having been said)
factum, -ī, n. a deed (a thing having been done)
iussum, -ī, n. an order (a thing having been ordered)
prōmissum, -ī, n. a promise (a thing having been promised)
scrīptum, -ī, n. a writing (a thing having been written)

Rēspūblica in periculum venit

Without translating answer the questions on the following passage

Quintus hāc epistolā dēlectātus statim Horātiae scripsit.
Decimus bene meminerat; in lūdō Flāvii molestus fuerat
Quintumque saepe vexāverat, sed iam adultus erat et sine dubiō
meliūs sē gerēbat. hāc spē adductus grātulātiōnem Horātiae mīsit.

- 5 intereā rēspūblica, morte Caesaris commōta, cotidiē maius in periculum veniēbat. Antōnius, Caesaris amīcus, potestātem suam augēre temptābat. Octāviānus, iuvenis ā Caesare in testāmentō adoptātus, Rōmam advēnerat; nōmen Caesaris assūmpserat, argentum mīlitibus distribuēbat, in diēs potentior fiēbat.
- 10 senātōrēs, ab Antōniō territī, Octāviānum in suās partēs addūcere temptābant. multī bellum cīvile praedicēbant.

hae rēs Athēnās relātae summā ānxiētate omnēs affēcērunt.
Marcus in primīs prō patre timēbat, quod ille rempūblicam dēfendere temptābat senātōrēsque in Antōnium excitātōs dūcēbat.

- 1 What did Quintus feel about Decimus? [4]
- 2 Why was the political situation so dangerous? [8]
- 3 Why was Marcus especially afraid for his father? [3]

meminerat remembered

molestus tiresome

adultus grown up

testāmentō in his will

assūmpserat had assumed, taken on

in diēs daily

partēs (political) party

praedicēbant predicted

in primīs especially

Fābella: Horātia ad nūptiās sē parat

Persōnae: Horātia, Scintilla, prōnuba, Flaccus

prōnuba brideswoman

Scintilla primā lūce Horātiā excitat.

Scintilla: surge, cārissima. tempus est tē parāre. ecce, sōl nūptiīs tuīs arridet.

- 5 **Horātia:** ō māter, nōlō surgere. sine mē paulō diūtius dormīre.

Scintilla: age, cārissima. nōn licet tibi diūtius dormīre. mox veniet prōnuba.

arridet (+ dat.) smiles on

paulō a little

age come on!

nōn licet tibi you may not

Horātia invīta surgit.

Horātia: quid nunc?

- 10 **Scintilla:** nunc dēbēs pūpās et cētera puerīlia mihi trādere.

Horātia: ō māter, nōlō pūpās meās valēre iubēre.

Scintilla: fīlia cārissima, mox mātṛōna eris. tālibus nōn opus est tibi. age, omnia mihi trāde.

pūpās dolls

mātṛonā married woman

tālibus nōn opus est tibi you have no need of such things

Horātia pūpās invīta trādit.

- 15 **Scintilla:** iam dēbēs vestīmenta nūptiālia induere. ecce, adest prōnuba; illa tē iuvābit.

prōnuba: salvē, Horātia. tempus est ad nūptias tē ōrnāre. mox aderit Decimus plūrimīs cum amīcīs. age, primum hanc tunicam candidissimam indue; euge! et nunc hanc pallam lūteam.

ōrnāre to deck, adorn

20

Horātia: quam gravis est haec palla! vix stāre possum.

pallam lūteam yellow robe

quam gravis how heavy!

Scintilla: nōlī tē vexāre, cārissima. palla pulcherrima est; crēde mihi, tē valdē decet.

decet it suits

prōnuba: postrēmō caput tuum flammeō involvam. ecce, iam parāta es.

flammeō (red) veil

involvam I will wrap

intrat Flaccus. Horātiam bāsiat.

Flaccus: salvē, cārissima. quam fōrmōsa es! numquam virginem vidī pulchriōrem. sed festīnā; iam adsunt Decimus amīcīque eius. omnēs tē exspectant.

fōrmōsa beautiful

30 **Scintilla:** manē! hanc corōnam flōrum capitī tuō impōne. ecce! nunc tē spectā in hōc speculō. nōne tibi placēs?

speculō mirror

Horātia imāginem suam diū spectat; corōnam pallamque corrigit.

imāginem image, reflection

corrigit straightens

35 **Horātia:** nisi speculum mē fallit, optimē ōrnatā sum. dūc mē ad Decimum.

fallit deceives

WEDDINGS

We now draw together from our story the details of a Roman wedding

A girl was considered eligible for marriage at about the age of fourteen. When the two families had come to an agreement, an engagement would take place and the future bride and groom would exchange gifts, above all a ring which the bride-to-be would wear on the third finger of her left hand. An engagement party would be held in celebration of the match.

The favoured time for weddings was the second half of June, a time when ill-omened days could be most easily avoided. On the eve of the wedding the bride dedicated her childhood dolls and toys to the Lares. She put on her marriage dress, the vertically woven straight tunic (*tunica rēcta*) and a flame-coloured veil. Then she went to bed.

On the wedding day the door and doorposts of her father's house would be festooned with flowers, evergreen branches and coloured ribbons, and carpets would be spread at the entrance. The bride would prepare for the ceremony. Her hair was arranged in an old-fashioned manner with six strands parted using a bent iron spearhead. Her head was crowned with a garland of flowers and the flame-coloured veil. Her plain white tunic, which stretched to the ground, was held by a belt fastened with a special knot and she wore saffron-coloured shoes. The guests and the



A Roman bride preparing for her wedding

bridegroom arrived, the auspices (the prophetic signs) were taken and the marriage contract signed in the presence of ten witnesses. A married woman (*prōnuba*) would join the bride and groom's right hands. This solemn moment, with its silent exchange of vows between the couple, was the heart of the ceremony. The company prayed to the gods and goddesses of weddings, particularly to Juno, goddess of marriage, and then a sacrifice was made to Jupiter. The guests now cried out 'Good luck!' and the bride's parents hosted the wedding feast.

In the evening the ritual started up again. Just as she was about to leave with the groom, the bride would take refuge in her mother's arms and the groom would tear her away from them. This looks back to the early days of Rome when its early inhabitants seized the women of a neighbouring tribe, the Sabines, to ensure that their race continued. Flute-players and torch-bearers escorted the procession to the groom's house, and a noisy crowd followed shouting the marriage cry (*talasse* or *talassiō*) and bawdy jokes. In one of his poems about weddings, Catullus evokes this part of the proceedings:

Boys, lift up your torches:
I see the veil approaching.
Come, sing in the proper way
the joyous song to Hymen,
god of marriage.

The bride carried three small coins, one for her bridegroom, one for his household gods and one for the gods of the crossroads. She also carried a distaff and a spindle, and ahead of her went a boy brandishing a hawthorn torch lit at the hearth of her former home, while two other boys held her hands. The groom would scatter nuts and small coins to the children who would scramble to get hold of them.

At her new house the bride smeared the doorposts with pig's fat and oil and garlanded them with wool. Now her groom stood on the threshold of his house and asked her her name. She replied with the words '*ubi tū Gāius, ego Gāia*' (where you are Gaius, I am Gaia).^{*} Her companions then carried her over the threshold in case she might provide a bad omen by slipping, and the groom, signifying that she was mistress of the house, presented her with fire and water. Finally, seated in her new home, she spoke the ritual prayers to its god.

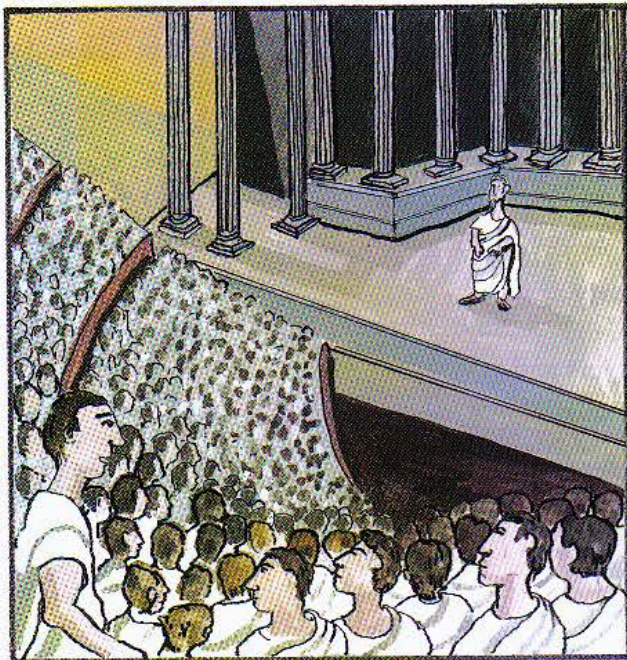
The ceremony was now over and the guests went off home.

Find five similarities and five dissimilarities between this and a modern wedding.

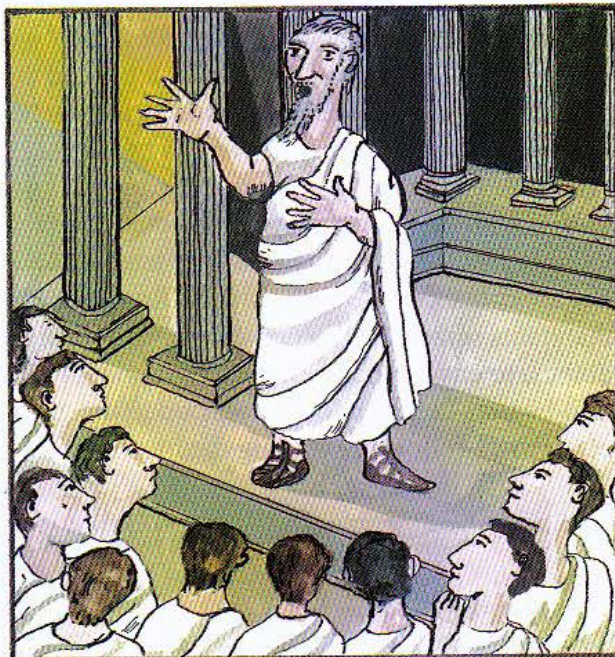
^{*} In fact she kept her name.

Chapter 31

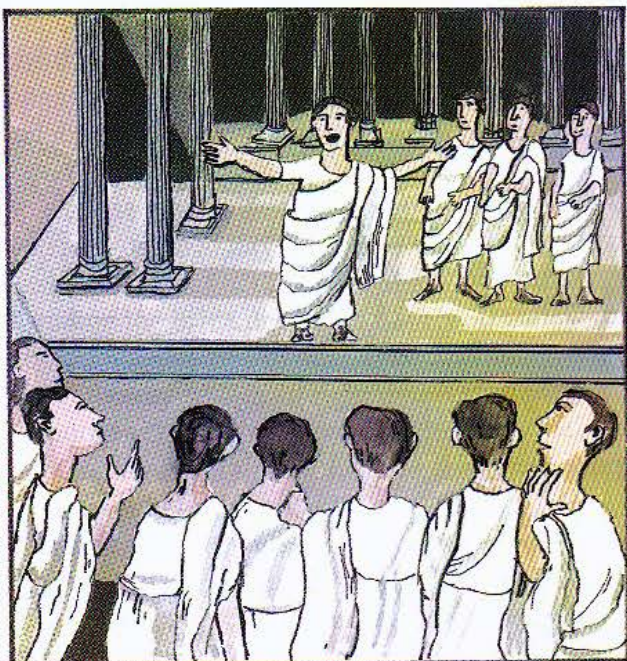
Brutus Athenas advenit



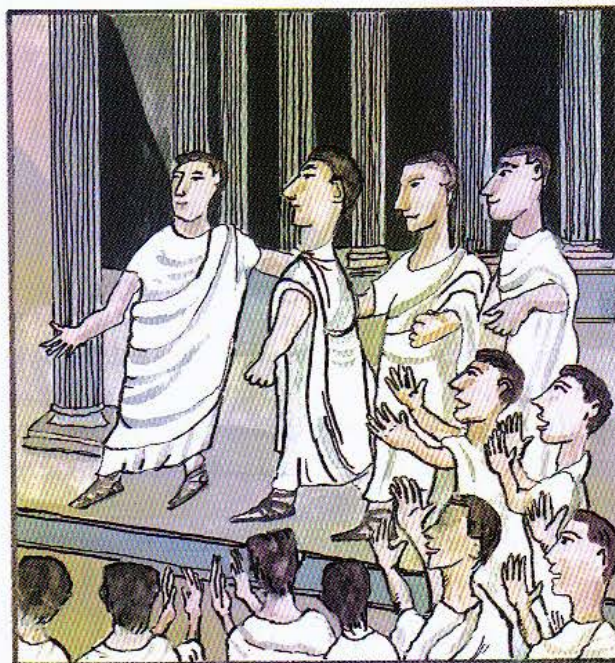
omnēs iuvenēs ad theātrum ā Theomnēstō vocātī erant; Quīntus locum vacuum invenīre vix poterat.



Theomnēstus, quī dē officiīs disserēbat, ā iuvenibus intentē audītus est.



iuvenēs, quī valdē commōtī sunt, ā Brūtō salūtātī sunt.



Brūtus, cui maximus datus est plausus (applause), ē theātrō ā comitibus ductus est.

Vocabulary 31

verbs		nouns	
militō, militāre, militāvī,		officium, -ī, n.	duty
militātum	I campaign, serve as a soldier	eques, equitis, m.	horseman
		equitēs, equitum, m. pl.	cavalry
valeō, valēre,		finis, finis, m.	end, finish
valuī, valitum	I am strong, I am well	finēs, finium, m. pl.	boundaries, territory
disserō, disserere, disseruī,		libertās, libertātis, f.	liberty
dissertum	I discuss		
expellō, expellere, expulī,		adjectives	
expulsum	I drive out	īdem, eadem, idem	the same (= is, ea, id + suffix -dem)
opprimō, opprimere, oppressī,		nōnnūllī, -ae, -a	some
oppressum	I oppress	hilaris, hilare	cheerful
		immortālis, immortalē	immortal
		senior, seniōris	older
		vehemēns, vehementis	violent

The following political terms consist entirely of words derived from Latin roots.

Using a dictionary, if necessary, find out what these roots are: *prime minister, local elections, urban councillor, universal suffrage, the Conservative party, the Labour party, the Liberal party, the Communist candidate*. What do the Latin roots of *conservative, labour, liberal* and *communist* tell you about the political principles of these parties?

Brūtus Athēnās advenit

5 paucīs post diēbus Quīntus, dum agoram trānsit, ab aliquō vocātus est; sē vertit et Marcum vīdit ad sē currentem. 'venī hūc, Quīnte,' inquit; 'rem magnī mōmentī volō tibi referre.' dum in tabernā sedent, Marcus 'vidē,' inquit; 'epistolam accēpī ā Tīrōne missam. pater Athēnās vēnit; cupit mē vidēre. paucīs diēbus aderit. dī immortalēs! nunc dēbeō omnibus scholis adesse et Cratippum ad cēnam invītare. ō mē miserum! quid faciam?'

10 Quīntus rīsīt; 'cūr tam commōtus es?' inquit; 'nōnne Cratippō optimus discipulus es? nōnne eum libenter audīs et saepissimē ad cēnam vocās? sīc enim ad Tīrōnem scrīpsistī, quī sine dubiō eadem patrī tuō rettulit.'

15 hīs verbīs Marcus minimē dēlectātus est. 'nōlī mē rīdēre, Quīnte,' inquit. 'veniam tēcum ad agoram et librum nēscioquem emam. deinde ad Lycēum redībō et scholam Cratippī audiam. ō diem nigrum!'

agoram city centre

mōmentī of importance

mē miserum! poor me!

minimē very little, not at all

librum nēscioquem: some book or other

nigrum black

postrīdiē Quīntus eī occurrit in eādem tabernā bibentī. Quīntus numquam eum hilariōrem vīderat. ille 'ecce, Quīnte,' inquit, 'alteram epistolam ā patre scrīptam accēpī. Athēnās nōn veniet. rēbus maximī mōmentī Rōmae retentus est. dī mē

20 servāvērunt. nunc est bibendum.' Quīntus rīsit Marcumque
reliquit vīnum bibentem. ad Acadēmīam recurrit; scholam enim
Theomnēstī audīre cupiēbat.

ad Acadēmīam reversus, multitudinem iuvenum invēnit
theātrum frequentantium. omnēs valdē commōtī sunt. causam
25 tantī tumultūs mox cognōvit. vix enim sēderat cum plērique
seniōrēs theātrum intrāvērunt ā Brūtō ductī. Quīntus attonitus est;
Brūtus ipse, patriae liberātor, ad Acadēmīam vēnerat.

continuō intrāvit Theomnēstus; ā discipulīs salūtātus est
tribūnalque ascendit. paulisper audītōrēs tacitus inspiciēbat;
30 deinde scholam incēpit. dē officiīs disseruit. hanc quaestiōnem
prōposuit: 'quid facere dēbet vir bonus, sī tyrannus rempūblicam
opprimit lībertātemque cīvium praecīdit?' exemplum revocāvit
Harmodiū et Aristogeitōnis, quī quīngentīs ante annīs tyrannum
Athēnārū occīderant lībertātemque populō reddiderant. illī ab
35 omnibus laudātī erant glōriamque immortālem sibi pepererant.

Theomnēstus ab omnibus intentē audītus est; ubi schola ad
finem perducta est, iuvenēs ad Brūtum sē vertērunt et vehementer
plausērunt. ille manūs sustulit eōs salūtāns, deinde sine verbō ē
theātrō exiit.

est bibendum (we) must drink

reversus having returned
frequentantium crowding
plērique several

tribūnal (n.) platform
quaestiōnem question

praecidit cuts off
quīngentīs ante annīs five
hundred years before
pepererant had won

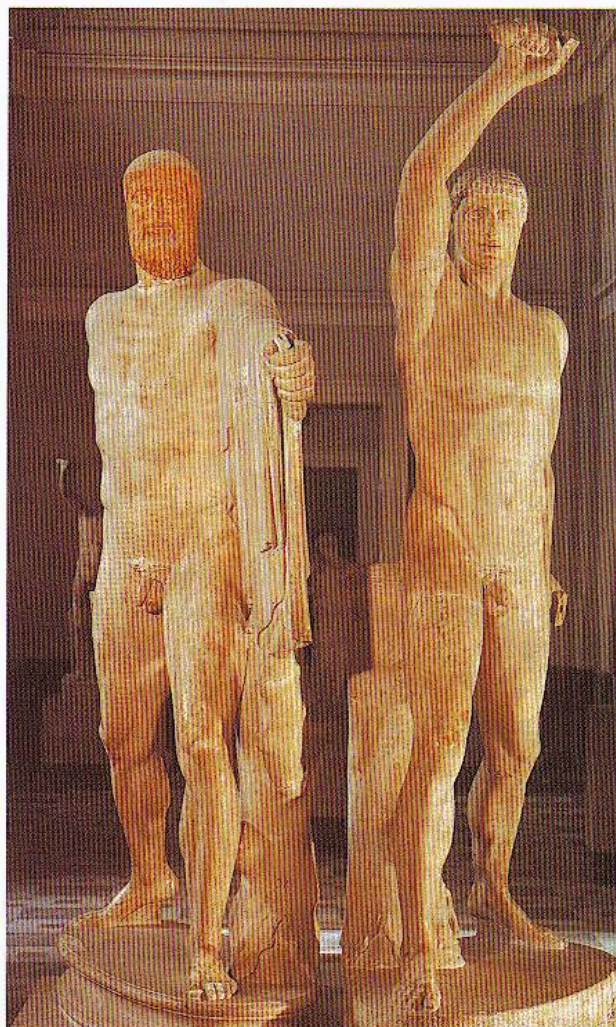
plausērunt applauded



Brutus

Respondē Latīnē

- 1 cūr tam commōtus erat Marcus?
- 2 cūr patrem suum vidēre nōlēbat?
- 3 postrīdiē cūr hilaris erat?
- 4 ubi Quīntus ad Acadēmīam rediit,
quid invēnit?
- 5 quam quaestiōnem Theomnēstus
iuvenibus prōposuit?



Harmodius and Aristogeiton

Word-building

Three types of noun are formed from the supines of many verbs, e.g. from **moneō** (I warn, I remind), supine **monit-um**:

- 1 **monit-or, monitōris, m.** a reminder (someone who reminds) (masculine 3rd declension nouns ending **-or** in the nominative denote the person who performs the action of the verb);
- 2 **monit-us, monitūs, m.** a reminder, a warning (4th declension nouns ending **-us** denote the action of the verb);
- 3 **monit-iō, monitiōnis, f.** a reminding, warning (3rd declension feminine nouns with nominative **-iō** also denote the action of the verb).

What do the following nouns mean?

	supine	nouns
currō	cursum	cursor, cursōris, m. cursus, cursūs, m.
audiō	audītum	audītor, audītōris, m. audītiō, audītiōnis, f.
inveniō	inventum	inventor, inventōris, m. inventiō, inventiōnis, f.

Marcus Brūtō sē coniungit

Without translating answer the questions below this passage

- postquam Brūtus ē theātrō exiit, omnēs iuvenēs circumstābant inter sē colloquentēs. verbis enim Theomnestī commōtī libertātem populī Rōmānī ā Caesare Antōniōque oppugnātam dēfendere cupiēbant. Brūtī abavum in animum revocāvērunt, ā quō Tarquinius Superbus Rōmā expulsus erat. Caesaris caedem probābant, quod ille tyrannus fieri temptāverat.

- Brūtus multōs diēs Athēnīs manēbat; scholīs saepe aderat; cum iuvenibus sedēbat doctōrēs audiēns. nōnnūllōs ad cēnam vocāvit. tandem Athēnīs in Macedoniam discessit ubi exercitus parātus erat. multōs iuvenum sēcum dūxit, quī in exercitū eius militārē volēbant. inter aliōs Marcus Cicerō cum Brūtō discessit et mox ālae equitum praefectus est.

sē coniungit joins

colloquentēs talking

abavum ancestor

caedem the murder

probābant they approved of

ālae squadron; **praefectus est** (+ dat.) was put in command of

- 1 How did the students react to Theomnestus' lecture? [2]
- 2 What historical event did they recall? [3]
- 3 What did Brutus do in Athens? [3]
- 4 Why did he go to Macedonia? [2]
- 5 What happened to Marcus Cicero? [2]

ANTONY, OCTAVIAN AND THE SENATE

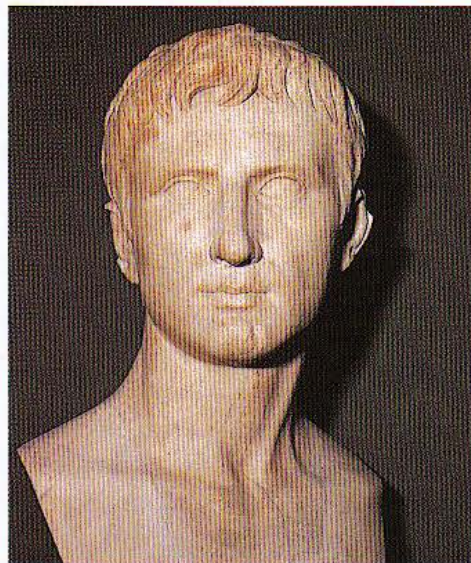
When Caesar was assassinated in 44 BC, his fellow consul was Mark Antony. He was born in 82 BC and had been a wild young man whom Cicero called a gambler; but he was a popular and capable soldier. He managed affairs with great skill after Caesar's death. The killers had been given a frosty reception by the Roman mob, but Antony pretended to make peace with them and a tense quiet fell upon the city.

Caesar, however, in his will had left his fine gardens beyond the Tiber to the Roman people and declared that every Roman citizen was to receive 300 sesterces. When Antony delivered Caesar's funeral oration, he inflamed the emotions of the mob by talking of the generosity of his will and displaying his corpse and blood-stained toga. Shakespeare has given a memorable portrayal of this in *Julius Caesar*. Antony's speech proved so powerful that Brutus and Cassius were forced to flee from Rome. Two months after Caesar's death, Antony was in control and Cicero complained that 'at times one could wish Caesar back'. The assassins' dream of the return of the republic had been an empty one. The power would continue to be in the hands of individuals.

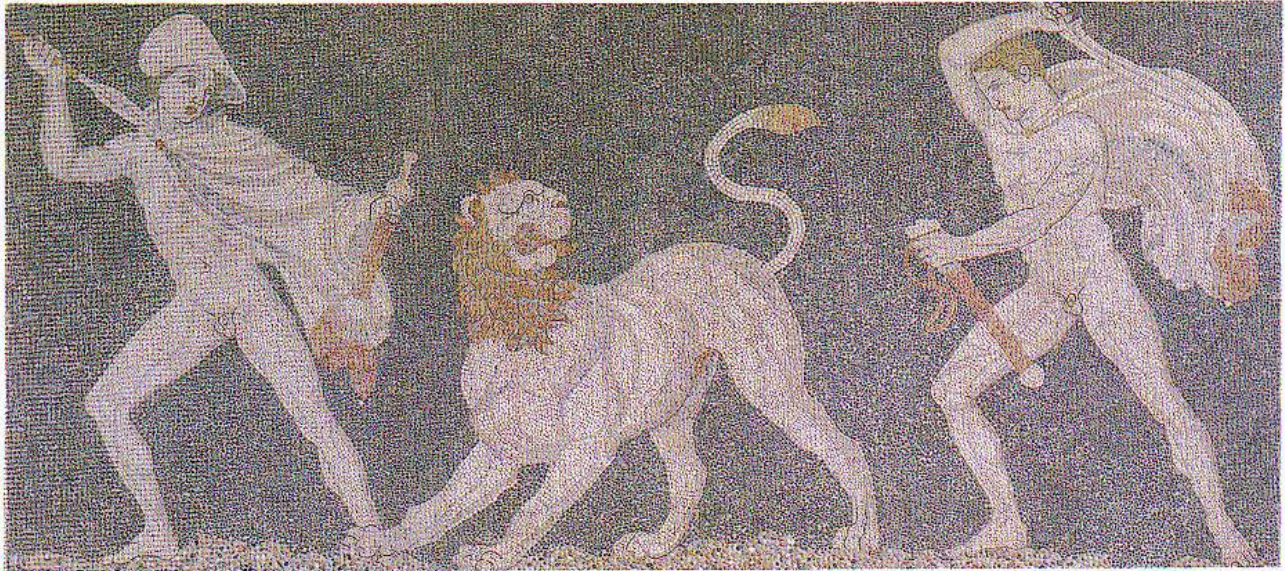
However, one major setback to Antony during this time was the discovery that Caesar had named as his chief heir not Antony but his great-nephew and adopted son Octavian. This eighteen-year-old, called the 'boy' by those who underestimated him, was to receive three quarters of Caesar's estate. Antony was full of bitter feelings towards him, and when Octavian arrived in Rome in April 44 BC, the relationship between them proved difficult. But there was as yet no open quarrel.

Cicero delivered the first of his speeches against Antony in September, calling him among other things a drunkard who had wasted a fortune. Later his onslaughts were even more vitriolic. Here he attacks Antony for his disgusting behaviour in the morning, at a time of day when a true Roman noble would be conducting his business in a dignified fashion:

Down those jaws of yours, down those lungs, with that physical stamina worthy of a gladiator, you sank so much wine at Hippias' wedding that you had to vomit in full view of the people of Rome the morning after. It was a revolting sight – it was revolting even to hear about it. If this had happened at a dinner party when you drain your notoriously huge goblets, it would still have seemed disgusting. But in an assembly of the Roman people, you, a man holding public office, a Master of the Horse – from whom even a belch would have been deplorable – you, I say, filled your lap and the whole platform as you threw up chunks of food stinking of wine.



Octavian



Lion hunt mosaic from
Pella, the capital of King
Philip of Macedon

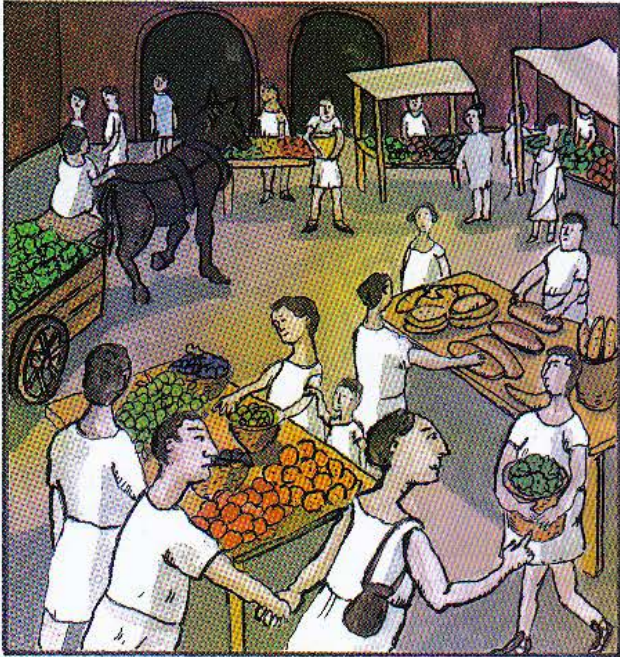
Cicero called his attacks on Antony his *Philippics*, bringing to mind the speeches of the great Athenian orator Demosthenes against Philip of Macedon (see p. 82). They proved equally futile in the long run but, under their inspiration, the senate turned to Octavian for support. Octavian and Antony, the one apparently the champion of the republic and the senate, the other their opponent, found themselves locked in battle with each other in a conflict in which Octavian proved the victor.

Antony was humiliated, and the senate now tried to brush the young Octavian aside and to put its authority behind Caesar's murderers. Octavian would have none of this. He controlled eight legions and, in a pattern of events familiar in the history of this time, he marched on Rome, demanding the consulship. He gained it, as well as the legal right to refer to himself as Caesar.

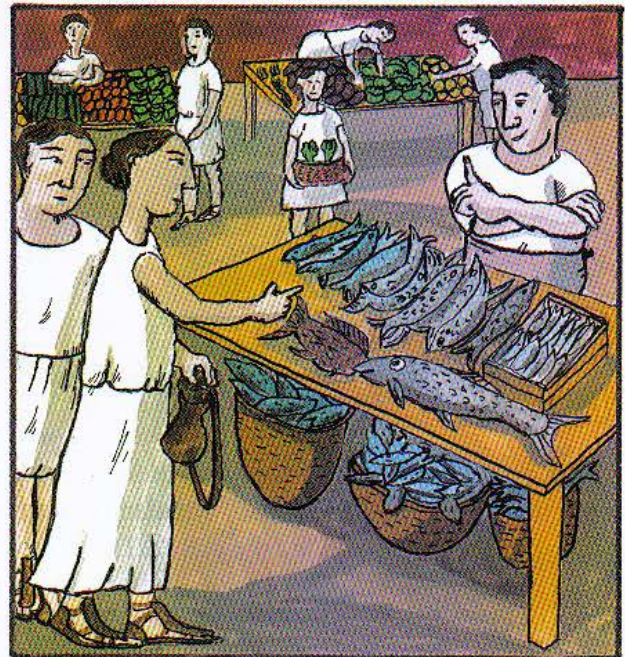
Julius Caesar's murderers were outlawed. Octavian decided to come to terms with Antony. The senate was powerless. The diplomacy of Cicero and the violent action of Brutus and Cassius had been in vain. The republic was dead.

In February 43 BC, Cicero wrote a letter to Cassius which starts, 'I wish you had invited me to your dinner on the Ides of March. If you had, there would have been nothing left over.'

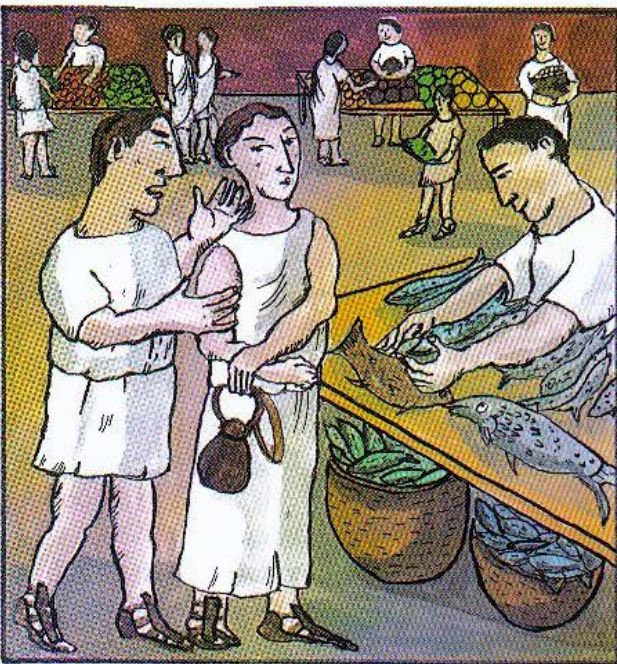
What did he mean by this? Do you think it would have made much difference to the survival of the republic if nothing had been left over?



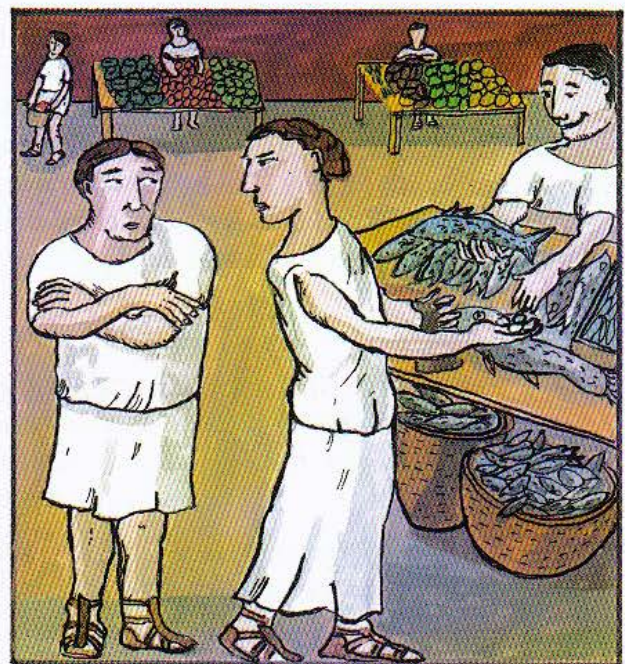
Scintilla Flaccum ad tabernam piscatōriam dūcēbat. (Flaccus ā Scintillā ad tabernam piscatōriam dūcēbatur.)



Scintilla 'quantī' inquit 'vendis illōs piscēs?' piscatōr respondet: 'hōs piscēs ūnō dēnāriō vendō'. ('quantī venduntur illī piscēs?' 'hī piscēs ūnō dēnāriō venduntur.')



Flaccus 'dī immortalēs,' inquit, 'piscatōr tē fraudat, Scintilla.' ('ā piscatōre fraudāris, Scintilla.')



Scintilla 'tacē, Flacce,' inquit. argentum piscatōrī trādit piscēsque accipit. (argentum trāditur ā Scintillā piscēsque accipiuntur.)

Vocabulary 32

verbs

comparō, comparāre, comparāvī, comparātum	I acquire, get
occupō, occupāre, occupāvī, occupātum	I seize, occupy
cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctum	I compel
cōsistō, cōsistere, cōstitī, cōstitutum	I halt, stand still
dīvidō, dīvidere, dīvidī, dīvisum	I divide
ēvertō, ēvertere, ēvertī, ēversum	I overturn
corripō, corripere, corripuī, correptum	I seize, steal
praeficiō, praeficere, praefēcī, praefectum	I put x (acc.) in command of y (dat.)
recipiō, recipere, recēpī, receptum	I take back
mē recipiō, recipere, recēpī, receptum	I take myself back, retreat
praesum, praesesse, praefuī + dat.	I am in command of

nouns

bona, -ōrum, n. pl.	goods
cōpiae, -ārum, f. pl.	forces
villa, -ae, f.	villa, country house
lēgātus, -ī, m.	deputy, officer, envoy
ferrum, -ī, n.	iron; sword
partēs, partium, f. pl.	political party
tot (indeclinable)	so many
totiēns	so often

adjective

adversus, -a, -um	contrary, opposed
--------------------------	-------------------

adverb

clam	secretly
-------------	----------

conjunction

atque	and
--------------	-----

What do the following English words mean? Show how their meaning is related to their Latin roots: prefect, patriotic, partial, inimical, adversity.

Bellum civile

paucis post diebus Quīntus ubi ad Acadēmiam advēnit, epistolam invēnit ā Marcō scriptam:

Marcus Cicerō Quīntō suō salūtem dat.

5 nōn diūtius Athēnīs manēbō, scholās audiēns quās intellegere vix possum. tū scholās audīs dē officiīs, ego officium meum perficiam. libertās populī Rōmānī ab Antōniō oppugnātur. ego in Macedoniam prōcēdō; in exercitū Brūtī militābō. tū, sī vir bonus es et fortis, idem faciēs. mox, ut spērō, tē in Macedoniā vidēbō; summō gaudiō ā mē ibi

10 accipiēris. intereā cūrā ut valeās.

Quīntus hāc epistolā valdē commovētur. intereā nūntiī semper peiōrēs Rōmā afferuntur. Antōnius Octāviānusque inimicī fiunt. Octāviānus ā Cicerōne laudātur et in partēs senātōrum addūcitur. exercitus ab Octāviānō comparātur. dēnique Antōnius cōpiās suās

15 in Galliam dūcit atque ad bellum sē parat. senātōrēs, ā Cicerōne excitātī, Antōnium hostem populī Rōmānī dēclārāvērunt; et cōsulēs et Octāviānum contrā eum mīsērunt. ubi proeliō

accipiēris you will be received

cūrā ut valeās see that you keep well

concurrerunt, Antōnius victus est et in Galliam Ulteriorem sē
recēpit, sed ambō cōsulēs in proeliō occīsī sunt.

ambō both

- 20 Octāviānus igitur tōtī exercituī praeerat. ambitōne adductus,
lēgātōs Rōmam mīsīt; senātum iussit sē cōsulem creāre. ubi
senātus hoc facere nōluit, Octāviānus exercitum suum in Italiam
dūxit et Rōmam celerrimē contendit. senātōrēs, adventū eius
terrītī, invītī eī concessērunt. Cicerō dē rēpublicā dēspērāns in
25 villam rūsticā sē recēpit.

concessērunt gave in to

interea Octāviānus Rōmā discesserat exercitumque velut in
Antōnium dūcēbat. proelium maximum ab omnibus

velut as though

- exspectābātur. sed ubi Octāviānus propius accessit, cōstitit
lēgātōsque ad Antōnium mīsīt; dūcēs cōstituērunt rem
30 compōnere nōn ferrō sed verbīs. Antōnius et Octāviānus et tertius
dux, nōmine Lepidus, clam convēnērunt. foedus faciunt;
imperium Rōmānum inter sē dīvidunt. lēgātī Rōmam mittuntur
quī senātōrēs iubent hunc triumvirātum lēge cōstituere.

compōnere to settle

- deinde triumvirī Rōmam prōcēdunt. urbs occupātur, senātōrēs
35 cōguntur ōmnia facere quae illī cupiunt. inimicī triumvirōrum
prōscribuntur; plūrimī occīduntur bonaque eōrum corripuntur.

triumvirātum triumvirate

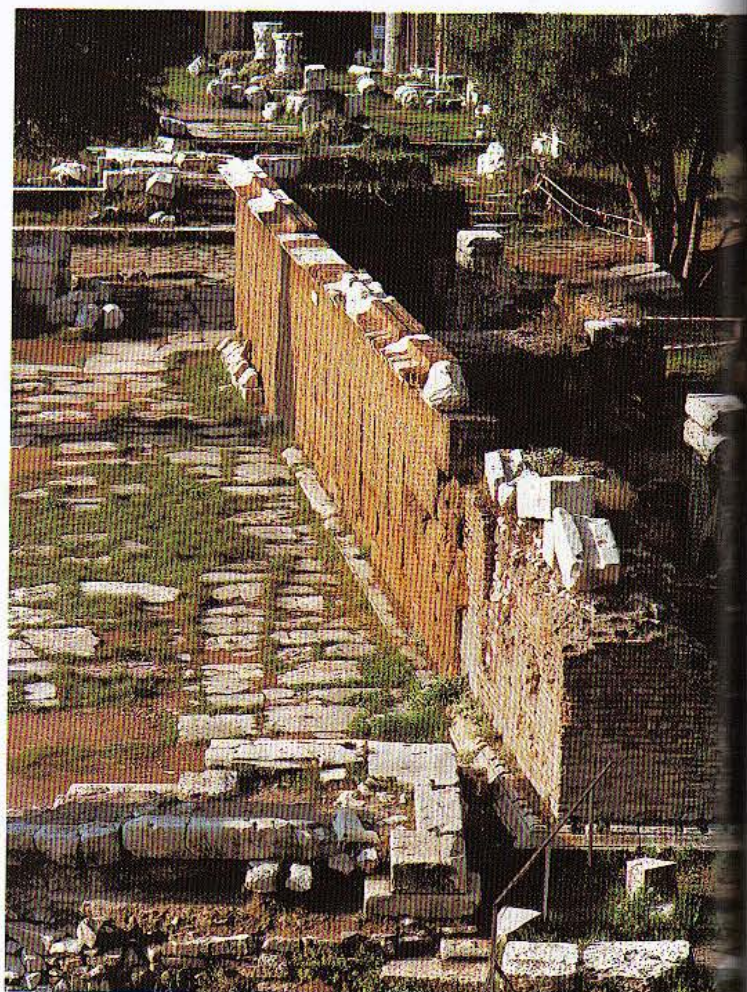
cōstituere to establish

prōscribuntur are proscribed,
outlawed

Word-building

What is the meaning of the following words?

- 1 dēfendō, dēfendere; dēfēnsor, dēfēnsōris, *m.*;
dēfēnsiō, dēfēnsiōnis, *f.*
- 2 ōrō, ōrāre; ōrātor, ōrātōris, *m.*;
ōratio, ōrātiōnis, *f.*
- 3 lūdus, -ī, *m.*; lūdō, lūdere; lūsor, lūsōris, *m.*;
lūsus, -ūs, *m.*
- 4 laus, laudis, *f.*; laudō, laudāre; laudātor,
laudātōris, *m.*; laudātiō, laudātiōnis, *f.*
- 5 nāvis, nāvis, *f.*; nauta, -ae, *m.* (= nāvita);
nāvigō, nāvigāre; nāvigātor, nāvigātōris, *m.*;
nāvigātiō, nāvigātiōnis, *f.*



The Rostra

Mors Cicerōnis

Without translating, answer the questions below

nēmō Antōnium vehementius oppugnāverat quam Cicerō.
Antōnius ipse manum mīlitum mīsīt quī iussī sunt eum occīdere.
ille in villā manēbat prope mare; ubi dē adventū mīlitum
cognōvit, temptāvit in nāve effugere. ventīs tamen adversīs
5 repellēbātur. tandem ad villam redīre cōstituit; 'mortem obībō'
inquit 'in patriā quam saepe servāvī.'

obībō I shall meet

lecticā a litter

cervicem his neck

extendit stretched out

praecidunt they cut off

rōstris the speaker's platform

in lecticā ad villam ferēbātur, cum mīlitēs advēnērunt. nōn
restitit sed cervicem ē lecticā extendit. illī caput gladiō
praecidunt. tum manūs quoque praeciderunt, quae tot ōrātiōnēs in
10 Antōnium scrīpserant. caput eius ad Antōnium relātum inter duās
manūs in eīs rōstrīs affixum est in quibus Antōnium tantā
ēloquentiā totiēns oppugnāverat.

- 1 Why did Antony himself send soldiers to kill Cicero? [3]
- 2 Where was Cicero staying when the soldiers came
and what did he try to do? [4]
- 3 Why did he not succeed? [2]
- 4 What were his last words? [5]
- 5 What did Cicero do when the soldiers found him? [3]
- 6 How did the soldiers mutilate his body? [2]
- 7 What did Antony do with the parts the soldiers had
cut off? Why did this seem to him appropriate? [4]
- 8 Write a character sketch of Cicero based on what you
have read about him so far. [10]

THE SECOND TRIUMVIRATE

The triumvirate referred to in the Latin narrative, and known by historians as the Second Triumvirate, was formed when Octavian met with Antony and another leading politician called Lepidus, a former lieutenant of Caesar's, in 43 BC on a small island in a river in Cisalpine Gaul. After marching on Rome, they arranged that they should hold power for five years, make laws and nominate magistrates and governors. Thus the single dictator Caesar was replaced by three dictators. Realizing the inevitability of war with Caesar's avengers, Brutus and Cassius were now with their legions in the East. The triumvirs carved up the western provinces of the Roman empire between them, and, to cement the alliance, Octavian married Antony's step-daughter.

They wished to dispose of their many political enemies and, even more importantly, to raise money, and so they reintroduced the grim practice of proscription. They would publish a list of names. Whoever killed a man named on the list would receive a reward and the state would get the dead man's property. Some



Octavian



Mark
Antony

300 senators and 2,000 knights were proscribed in this way. A reign of terror followed. Shakespeare in his *Julius Caesar* includes a chilling scene in which the triumvirs sit round a table listing their enemies:

Antony: These many, then, shall die; their names are prick'd [i.e. marked off].

Octavian (to Lepidus): Your brother too must die; consent you, Lepidus?

Lepidus: I do consent, –

Octavian: Prick him down, Antony.

Lepidus: Upon condition Publius shall not live,
Who is your sister's son, Mark Antony.

Antony: He shall not live; look, with a spot I damn him.

Many who were named in the proscription lists fled and later returned with a pardon. Cicero was not so lucky, as you have seen in this chapter. He met his grisly end in 43 BC, and proved that he had meant what he said in his speeches against Mark Antony: 'As a young man, I defended the republic: I shall not desert it in my old age.' Cicero's tragedy was that the republic had long been past saving.

It may seem strange that Octavian agreed to the proscription of Cicero, a man who had given him much support. But Octavian was implacably determined to take revenge on all the conspirators who had killed Julius Caesar and while Cicero had not been a member of the conspiracy, he had rejoiced, even gloated over Caesar's assassination. This, joined with Cicero's rash pronouncement that Octavian was a young man to be made use of and then cast aside, may well have stopped Octavian stepping in to save him.

Octavian and Antony took twenty-eight legions to Greece in 42 BC to fight with Brutus and Cassius. They were to meet at Philippi.

What do you think of Cicero both as a man and a politician?



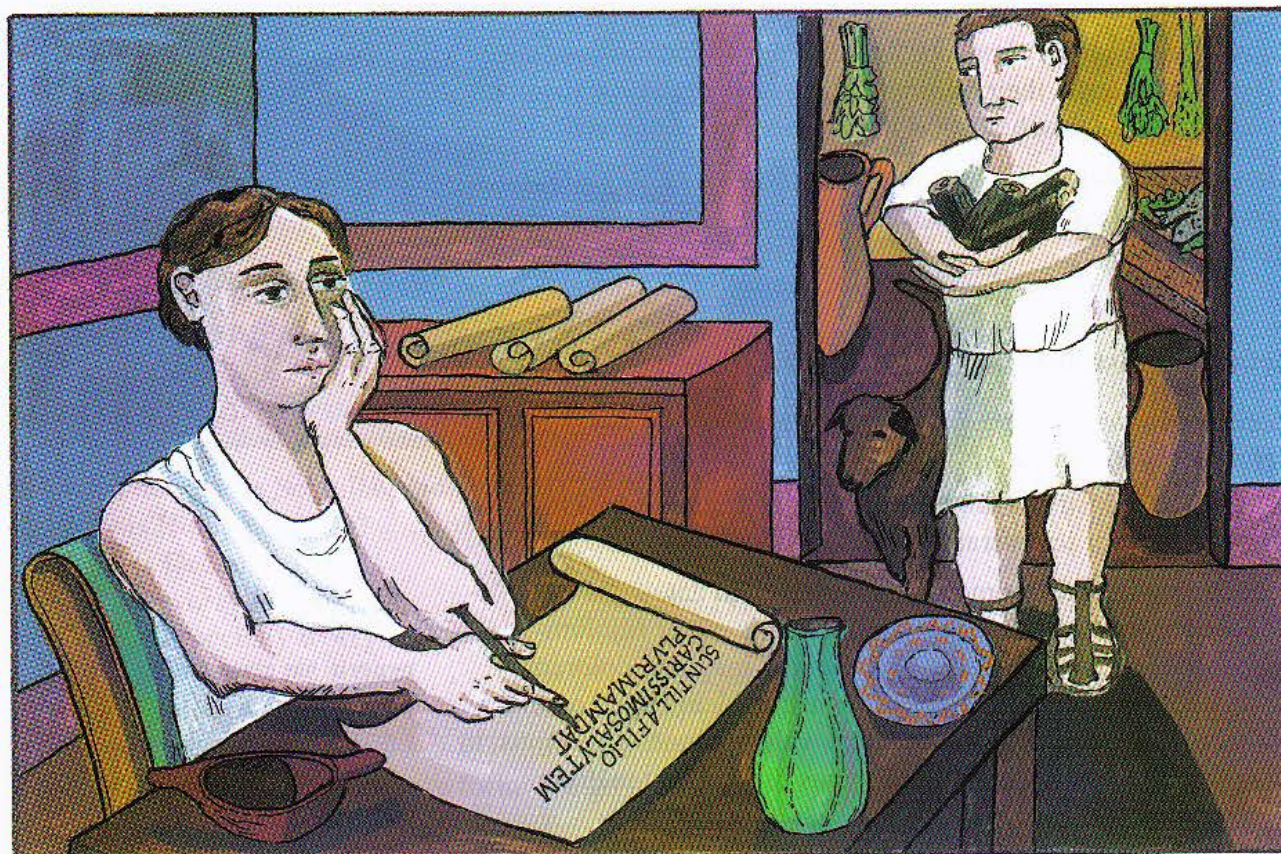
Lepidus

Cicero's tomb



Chapter 33

Scintilla epistolam ad Quintum scribit



Scintilla epistolam ad Quintum scribit.

Vocabulary 33

verbs

adiuvō, adiuvāre, adiūvī, adiūtum

administrō, administrāre, administrāvī, administrātum

immineō, imminēre + dat.

valeō, valēre, valuī, valitum

committō, committere, commīsī, commissum

aliquem certiōrem faciō

I help

I manage, administer

I hang over, threaten

I am strong, I am well

I entrust

I make someone more certain,

I inform someone

adjectives

cautus, -a, -um

cautious

certus, -a, -um

certain; resolved

honestus, -a, -um

honourable

ōtiōsus, -a, -um

at leisure, idle

sollicitus, -a, -um

anxious

nouns

filiolus, -ī, m.

a little son

dolor, dolōris, m.

pain, grief

īnfāns, īfantis, c.

baby

mēnsis, mēnsis, m.

month

The following is the opening of an article in *The Independent* of 18 April 1995:

If the unions are to be credible, they must heal their divisions and curb the militants. As the teachers' unions embark this week on a series of uncoordinated plans for action over class sizes next term, their failure to serve ordinary union members and children in schools has never been more apparent.

These two sentences include ten words derived from Latin roots. List those you recognize and say what Latin word each is derived from.

Scintilla epistolam ad Quīntum scrībit

Read and understand the following passage; answer the questions below without translating

paucīs post mēnsibus Quīntus epistolam accēpit Venusiā missam. Scintilla ad eum scrīpserat:

Scintilla filiō cārissimō salūtem plūrimam dat.

nūntium optimum tibi referō: Horātia nūper filiolum peperit. partus nōn facilis erat; Horātia magnum dolōrem subiit. Lūcīnae ānxiē supplicābāmus; tandem tamen omnia bene ēvēnērunt; et māter et infāns valent. omnēs gaudēmus, in prīmīs Decimus. infāns dulcissimus est, quī iam mātrem cognōscit rīsūque salūtat.

Horātia ipsa ad tē mox scrībet, sed nōn ōtiōsa est; nam nōn modo infāntem cūrat sed magnae familiae domina facta est. omnēs rēs domesticae eī ā Decimō commissae sunt; ille enim multīs rēbus occupātus est; nōn modo rūra sua administrat sed etiam candidātus est in comitiīs quae mox Venusiae fient.

pater tuus valet; dē rēbus tamen pūblicis valdē sollicitus est. cotīdiē nūntiī pessimī Rōmā afferuntur. rēspūblica in maximum perīculum, ut dīcit, addūcitur; Octāviānus Antōniusque pactum cōnfēcērunt inimīcōsque oppugnant; multī virī honestī prōscrībuntur. Cicerō ipse, pater amīcī tuī, occīsus est ab Antōniī mīlitibus. quae omnia nōs summā ānxiētāte afficiunt. quīn etiam Brūtus ad Graeciam fūgit exercitumque ibi parat.

quid tū Athēnīs audīvistī? Brūtōne occurrīstī? multōs iuvenēs quī Athēnīs student, ut dīcunt, in exercitum cōnscrīpsit. bellum cīvile rēspūblīcae imminet. cautus estō, mī Quīnte; nōlī Brūtī illecebrās audīre; Athēnīs manē; dīligenter studē; mox domum redī patremque adiuvā.

statim nōbīs epistolam scrībe. Horātiae grātulatiōnem mitte nōsque certiōrēs fac tē incolumem esse. cūrā ut valeās.

peperit has given birth to

partus the birth

Lūcīnae Lucina, goddess of childbirth; **in prīmīs** especially **rīsū** with a smile

rēs domesticae domestic affairs

rūra estates

comitiīs elections

pactum an agreement

prōscrībuntur are being proscribed, outlawed

quae omnia all these things

quīn etiam what is more

cōnscrīpsit he has enrolled

illecebrās enticements

tē incolumem esse that you are safe



A woman giving birth

- | | | |
|---|----------------------------------------|-----|
| 1 | What news does Scintilla send Quintus? | [2] |
| 2 | Why is Horatia so busy? | [3] |
| 3 | What is Decimus doing? | [3] |
| 4 | What is worrying Flaccus? | [4] |
| 5 | What is especially worrying Scintilla? | [3] |

Word-building

From some nouns diminutives are formed, e.g.

- filiolus**, -ī, m. (from **filius**) a little son
filiola, -ae, f. (from **filia**) a little daughter
agellus, -ī, m. (from **ager**) a little field
libellus, -ī, m. (from **liber**) a little book
homunculus, -ī, m. (from **homō**) a little man
rēgulus, -ī, m. (from **rēx**, **rēgis**) a petty king

Although the basic significance of the diminutive form is smallness, diminutives can also express affection (e.g. **filiolus** can mean 'a dear little son') or contempt (e.g. **homunculus** can mean 'a silly little man'), according to the context in which they occur.

BIRTH AND CHILDHOOD

Childbirth carried a high element of risk in the ancient world. Miscarriages were common, as was infant and child mortality. Julius Caesar's daughter suffered a miscarriage and when she died in childbirth, her child died too. Among the poor, the deaths of mothers and babies were made more common by malnutrition and lack of medical attention. And when poor parents could not afford to bring their children up, they were likely to expose them

(i.e. abandon them to die or to be picked up by anyone who wanted them).

Two ceremonies followed a child's birth. First the father took it up in his arms to acknowledge that it was legitimate. Then on the eighth day in the case of a girl and the ninth in the case of a boy came the day of purification when the child was named. Children would be given small presents strung together as a necklace. These would be small models of everyday objects (swords, axes, etc.), and would serve as a sort of charm. Children would also be given a *bulla* to wear over their tunics; this was a gold, bronze or leather locket containing a lucky charm or mascot.

Roman children played with terracotta dolls and kept mice, caged birds and dogs as pets. Pliny tells the story of Regulus whose extravagant show of grief at his son's death led him to a grisly display:

Regulus has lost his son and now that he is lost, he mourns him insanely. The boy had lots of ponies, some of them pairs, he had dogs both great and small, and nightingales, parrots and blackbirds. All of these Regulus slaughtered at his son's funeral pyre.

As for games, Quintus himself writes in one of his poems of those that adults must leave behind as part of the process of growing up: 'building toy houses, harnessing mice to a little cart, playing odds and evens, riding a long stick'. If the cart was big enough to hold a child, it would be drawn by a sheep, a goat, a dog or even another child. In odds and evens children would hold some pebbles or nuts in their closed fist and challenge their companion to say whether the number was odd or even. *Capita et nāvia* was the Roman equivalent of 'heads and tails' – would the



A Roman boy at play

coin fall with the head side or the ship side uppermost? They spun tops with strings or whips and bowled hoops with sticks. (The best hoops were decorated with bells and rings, and jingled merrily as they ran.) They rode hobby horses, and used knucklebones as dice, which they would throw for nuts as the stake. They would also play at being grown ups, enacting legal cases, and assuming the roles of soldiers, gladiators, charioteers and kings. And they would pretend to be magistrates and lictors holding model fasces and axes.

It is possible that relations between parents and children may have frequently been more distant than is usually the case in the modern world. The high rate of infant mortality may have caused parents to harden their hearts against loss, and the slaves who had responsibility for the children, from the wet nurses who suckled them to the nannies and the *paidagōgī*, may have inspired more love than the parents, as is indicated by many a gravestone set up for such slaves. However, other gravestones reveal a very strong love between parents and children. One of them reads:

To the departed spirit of Eucopio, who lived for six months and three days. He was the sweetest and most charming of infants and although he could not yet speak he was utterly delightful.

And the epitaph of a little girl called Politta reads:

A good plant from a holy root – citizens, weep for me. I was pleasing to all, blameless in my mother's eyes, faultless in my father's. I lived five years.

The Roman poets also convey a strong sense of family love. Here is Lucretius, writing of what death takes away from us:

No longer now will your happy house welcome you, and your best of wives and your sweet children will no longer run to meet you to snatch your kisses; no longer will they touch your heart with silent joy.

Here is Virgil's vision of a happy family in a country setting:

Meanwhile the farmer's sweet children hang about his lips and his pure home preserves its decency.

And Catullus expresses a delightful wish:

May tiny Torquatus stretch out his delicate hands from his mother's breast and give his father a delightful laugh from half-open lips.

How big a part do you feel that mothers played in the upbringing of their children in Roman times?

Grammar and exercises

Chapter 17

Tenses

Verbs in Latin alter their endings to indicate different *tenses*, i.e. the time at which an action or event takes place. So far all the stories have been told in the *present tense*; this is used when the action of the verb is happening now or happens regularly, e.g.

Flaccus in agrō labōrat. Flaccus is working in the field (now)
or Flaccus works in the field (every day).

(Latin does not have separate tenses to indicate these different meanings.)

We now introduce two *past tenses*:

1 The imperfect tense

This tense is used when an action in the past is *continuous*, *repeated* or *incomplete*, e.g.

Flaccus in agrō diū labōrābat.

Flaccus was working in the field for a long time.

Quīntus ad lūdum cotidie ambulābat. - *taistura tekominere*

Quintus used to walk to school every day.

Horātia iānuam claudēbat, cum māter 'nōlī' inquit 'iānuam claudere.' - *perd. hnwailera*

Horatia was shutting the door when her mother said 'Don't shut the door.'

Note that English does not always indicate time so precisely, e.g.

Flaccus *worked* in the field a long time: but Latin will say **labōrābat**, since the action is continuous.

Quintus *walked* to school every day: but Latin will say **ambulābat**, since the action is repeated.

The imperfect tense is formed by adding the following endings to the present stem:

compare person endings

-bam	I	[par-ō]
-bās	you (<i>singular</i>)	par-ās
-bat	he/she	par-at
-bāmus	we	par-āmus
-bātis	you (<i>plural</i>)	par-ātis
-bant	they	par-ant

So:

1st conj. stem: parā-	2nd conj. monē-	3rd conj. reg-	4th conj. audi-
parā-bam (I was preparing)	monē-bam (I was warning)	reg-ē-bam (I was ruling)	audi-ē-bam (I was hearing)
parā-bās	monē-bās	reg-ē-bās	audi-ē-bās
parā-bat	monē-bat	reg-ē-bat	audi-ē-bat
parā-bāmus	monē-bāmus	reg-ē-bāmus	audi-ē-bāmus
parā-bātis	monē-bātis	reg-ē-bātis	audi-ē-bātis
parā-bant	monē-bant	reg-ē-bant	audi-ē-bant

NB 1 3rd and 4th conjugation verbs insert **-ē-** after the stem before the imperfect person endings.

2 Mixed conjugation verbs form imperfects like **audiō: capi-ē-bam** etc.

3 The imperfect of **sum** is:

eram	I was	<i>posse - verbis impf.</i>
erās	you (sing.) were	<i>si mudostrata "bam" in avulla</i>
erat	he/she was	
erāmus	we were	
erātis	you (pl.) were	
erant	they were	

Exercise 17.1

Translate

- litterās cotīdiē (every day) scribēbāmus.
- urbem fortiter dēfendēbant.
- in agrīs errābam.
- filium diū quaerēbat.
- in casā quiēscēbās.
- fessī erāmus.
- ad forum ambulābant.
- magistrum nōn audiēbātis.
- domum fugiēbam.
- in forō diū manēbant.

2 The perfect tense

The *perfect tense* is most often used to express completed past action, e.g.

Flaccus ad agrum ambulāvit. Flaccus *walked* to the field.

Flaccus ad agrum nōn ambulāvit. Flaccus *did not walk* to the field.

nōne Flaccus ad agrum ambulāvit? *Didn't Flaccus walk* to the field?

The perfect person endings are the same for every conjugation:

singular	-ī	I	plural	-imus	we
	-istī	you (sing.)		-istis	you (pl.)
	-it	he/she		-erunt	they

These endings are attached to the perfect stem:

1st conjugation	parāv-
2nd conjugation	monu-
3rd conjugation, e.g.	rēx-
4th conjugation	audīv-

1 -a- verbs perfect stem parāv-		2 -e- verbs perfect stem monu-	
parāv-ī	I prepared	monu-ī	I warned
parāv-istī	you (<i>sing.</i>) prepared	monu-istī	you (<i>sing.</i>) warned
parāv-it	he/she prepared	monu-it	he/she warned
parāv-imus	we prepared	monu-imus	we warned
parāv-istis	you (<i>pl.</i>) prepared	monu-istis	you (<i>pl.</i>) warned
parāv-ērunt	they prepared	monu-ērunt	they warned
3 consonant verbs perfect stem, e.g. rēx- (regs-)		4 -i- verbs perfect stem audīv-	
rēx-ī	I ruled	audīv-ī	I heard
rēx-istī	you (<i>sing.</i>) ruled	audīv-istī	you (<i>sing.</i>) heard
rēx-it	he/she ruled	audīv-it	he/she heard
rēx-imus	we ruled	audīv-imus	we heard
rēx-istis	you (<i>pl.</i>) ruled	audīv-istis	you (<i>pl.</i>) heard
rēx-ērunt	they ruled	audīv-ērunt	they heard

The perfect stem is formed in various ways:

1 Regular verbs of the 1st, 2nd and 4th conjugations form perfects as follows:

The suffix **-v** or **-u** is added to the verb stem, e.g.

- 1st **para-**, perfect **parā-v-ī**
 2nd **mone-**, perfect **mon-u-ī** (the **e** of the stem drops out)
 4th **audi-**, perfect **audī-v-ī**

Exercise 17.2

Form the imperfect and perfect (1st person singular) of the following verbs

dormiō, salūtō, habeō, labōrō, exerceō, custōdiō

2 3rd conjugation verbs, the stems of which end in a consonant or in **u**, follow various patterns:

(1) The suffix **-s** is added to the verb stem, e.g.

- reg-ō, reg-ere:** perfect **rēx-ī** (for **rēg-s-ī**)
dīc-ō, dīc-ere: perfect **dīx-ī** (for **dīc-s-ī**)

(2) The verb stem is unchanged, e.g.

- contend-ō, contendere:** perfect **contend-ī**
cōstitu-ō, cōstituere: perfect **cōstitu-ī**

(3) The vowel of the present stem is lengthened, e.g.

- leg-ō, leg-ere:** perfect **lēg-ī**
em-ō, em-ere: perfect **ēm-ī**

(4) The present stem is reduplicated (i.e. the first syllable is doubled), e.g.

- cad-ō, cad-ere:** perfect **ce-cid-ī**
curr-ō, curr-ere: perfect **cu-curr-ī**

- (5) The suffix **-v/iv** or **-u** is added to the stem, e.g.

sin-ō, sin-ere:	perfect sivī
pet-ō, pet-ere:	perfect petivī
pōn-ō, pōn-ere:	perfect posui

These rules will enable you to recognize most perfect forms in your reading.

At present only *learn the following*, which add the suffix **-s** to the present stem:

scrib-ō, scrib-ere, scrip-sī	I write	$b + s = p$
dīc-ō, dīc-ere, dīx-ī	I say	$c + s = x$
dūc-ō, dūc-ere, dūx-ī	I lead	
reg-ō, reg-ere, rēx-ī	I rule	
claud-ō, claud-ere, claus-ī	I close	$d + s = s$
ēvād-ō, ēvād-ere, ēvās-ī	I escape	
cēd-ō, cēd-ere, ces-sī	I yield, I go	$d + s = ss$
lūd-ō, lūd-ere, lūs-ī	I play	
mitt-ō, mitt-ere, mīs-ī	I send	$t + s = s$
surg-ō, surg-ere, surrēx-ī	I get up, rise	
ger-ō, ger-ere, ges-sī	I carry, wear	$r + s = ss$

NB 1 When **-s** is added to the consonant in which the present stem ends, certain changes of spelling occur, e.g. $c + s = x$ (**dīc-sī** becomes **dīx-ī**); **d** drops out (**claud-sī** becomes **claus-ī**), etc.

- 2 The perfect of compound verbs is usually the same as that of the simple, e.g.

dūcō, dūxī; re-dūcō, re-dūxī
cēdō, cessī; ac-cēdō, ac-cessī
mittō, mīsī; re-mittō, re-mīsī

- 3 A few 2nd conjugation verbs also form the perfect by adding suffix **-s**; *learn the following*

augeō, augēre, auxī	I increase
iubeō, iubēre, iussī	I order
maneō, manēre, mānsī	I remain, stay
persuādeō, persuādēre, persuāsī + dat.	I persuade
rīdeō, rīdēre, rīsī	I laugh

- 4 The perfect stem of **sum** is **fu-**:

fu-ī	I was
fu-istī	you (<i>sing.</i>) were
fu-it	he/she was
fu-imus	we were
fu-istis	you (<i>pl.</i>) were
fu-ērunt	they were

Exercise 17.3

Put the following verb forms into (a) the imperfect (b) the perfect

1 monet	6 custōdiunt	11 manēmus
2 dormiō	7 dūcō	12 dīcitis
3 superant	8 mittimus	13 ēvādunt
4 dēbēmus	9 claudis	14 amat
5 clāmātis	10 iubeō	15 exerceō

Exercise 17.4

Translate

- 1 ad urbem ambulāvimus.
- 2 Quīntus nōn dormīvit.
- 3 mihi omnia dixistī.
- 4 mīlitēs prope castra sē exercuērunt.
- 5 mē cūrāvistis.
- 6 filium ad agrum dūxī.
- 7 Flaccus puerum ad agrum mīsīt.
- 8 eum iussit in agrō labōrāre.
- 9 cūr iānuam nōn clausistī?
- 10 puellae litterās bene scrīpsērunt.

Exercise 17.5

Translate the following verb forms

- | | | | |
|----------------|-------------|----------------|--------------|
| 1 spectā | 7 dūcēbās | 13 dormīre | 19 monuērunt |
| 2 spectābam | 8 dūcere | 14 dormīte | 20 monēbat |
| 3 spectat | 9 dūcunt | 15 dormiēbant | 21 monēre |
| 4 spectāvī | 10 dūxistis | 16 dormiō | 22 monēte |
| 5 spectāre | 11 dūc | 17 dormīvistī | 23 monuimus |
| 6 spectāvērunt | 12 dūxit | 18 dormiēbāmus | 24 monuit |

Exercise 17.6

In the following sentences put each verb in parentheses into the appropriate tense (imperfect or perfect) and translate the whole sentence. For example:

**Horātia Quīntusque in hortō (lūdere), cum Scintilla eōs (vocāre).
lūdēbant; vocāvit.**

Horatia and Quintus were playing in the garden when Scintilla called them.

- 1 Scintilla Quīntum Horātiamque (vocāre); ad agrum eōs (mittere).
- 2 puerī ad agrum (ambulāre); cēnam ad patrem (portāre).
- 3 nōn (festināre) sed in viā diū (lūdere).
- 4 tandem ubi agrum (intrāre), Horātia patrem (vocāre).
- 5 ille filiam nōn (audīre); sub arbore (dormīre); nam fessus (esse).
- 6 Horātia frātre(m) (monēre); 'nōlī patrem excitāre,' inquit; 'fessus (esse).'
- 7 sed ille (ēvigilāre) puerōsque (salūtāre).
- 8 puerī in agrō diū (manēre); tandem Quīntus Horātiam domum (reducere).

Exercise 17.7

Translate into Latin

- 1 Quintus and Horatia were hurrying to school.
- 2 But on the way they stayed and played with a friend, who was exercising his dog.
- 3 When they approached the school, the master was standing near the door.
- 4 He watched them and said, 'Why are you coming late?'
- 5 Quintus laughed and said, 'We are not coming late.'
- 6 The master was angry. He told (= ordered) them to go in at once.
- 7 When he dismissed the other children, he told them to stay and write their letters again.

Chapter 18

Perfect stems of verbs (cont.)

Learn the following 3rd conjugation verbs, which have the same stem for present and perfect:

ascend-ō, ascend-ere, ascend-ī	I climb
contend-ō, contend-ere, contend-ī	I march, hasten
dēfend-ō, dēfend-ere, dēfend-ī	I defend
dēscend-ō, dēscend-ere, dēscend-ī	I descend
incend-ō, incend-ere, incend-ī	I set on fire
ostend-ō, ostend-ere, ostend-ī	I show, point out
vert-ō, vert-ere, vert-ī	I turn
cōstitu-ō, cōstitu-ere, cōstitu-ī	I decide

Note that the 3rd person singular and 1st person plural have identical forms for present and perfect, e.g.

dēfendit = either 'he defends' or 'he defended'; **vertimus** = either 'we turn' or 'we turned'.

The context will show which meaning is intended.

Note also:

respondeō, respondēre, respondi	I answer
----------------------------------------	----------

Exercise 18.1

Put the following verb forms into corresponding forms of the perfect

1 dēfendimus	3 vertit	5 incendis	7 augeō	9 persuādet
2 cōstituunt	4 ostendō	6 dicunt	8 sumus	10 lūdunt

Exercise 18.2

Translate

- 1 ad agrum contendebāmus; in viā Gāium vidimus.
- 2 Gāius arborem ascendēbat; ubi eum vocāvī, celeriter dēscendit.
- 3 Gāius nōbiscum contendit; ubi agrum intrāvimus, ego patrem eī ostendī.
- 4 pater nōs audīvit; sē vertit Gāiumque salūtāvit.
- 5 omnēs in agrō diū labōrābāmus.
- 6 tandem fessī erāmus; cōstituimus domum redire.

Note: the stem of **eō** is **i-**; hence infinitive **i-re**, imperfect **i-bam**, perfect **i-ī**.
This verb is most commonly found in compounds.

Exercise 18.3

Translate the following verb forms

1 ībāmus	5 redire	9 exeunt
2 īte	6 redībant	10 exībās
3 iērunt	7 redī	11 exiit
4 iit	8 rediimus	12 exit

Numerals

Learn the following

cardinals

ūnus, ūna, ūnum	I one
duo, duae, duo	II two

ordinals

primus, -a, -um	first
secundus, -a, -um	second

trēs, tria	III three	tertius, -a, -um	third
quattuor	IV four	quārtus, -a, -um	fourth
quīque	V five	quīntus, -a, -um	fifth
sex	VI six	sextus, -a, -um	sixth
septem	VII seven	septimus, -a, -um	seventh
octō	VIII eight	octāvus, -a, -um	eighth
novem	IX nine	nōnus, -a, -um	ninth
decem	X ten	decimus, -a, -um	tenth

The *ordinal* numbers (first, second, third, etc.) all decline like **bonus, bona, bonum**. Numerals 4 (**quattuor**) to 100 (**centum**) do not decline. For numerals 11–1,000 see Reference grammar, p. 155.

The Romans wrote their numerals I, II, III, etc. How does IX come to mean 9? They had no sign for zero; what problems would this cause in arithmetic?

	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>		<i>m. f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
<i>nom.</i>	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	<i>nom.</i>	trēs	tria
<i>acc.</i>	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	<i>acc.</i>	trēs	tria
<i>gen.</i>	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus	<i>gen.</i>	tribus	tribus
<i>dat.</i>	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	<i>dat.</i>	tribus	tribus
<i>abl.</i>	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	<i>abl.</i>	tribus	tribus

	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
<i>nom.</i>	duo	duae	duo
<i>acc.</i>	duo/duōs	duās	duo
<i>gen.</i>	duōrum	duārum	duōrum
<i>dat.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus
<i>abl.</i>	duōbus	duābus	duōbus

ūnus declines like **ille** in gen. and dat. sing.; **trēs** declines like the plural of **omnis**.

Learn **vīgintī = 20**

30, 40, etc. are easily recognized by the termination **-gintā**: **trī-gintā, quadrā-gintā**, etc.

Learn **centum = 100**

200, 300, etc. are easily recognized by the termination **-centī**: **du-centī, -ae, -a; tre-centī, -ae, -a**, etc.; these decline like the plural of **bonus**.

Learn **mille = 1,000**

duo milia = 2,000, tria milia = 3,000, etc.

NB **mille** is an indeclinable adjective, e.g. **mille passūs = '1,000 paces' = one mile**.

But **milia** is a neuter plural noun, e.g. **duo milia passuum = '2,000 of paces' = two miles**.

Expressions of time

Duration of time, saying *how long* an action or event lasts, is expressed by the *accusative* case, e.g.

trēs hōrās ambulābāmus. We were walking *for three hours*.

sex annōs manēbāmus. We stayed *for six years*.

Time when, saying *at what time* an action or event took place, is expressed by the *ablative* case, e.g.

primā lūce domō discessērunt. They left home *at dawn*.

septimō annō domum rediimus. *In the seventh year* we returned home.

The ablative is also used to express the time *within which* something happens, e.g.

tribus hōrīs domum rediit. He returned home *within three hours*.

In the following exercises we shall use **diēs** = 'day'; this noun belongs to the fifth or **-e-** declension (see chapter 21): acc. sing. **diem**, abl. sing. **diē**, acc. plural **diēs**, abl. plural **diēbus**.

Exercise 18.4

Translate

- 1 Quīntus paterque trēs diēs ad iter sē parābant; quārtō diē discessērunt.
- 2 primā lūce Flaccus surrēxit Quīntumque excitāvit.
- 3 tertiā hōrā Scintillam Horātiāque valēre iussērunt iterque iniērunt.
- 4 novem diēs in viā Appiā contendēbant; decem diēbus urbem Rōmam adiērunt.
- 5 posterō (*the next*) diē ad forum festīnāverunt et trēs hōrās ibi manēbant.

The meanings of the perfect tense

parāvī usually means 'I prepared' (*simple past time*) but it can also mean 'I have prepared'. This we call the *perfect with have* or the *true perfect*.

There is nothing in the verb form to tell you which meaning is intended, but the context will usually make this clear, since the *perfect with have* occurs only in present contexts, e.g.

quīnque diēs contendērunt sed Rōma adhūc longē abest.

They have walked for five days but Rome *is* still far away.

nōlī timēre, fili; lupus abiit. *Don't* be afraid, son; the wolf *has gone away*.

Exercise 18.5

Translate the following, making sure that you translate all perfect tenses appropriately, choosing between the two possible meanings

- 1 in viā Appiā ambulābam; subitō lupum vīdī.
- 2 pater dixit: 'nōlī timēre, fili; lupus abiit.'
- 3 novem diēs contendēbāmus; decimō diē urbem intrāvimus.
- 4 pater 'gaudē, fili,' inquit; 'iter cōnfectum est.'
- 5 Flaccus epistolam (*a letter*) ad Scintillam scrīpsit: 'īncolumēs sumus. Rōmam intrāvimus; lūdum Orbiliī spectāvimus.'
- 6 mātēr ānxia erat; nam filius domō aberat. 'ānxia sum,' inquit; 'trēs hōrās filium exspectāvī, sed ille domum nōn rediit.'
- 7 tandem quīntā hōrā noctis puer rediit. mātēr irāta erat.
- 8 'ō fili,' inquit, 'cūr tam sērō rediistī? quattuor hōrās tē exspectāvī. quīntā hōrā tandem rediistī.'
- 9 puer respondit: 'cum amīcīs duās hōrās lūdēbam. deinde domum festīnāvī.'
- 10 ecce! tertiā hōrā noctis rediī. nōlī tē vexāre.'

Exercise 18.6

Match up the English translations below with the following Latin verb forms

- | | | | | |
|------------|------------|--------------|------------|-----------------|
| 1 studuit | 4 trānsire | 7 erāmus | 10 dīcēbas | 13 contendī |
| 2 mānsistī | 5 dīc | 8 dēfendistī | 11 mīsit | 14 prōmīsistī |
| 3 monuimus | 6 possunt | 9 dīxērunt | 12 mittit | 15 cōstituērunt |

we were, he/she sent, I marched, they have decided, he/she studied, to cross, he/she sends, you defended, we warned, you promised, say!, they can, they said, you have stayed, you used to say

Exercise 18.7

Translate into Latin

- 1 Quintus stayed in the forum for three hours; he was waiting for Gaius.
- 2 At the fourth hour he decided to return home; but when he turned round, he caught sight of Gaius.
- 3 Gaius was hurrying through the street; he crossed the forum and approached Quintus.
- 4 Quintus greeted him and said, 'I have waited for you for three hours. Why have you come (*veniō, venīre, vēnī*) so late?'
- 5 Gaius replied: 'On the way I saw a friend, who showed me his dog.'
- 6 We played with the dog. Then we climbed a tree. Don't be angry. I have arrived at last.'

Chapter 19

Perfect stems of verbs (cont.)

Many verbs lengthen the vowel of the present stem to form the perfect. Learn the following:

1st conjugation:	iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī lavō, lavāre, lāvī	I help I wash
2nd conjugation:	sedeō, sedēre, sēdī videō, vidēre, vīdī	I sit I see
3rd conjugation:	agō, agere, ēgī emō, emere, ēmī legō, legere, lēgī frangō, frangere, frēgī vincō, vincere, vīcī relinquō, relinquere, reliquī	I do, I drive I buy I read I break I conquer I leave behind
4th conjugation:	veniō, venīre, vēnī	I come
mixed conjugation:	capiō, capere, cēpī (also accipiō, accēpī; recipiō, recēpī , etc.) faciō, facere, fēcī iaciō, iacere, iēcī fugiō, fugere, fūgī	I take I do, make I throw I flee

Exercise 19.1

Translate the following verb forms

1 lavāmus	6 relinquunt	11 sēdimus	16 cēpērunt
2 lāvimus	7 reliquērunt	12 sedēmus	17 iēcistī
3 vēnit	8 vidēmus	13 vīcistī	18 fugit
4 venit	9 vīdimus	14 lēgī	19 fūgimus
5 ēmistis	10 sedēbāmus	15 legō	20 fēcī

The pluperfect tense

e.g. **parāv-eram** = I had prepared.

The tense is used to represent a past action or event which precedes another past action or event, e.g.

nox iam vēnerat cum Rōmam intrāvērunt. Night had come already when they entered Rome.
(Both events are in the past but night had fallen before they entered Rome.)

ubi Horātia domum rediit, Scintilla ad forum iam prōcesserat.
When Horatia returned home, Scintilla had already gone on to the forum.

The tense is formed by adding the following endings to the perfect stem:

-eram	I had	-erāmus	we had	(these endings are the same as those of the imperfect of sum)
-erās	you (<i>sing.</i>) had	-erātis	you (<i>pl.</i>) had	
-erat	he/she had	-erant	they had	

	1st parō	2nd moneō	3rd regō	4th audiō	mixed capiō	sum
<i>perfect stem</i>	parāv-	monu-	rēx-	audīv-	cēp-	fu-
<i>pluperfect</i>	parāv-eram	monu-eram	rēx-eram	audīv-eram	cēp-eram	fu-eram

Exercise 19.2

Give the pluperfect of **dicō** (all persons) and translate each form

Exercise 19.3

Match up the following verb forms to the translations below

ēmerant, vīcimus, prōmitte, lēgerāmus, discessit, abesse, flēbat, relīquit, init, studuimus, iniit, frēgistī, ēgimus, clausērātis, relinquit

he/she entered, we have conquered, we did, to be absent, they had bought, he/she left, we studied, he/she was weeping, he/she is entering, you had shut, promise!, we had read, he/she departed, you broke, he/she leaves

Note the following idioms

media urbs = the middle of the city (literally: 'the middle city')

summus mōns = the top of the mountain (literally: 'the highest mountain')

Exercise 19.4

Translate

- 1 Flaccus in summō colle stābat cum moenia Rōmae vīdit.
- 2 nox iam vēnerat cum Flaccus Quīntum in urbem dūxit.
- 3 ubi ad mediam urbem vēnērunt, in forō diū manēbant; aedificia tam splendida numquam viderant.
- 4 Flaccus tabellārium (*the postman*) quaerēbat; epistolam ad Scintillam scrīpserat.
- 5 Scintilla laeta erat; tandem Flaccus epistolam mīserat.
- 6 māter Horātiam vocāvit, quae in hortum exierat.

Expressions of place

ad urbem festināvērunt. They hurried to the city.

But **Rōmam** festināvērunt. They hurried to Rome.

ab urbe discessērunt. They went away from the city.

But **Rōmā** discessērunt. They went away from Rome.

The names of cities and towns do not have a preposition in expressions of *motion to* or *from* a place. The *accusative* case is used to express *motion towards* and the *ablative* to express *motion from*.

The same applies to **domus**:

domum rediērunt. They returned (to) home.

domō discessērunt. They left (from) home.

Note that prepositions are only omitted with the names of *towns* and the word **domus**.

Names of countries require prepositions, e.g.

ille senex ad Italiam nāvigāvit **Rōmamque** festināvit.

That old man sailed to Italy and hurried to Rome.

Quintus ad Graeciam nāvigāvit, **Flaccus Venusiam** rediit.

Quintus sailed to Greece, Flaccus returned to Venusia.

The locative case

You have met **dom-i** = 'at home'. This is called the *locative* case, expressing *place where*, e.g.

domī manēbat; **domī** tells you where he stayed.

All names of towns and cities can form a locative case.

The names of places have various forms, singular and plural, e.g.

<i>nominative</i>		<i>locative</i>	
Rōma	(1st decl. sing.)	Rōmae	at/in Rome
Athēnae	(1st decl. plural)	Athēnīs	at/in Athens
Corinthus	(2nd decl. sing.)	Corinthī	at/in Corinth
Londinium	(2nd decl. n. sing.)	Londiniū	at/in London
Puteoli	(2nd decl. plural)	Puteolīs	at Puteoli

(The locative is the same in form as the genitive for place names of the 1st and 2nd declensions singular, the same as the ablative for those which are plural.)

A few place names are 3rd declension and have locatives ablative in form whether singular or plural:

Carthāgō	(3rd decl. sing.)	Carthāgine	at Carthage
Gādēs	(3rd decl. plural)	Gādibus	at Cadiz

Exercise 19.5

In the following sentences translate the names of the towns only into the correct Latin case

- 1 We stayed a week in Capua.
- 2 We then travelled to Cumae.
- 3 We stayed two nights in Cumae.
- 4 On the next day we departed from Cumae.
- 5 We stayed in Antium a few days.
- 6 Finally we returned to Rome.

Exercise 19.6

Translate

- 1 Aenēas Trōiae nātus est (*was born*).
- 2 ubi Graeci Trōiānōs vicērunt, comitēs ad Siciliam dūxit.
- 3 Trōiānī ad Italiam nāvigābant cum tempestās eōs ad Libyam ēgit.
- 4 Aenēas diū Carthāgine cum Didōne manēbat.
- 5 tandem Iuppiter eum iussit ad Italiam nāvigāre.
- 6 itaque Carthāgine discessit comitēsque Puteolōs dūxit.

Exercise 19.7

Translate into Latin

- 1 Flaccus and Quintus left home, but Scintilla and Horatia stayed in Venusia.
- 2 Father and son marched to Rome; within ten days they had reached (**perveniō ad**) the city.
- 3 The journey had been long and difficult.
- 4 They stayed in Rome for seven years; then Flaccus decided to return home.
- 5 Flaccus returned to Venusia; Quintus left Italy and sailed to Athens.
- 6 Quintus stayed in Athens for a long time.

Chapter 20

Perfect stems of verbs (cont.)

Verbs with reduplicated perfects form their perfect by putting before the present stem either the first letter of the stem + **e** (e.g. **dō**, **de-dī**) or the first syllable of the stem (e.g. **currō**, **cu-currī**).

Learn the following verbs:

cadō , cadere , ce-cidī	I fall
canō , canere , ce-cinī	I sing
currō , currere , cu-currī	I run
dō , dare , de-dī	I give
pellō , pellere , pe-pulī	I drive
stō , stāre , ste-tī	I stand

Most verbs drop reduplication in compounds, e.g.

incidō , incidere , incidī	I fall into
incurrō , incurrere , incurrī	I run into, run against

But compounds of **dō** and **stō** keep reduplication, e.g.

reddō , reddere , reddidī	I give back
instō , instāre , institi	I threaten, pursue

Exercise 20.1

Translate the following verb forms

- | | | |
|------------|---------------|-----------------|
| 1 dābant | 6 crēde | 11 currēbant |
| 2 dedī | 7 crēdidimus | 12 cucurristī |
| 3 dā | 8 crēdēbam | 13 currite |
| 4 dederant | 9 crēdō | 14 currimus |
| 5 dare | 10 crēdiderat | 15 cucurrerātis |

Exercise 20.2

Translate the following sentences

- 1 Horātia per silvam ambulābat; Argus domō discesserat; Horātia eum quaerēbat.
- 2 Terentius ab agrō redibat, cum puellae occurrit.
- 3 Terentius 'quid facis, Horātia?' inquit; 'cūr domō discessisti?'
- 4 Horātia 'māter' inquit 'mē mīsit. nam Argus in silvam cucurrit. diū eum quaerō.'
- 5 Terentius 'nōlī tē vexāre,' inquit; 'sine dubiō Argus iam domum rediit.'
- 6 domum ambulābant cum Horātia lapsāvit (*slipped*) ceciditque ad terram.
- 7 puella clamāvit; Argus eam audīvit cucurritque ē silvis.
- 8 puella canem laeta salūtāvit sed 'Arge,' inquit, 'cūr domō abiisti? malus canis es. mē valdē vexāvistī.'

Exercise 20.3

Put the verbs in parentheses into the correct forms and translate the sentences

- 1 Quīntus paterque ā forō iam (discēdere) et (prōcēdere) ad Subūram.
- 2 viae sordidae (esse); ubique hominēs hūc illūc (currere).
- 3 Quīntus patrem (rogāre): 'quō (īre)? ubi domicilium quaerere debēmus?'
- 4 pater respondit: 'nōlī dēspērāre, fili. ad Subūram paene (advenīre). illīc sine dubiō domicilium invenīre (posse).'
- 5 mox Quīntus īnsulam (vidēre) cuius (*of which*) porta aperta (esse).
- 6 Flaccus filium in īnsulam (dūcere) iānitōremque (vocāre).
- 7 tandem iānitōrem (invenīre); ille (dormīre); ēbrius erat; nam multum vīnum (bibere).
- 8 Flaccus eum (excitāre); ille 'nūllum domicilium' inquit '(habēre) vacuum.'

Exercise 20.4

Translate into Latin

- 1 Flaccus led Quintus to the school of Orbilius.
- 2 Orbilius was sitting in the courtyard (**aula, -ae, f.**).
- 3 Flaccus greeted him and said, 'I have brought (= led) my son to you.'
- 4 Orbilius asked Quintus many things; Quintus could answer easily.
- 5 The other boys had now arrived and were playing near the door.
- 6 Orbilius was angry. 'Why are you playing?' he said; 'Why have you not entered the schoolroom (**schola, -ae, f.**)?'

4th declension

Nouns of the 4th declension have stems in **-u**; they decline very like 3rd declension nouns, but **u** appears in all cases except the dative and ablative plural:

	singular	plural
<i>nom./voc.</i>	gradu-s	gradū-s
<i>acc.</i>	gradu-m	gradū-s
<i>gen.</i>	gradū-s	gradu-um
<i>dat.</i>	gradu-ī	grad-ibus
<i>abl.</i>	gradū	grad-ibus

Note the following 4th declension nouns:

exercitus, exercitūs, m.	army
gradus, gradūs, m.	step
cursus, cursūs, m.	course, race
magistrātus, magistrātūs, m.	magistrate
versus, versūs, m.	verse
vultus, vultūs, m.	face, expression
tumultus, tumultūs, m.	riot
manus, manūs, f.	hand

NB 1 Nearly all nouns of this declension are masculine; but **manus** is feminine, and there are a very few neuter nouns, e.g. **cornū** (= horn; for its declension, see Reference grammar, p. 153).

2 Nominative, vocative and genitive singular, and nominative, vocative and accusative plural all end **-us**; in the nominative and vocative singular **u** sounds short, but in the other cases it is long: **ū**.

3 Most 2nd declension masculine nouns, some 3rd declension nouns, and most 4th declension nouns all end **-us** in the nominative singular, but their genitives show which declension they belong to, e.g.

domin-us, domin-ī , m.	2nd declension
tempus, tempor-is , n.	3rd declension
versu-s, vers-ūs , m.	4th declension

Exercise 20.5

Decline in all cases, in the singular: vultus sevērus
and in the plural: omnēs gradūs

Exercise 20.6

Translate

- cīvēs clāmābant tumultumque facere parābant.
- cōnsul in gradibus templī stetit.
- multī magistrātūs aderant, quī cīvium iram timēbant.
- cōnsul cīvēs vultū sevērō spectābat.
- tandem manūs sustulit* ōrātiōnemque ad populum habuit.
- cīvēs tumultū dēstitērunt (*ceased from*) cōnsulemque audiēbant.

*sustulit: perfect of tollō = I raise.

Exercise 20.7

Translate into Latin

- Quintus was hurrying to school with his father.
- Flaccus was carrying his son's books in his hands.
- When they reached the school, Orbilius was waiting for them outside the door on the steps.
- He looked at them with a severe expression.
- 'Why have you arrived late, Quintus?' he said. 'You must write fifty verses.'

Chapter 21

Perfect stems of verbs (cont.)

A few verbs form perfects in **-vī/ivī** or **-uī**.

Learn the following 3rd conjugation verbs:

sinō, sinere, sīvī	I allow
petō, petere, petivī	I seek, ask, pursue
quaerō, quaerere, quaesivī	I look for, ask
arcessō, arcessere, arcessivī	I summon
colō, colere, coluī	I cultivate
pōnō, pōnere, posuī	I place

4th conjugation:

aperiō, aperīre, aperuī I open

mixed conjugation:

cupiō, cupere, cupivī I desire**rapiō, rapere, rapuī** I seize**Exercise 21.1***Match the following verb Latin forms with the translations below*

- | | | |
|--------------|----------------|---------------|
| 1 cecidit | 6 posuerant | 11 mōvistī |
| 2 coluimus | 7 ēgērunt | 12 auxistis |
| 3 mānsimus | 8 iusserant | 13 arcessivit |
| 4 lēgerat | 9 quaesivistis | 14 rediimus |
| 5 prōmisistī | 10 trādiderant | 15 reddidimus |

you looked for, you increased, he/she fell, we stayed, they had handed over, you promised,
 he/she summoned, they had ordered, we cultivated, they had placed, you moved, he/she had read,
 we returned (= went back), they did, we gave back

The 5th (and last) declension

This declension is formed from nouns with stems in **-e**, e.g.

rēs = thing, affair, matter, property.

	<i>singular</i>	<i>plural</i>	
<i>nom.</i>	rē-s	rē-s	All 5th declension nouns are feminine except for diēs, diēī, m. = day
<i>voc.</i>	rē-s	rē-s	
<i>acc.</i>	re-m	rē-s	
<i>gen.</i>	re-ī	rē-rum	
<i>dat.</i>	re-ī	rē-bus	
<i>abl.</i>	rē	rē-bus	

Learn **rēspūblica** = public affairs, politics, the state; both halves decline,
rēs as a 5th declension noun, **pūblica** as a 1st:

<i>nom./voc.</i>	rēspūblica
<i>acc.</i>	rempūblicam
<i>gen.</i>	reīpūblīcae
<i>dat.</i>	reīpūblīcae
<i>abl.</i>	rēpūblicā

Learn also **spēs, spēī, f.** hope.

(You have now learned all five declensions.

The Reference grammar, pp. 152–3, shows them all tabulated together.)

Exercise 21.2

Change the following phrases into (1) the genitive (2) the ablative

- | | |
|--------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 <i>singular:</i> | omnis rēs; prīma lūx; illud tempus; malus versus; nūlla spēs |
| 2 <i>plural:</i> | omnēs diēs, longae nāvēs, altī gradūs, hominēs trīstēs, flūmina alta |

Exercise 21.3

Translate

- 1 Quīntus iam multōs diēs in lūdō Orbiliū studuerat.
- 2 diē quōdam, ubi Orbilius puerōs dīmīsit, Marcus eum iussit domum sēcum venīre.
- 3 ubi Marcus Quīntum in tablīnum dūxit, pater eius epistolam scrībēbat dē rēbus pūblicīs.
- 4 Cicerō valdē ānxius erat dē rēpūblicā epistolāsque cotidiē ad Atticū mittēbat.
- 5 Cicerō rempūblicam dēfendere semper temptāverat sed iam spem paene dēposuerat (*had given up*).

Exercise 21.4

Translate into Latin

- 1 Every day Flaccus used to tell his son many things about Roman history (= Roman affairs).
- 2 He used to praise the leaders of the old (**vetus, veteris**) republic.
- 3 'The leaders' he said 'used to love the republic and cared for the citizens.'
- 4 Today the leaders don't care for the people; they want nothing except (**nisi**) to increase their own glory.
- 5 Who can have hope about the future (**futūra, -ōrum, n. pl.**)?'

Chapter 22

Perfect stems of verbs (concluded)

A few verbs add the suffix **-sc-** to the verb stem in the present, future and imperfect; this suffix is dropped in the perfect, e.g.

cognō-sc-ō, cognō-sc-ere, cognō-vī	I get to know, learn
crē-sc-ō, crē-sc-ere, crē-vī	I grow
quiē-sc-ō, quiē-sc-ere, quiē-vī	I rest

Exercise 22.1

Decline in all cases, in the singular: **haec rēs** in the plural: **illī diēs**

Exercise 22.2

Give the correct Latin form for the English verbs in parentheses and translate the sentences

- 1 diē quōdam Scintilla Horātiā māne (*woke*); nūndinae (*market day*) erant.
- 2 'ēvigilā,' inquit; 'tempus est ad forum (*to hurry*).'
- 3 Horātia mātī (*obeyed*) et celeriter (*got up*).
- 4 ubi ad forum (*they arrived*), plūrimī hominēs iam (*were there*).
- 5 in gradibus templī (*they stood*) et rēs suās (*they put out*).
- 6 mox omnēs rēs (*they had sold*) domūque (*to return*) parābant.
- 7 per forum lentē ambulābant amīcisque (*met*) quī ipsī rēs (*were selling*).
- 8 sed nihil (*they bought*); nam pauperēs (*they were*).

Uses of the ablative case

The ablative has a wide variety of meanings: *by, with, from, at, in, on*. We here summarize the commonest usages, which are already familiar to you:

1 **from:** the ablative can express *separation from* a place or thing, usually with a preposition, e.g.

ab urbe vēnit	he came from the city
ē silvā cucurrit	he ran out of the wood
dē monte dēscendit	he came down from the mountain
Rōmā discessit	he departed from Rome
domō festināvit	he hurried from home
forō longē aberat	he was a long way from the forum

So after some verbs and adjectives expressing *separation from*, e.g.

mē cūrā liberāvit	he freed me from care
fēminae liberae cūrā	women free from care
moenia dēfēnsōribus vacua	walls empty of defenders

2 **at/in/on:** the ablative can express *place where*, usually with a preposition, e.g.

in forō stābat	he was standing in the forum
sub arbore dormiēbat	she was sleeping under a tree
terrā marique pugnābant	they fought on land and sea

3 **at/on:** the ablative is used to express *time when*, e.g.

primā lūce discessērunt	they departed at dawn
quintō diē rediērunt	they returned on the fifth day

and *time within which*, e.g.

tribus diēbus rediit	he returned within three days
-----------------------------	-------------------------------

Note also:

multis post annis	many years after (literally: 'afterwards by many years')
paucis ante diēbus	a few days before

Exercise 22.3

Translate

- 1 ubi Quīntus Flaccusque domō discessērunt, Scintilla Horātiaque Venusiae manēbant.
- 2 cotidiē primā hōrā diēi surgēbant diūque in agrō labōrābant; vespere domum rediērunt, valdē fessae.
- 3 Scintilla rārō (*rarely*) cūrīs libera erat sed numquam spem dēposuit.
- 4 paucis post diēbus ab agrō redierat et in casā quiēscēbat cum tabellārius (*the postman*) epistolam eī trādidit.
- 5 Flaccus enim tandem epistolam Rōmā mīserat. Rōmam cum filiō sine cāsū advēnerat. haec epistola Scintillam magnā ānxiētāte liberāvit.

Chapter 23

ferō

Learn the verb **ferō, ferre, tulī** = I carry, bear.

The present is irregular:	ferō, fers, fert, ferimus, fertis, ferunt
imperatives:	fer, ferte
infinitive:	ferre

It has no perfect; it uses forms from another stem (**tul-**).

Exercise 23.1

Translate the following verb forms

1 fūgerant	6 fēcerātis	11 quaesīvimus
2 iaciēbat	7 fer	12 sīverāmus
3 tulistī	8 cupīvit	13 posuērunt
4 cēpī	9 tulerat	14 arcessīvistī
5 ferre	10 fertis	15 petīverat

Further uses of the ablative case

1 **with/by**: the ablative can express the *instrument* with or by which something is done:

mē gladiō vulnerāvit	he wounded me with a sword
pilis lūdēbant	they were playing with balls
ad urbem pedibus ibant	they were going on foot (by feet) to the city

This use is very common in such phrases as: **equō vectus** carried by (= riding on) a horse;
gladiō armātus armed with a sword.

2 **with**: the ablative can express the *manner* in which something is done, e.g.

summā celeritāte rediit	he returned with the greatest speed
magnā vōce clāmāvit	he shouted in (with) a loud voice

3 **with/of**: the ablative is used in describing *qualities*, e.g.

est puer magnō ingeniō	he is a boy of great talent
puella summā virtūte	a girl of the greatest courage
vir parvā prūdentia	a man of little prudence

4 Some adjectives take the ablative where English has a genitive, e.g.

iuvenis dignus est laude	the young man is worthy of praise
urna aquā plēna erat	the pot was full of water

Exercise 23.2

Translate

- 1 primā lūce Horātia ā fonte domum redībat; urnam gravem manibus ferēbat.
- 2 Scintilla eam magnā vōce vocāvit; 'redī, Horātia,' inquit, 'mēque celeriter iuvā.'
- 3 Horātia urnam in terrā dēposuit summāque celeritāte ad mātrem recurrit.
- 4 illa ē iānuā cucurrit et 'ecce, filia,' inquit, 'ardet (is on fire) casa.'
- 5 Horātia urnam aquā plēnam tulit flammāsque celeriter exstīnxit (put out).
- 6 Scintilla fīliam laudāvit: 'puella es maximā virtūte, Horātia, summāque laude digna.'

Exercise 23.3

Put the phrases in parentheses into the correct case and translate the sentences

- 1 (prīma lūx) Quīntus cum (pater) (domus) discessit.
- 2 lūdus Orbiliī (forum) nōn longē aberat. (breve tempus) ad lūdum advēnerant.
- 3 amīcī, ubi Quīntum cōspēxērunt, (magna vōx) eum vocāvērunt.
- 4 magister, (clāmōrēs) puerōrum commōtus, ē (lūdus) exiit puerōsque (vultus sevērus) spectāvit.
- 5 'nōlīte, puerī,' inquit 'tōtam urbem (tantī clāmōrēs) excitāre; celeriter intrāte.'

Exercise 23.4

Translate into Latin

- 1 One day (on a certain day) Quintus was hurrying to school.
- 2 He was crossing the forum when (**cum**) someone called him in a loud voice.
- 3 He turned round and saw Marcus, who was running at top speed towards him through the crowd.
- 4 'Quintus,' he said, 'you are a boy of great industry (**industria**) but you must not go to school today. Come with me to the races.'
- 5 Marcus led him from the forum to the Circus Maximus, which was full of men and women.

Exercise 23.5

In the following sentences change verb forms to the perfect and translate

- | | |
|----------------------|------------------------|
| 1 iānuam aperit. | 6 canem quaerō. |
| 2 urnam frangis. | 7 pecūniam trādis. |
| 3 aquam ferō. | 8 togam emit. |
| 4 Rōmam contendimus. | 9 omnia cognōscunt. |
| 5 domī manent. | 10 in casā quiēscimus. |

Chapter 24

The comparison of adjectives

Both English and Latin adjectives have three degrees of comparison, e.g.

	<i>positive</i>	<i>comparative</i>	<i>superlative</i>
<i>English</i>	brave	braver	bravest, very brave
<i>Latin</i>	fortis	fortior	fortissimus

The comparative is often used in comparing one thing with another, e.g.

The girl is braver than the boy.

puella fortior est quam puer. (Notice **quam** = than.)

Most adjectives form the comparative by adding **-ior** and the superlative by adding **-issimus** to the stem, e.g.

long-us,	long-ior,	long-issimus
long,	longer,	longest, very long
trist-is,	trist-ior,	trist-issimus
sad,	sadder,	saddest, very sad

Exercise 24.1

Form the comparative and superlative of the following adjectives

laetus, gravis, ingēns (*stem*: ingent-), altus

The comparative is a 3rd declension adjective (consonant stem: **-ior-**):

	<i>singular</i>		<i>plural</i>	
	<i>m. & f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m. & f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
<i>nom.</i>	fortior	fortius	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
<i>acc.</i>	fortiōrem	fortius	fortiōrēs	fortiōra
<i>gen.</i>	fortiōris	fortiōris	fortiōrum	fortiōrum
<i>dat.</i>	fortiōrī	fortiōrī	fortiōribus	fortiōribus
<i>abl.</i>	fortiōre	fortiōre	fortiōribus	fortiōribus

The superlative adjective declines like **bonus: fortissim-us, fortissim-a, fortissim-um**

A few common adjectives have irregular comparison; learn:

bonus	good	melior	better	optimus	best, very good
malus	bad	peior	worse	pessimus	worst, very bad
magnus	big	maior	bigger	maximus	biggest, very big
multus	much, many	plūs*	more	plūrimus	most, very many
parvus	small	minor	smaller	minimus	smallest, very small

***plūs** in the singular is a neuter *noun*, declining: **plūs, plūs, plūris, plūri, plūre**; so **plūs vinī** = more (of) wine.

In the plural it is a 3rd declension *adjective* (consonant stem: **plūr-**); so **plūrēs fēminae** = more women.

The use of **quam** = than

Marcus fortior est quam Quintus. Marcus is stronger than Quintus.

numquam iuvenem fortiōrem vīdī quam Marcum. I have never seen a young man stronger than Marcus.

When **quam** is used, the two things compared are in the same case.

Exercise 24.2

Translate

- 1 numquam puellam prūdentīorem vīdī quam Horātiam.
- 2 ego multis puellis occurrī prūdentīoribus quam Horātiae.
- 3 errās; Horātia multō (*much*) prūdentior est quam cēterae.
- 4 nēmō fortior fuit quam Achillēs.
- 5 nōn tibi crēdō; multōs virōs vīdī fortiōrēs quam Achillem.
- 6 errās; Achillēs fortissimus erat omnium hērōum.

Exercise 24.3

Translate into Latin

- 1 I am making a very long journey. I am looking for a bigger ship than this.
- 2 This ship is very good; you cannot find a better ship in all the harbour (**portus, -ūs, m.**).
- 3 The traveller (**viātor**) boarded the ship unwilling(ly). When they reached the open sea, he was very afraid.
- 4 The ship was very small; the waves were very big.
- 5 When they reached land, 'I have never made' he said 'a worse journey than this.'

Chapter 25

Irregular superlatives

Adjectives ending **-er** in the nominative double the **r** to form the superlative, e.g.

celer, celerior, celerrimus miser, miserior, miserrimus pulcher, pulchrior, pulcherrimus

The following adjectives ending **-ilis** double the **l** to form the superlative:

facilis, faciliior, facillimus difficilis, difficilior, difficillimus

The comparison of adverbs

fortiter bravely
fortius more bravely
fortissimē very bravely

The accusative neuter of the comparative adjective is used as the comparative adverb:

fortior = braver; **fortius** = more bravely.

The superlative adverb is formed by changing the ending of the superlative adjective **-us** to **-ē**:

fortissimus = very brave; **fortissimē** = very bravely.

Exercise 25.1

Form adverbs from the following adjectives and give their comparative and superlative

lentus, longus, bonus, facilis (*adverb: facile*), miser

Irregular comparison

	<i>adverb</i>	<i>comparative adverb</i>	<i>superlative adverb</i>
multus	multum	plūs	plūrimum
magnus	magnopere	magis	maximē

Note the comparison of the following adverbs:

diū, diūtius, diūtissimē
 saepe, saepius, saepissimē.

Note also the use of **quam** with the superlative:

quam celerrimē = as quickly as possible; **quam maximus** = as large as possible;
quam primum = as soon as possible.

Exercise 25.2

Translate

- 1 petauristae (*acrobats*) Venusiam advēnerant; Scintilla Horātiā iussit sē quam celerrimē parāre.
- 2 ubi ad forum pervēnērunt, plūrimī hominēs iam concurrēbant. Scintilla locum vacuum difficillimē quaerēbat.
- 3 'festīnā, Horātia,' inquit, 'ad templī gradūs; optimum locum videō unde omnia melius vidēre possumus.'
- 4 templī gradūs ascendērunt unde petauristās clārissimē vidēre poterant.
- 5 petauristae optimī erant; aliī per circulōs ardentēs (*burning hoops*) saliēbant, aliī per fūnēs (*ropes*) altōs ambulābant.
- 6 Scintilla 'nihil spectāre mālō' inquit 'quam petauristās.'

- 7 Horātia 'nēmō' inquit 'fortior est quam ille petaurista, quī per fūnem altissimum ambulāvit.'
 8 diūtissimē petauristās spectābant. Scintilla 'numquam' inquit 'melius spectāculum vīdī quam hoc.'
 9 Horātia 'cūr nōn saepius' inquit 'Venusiam veniunt petauristae?'
 10 tandem vesper aderat; discessērunt hominēs. Horātia miserrima erat quod lūdī cōfectī sunt.

Exercise 25.3

Translate into Latin

- 1 Quintus no longer enjoyed his studies.
- 2 He was very miserable and very often wished to leave school.
- 3 At last his father said, 'Quintus, why aren't you enjoying your studies more?'
- 4 Quintus replied: 'All my friends have left school. I want to leave as soon as possible.'
- 5 Flaccus said, 'My son, you are no longer a boy, but a young man now. You must leave school and put on the toga of manhood.'

Exercise 25.4

Translate the following verb forms

- | | | | | |
|---------------|--------------|-----------|-------------|-----------------|
| 1 cecidit | 4 redīte | 7 fuistī | 10 fac | 13 iēcimus |
| 2 ferre | 5 rettulistī | 8 legimus | 11 posuerat | 14 volumus |
| 3 reddiderant | 6 posse | 9 lēgimus | 12 potuimus | 15 quaesivērunt |

Chapter 26

The present participle

The present participle has often occurred in the narratives.

coniūrātī Caesarem reliquērunt in terrā iacentem.

The conspirators left Caesar lying on the ground.

Orbilius puerōs spectāvit lūdum intrantēs.

Orbilius watched the boys entering the school.

Participles are *verbal adjectives*; they decline like **ingēns** (except for the ablative singular which ends **-e**, not **-ī**). As *adjectives* they always agree with a noun or pronoun in case, gender and number, e.g. in the first example above **iacentem** agrees with **Caesarem**, accusative masculine singular. As verbs they can take an object, e.g. in the second example, **intrantēs** agrees with **puerōs**, the object of **spectāvit**, but it has itself an object – **lūdum**.

The present participles from the five conjugations are:

	1 parā-	2 monē-	3 reg-	4 audi-	mixed capi-
<i>nom.</i>	parāns	monēns	regēns	audiēns	capiēns
<i>gen.</i>	parantis	monentis	regentis	audientis	cipientis
	preparing	warning	ruling	hearing	taking

The present participles of all verbs are formed regularly except for **eō**, which has nominative singular **iēns** but all other cases starting **e**: **euntem**, **euntis**, **euntī**, **eunte**, etc.

Exercise 26.1

In the following sentences say what noun or pronoun the participle agrees with and translate the whole sentence

- 1 Quīntus ad lūdum festīnāns forum trānsībat.
- 2 subitō aliquem vīdit ad sē currentem.
- 3 Quīntus Marcō occurrit ad circum prōcēdentī.
- 4 plūrimōs hominēs spectābant ad circum convenientēs.
- 5 Quīntus Marcusque circum intransēs per turbam sē trūsērunt (*pushed*).
- 6 plūrimōs spectātōrēs vīdimus prope theātrum Pompēiī stantēs.
- 7 Quīntus coniūrātōs vīdit Caesarem oppugnantēs.
- 8 coniūrātī Caesarem mortuum reliquērunt in terrā iacentem.
- 9 turba hominum per viās discurrēbat magnā vōce clāmantium.
- 10 Quīntus patrī occurrit domum festīnantī.

NB Sometimes the Latin participle may be translated by a clause in English, e.g.

Horātia ad mātrem accessit in hortō quiēscentem.

Horatia approached her mother (while she was/who was) resting in the garden.

mihi haec rogantī pater nihil respondit.

When I asked this my father made no reply. (Literally: 'To me asking this my father replied nothing.')

Exercise 26.2

Translate the following sentences using clauses to translate the participles

- 1 Horātia ab agrō sōla rediēns iuvenī occurrit quī eam salūtāvit.
- 2 iuvenis Horātiae nōn nōtus erat; illa igitur festīnāvit eīque accēdentī nihil respondit.
- 3 eō ipsō tempore Horātia amīcum vīdit ad colōniam redeuntem.
- 4 ille Horātiae succurrit eamque domum ambulāntem dēdūxit (*escorted*).
- 5 Horātia, ubi domum advēnit, omnia mātři nārrāvit in casā sedentī.

Exercise 26.3

In the following sentences put the verbs in parentheses into the correct form of the present participle and then translate the whole sentence, e.g.

Horātia mātrem spectābat cēnam (parāre).

parantem: Horatia watched her mother preparing supper.

(To get the right answer, first ask yourself what the present participle means; **parāns** = preparing. Then ask 'Who was preparing supper?' Answer: **mātrem**; so the participle must agree with **mātrem** – accusative, feminine, singular.)

- 1 puerī in scholā (sedēre) diligenter labōrābant.
- 2 sed Quīntus magistrum dē poētā vetere (dicere) nōn audiēbat.
- 3 Orbilius eum vīdit aliquid in tabulā (scrībere).
- 4 magister eum vultū sevērō (inspicere) rogāvit: 'quid facis, Quīnte?'
- 5 ille magistrō haec (rogāre) respondit: 'nihil faciō, magister. tē audiō.'
- 6 sed magister Quīntō haec (dicere) nōn crēdidit.
- 7 Quīntus magistrātūs vīdit theātrum Pompēiī (intrāre).
- 8 Caesarem (sedēre) multī senātōrēs circumstābant.
- 9 Caesar Brūtum vīdit in sē (currere).
- 10 Brūtō in sē (currere) Caesar dīxit: 'et tū, Brūte?'

Exercise 26.4

Translate the following verb forms

1 date	6 fert	11 movet	16 discite
2 dabam	7 ferre	12 mōvit	17 discēbās
3 dedit	8 ferimus	13 movēte	18 didicī
4 dantem	9 ferentēs	14 mōverātis	19 discēns
5 dederat	10 tulerant	15 movēbant	20 didicerant

Chapter 27

The future tense

The future tenses of verbs of the 1st and 2nd conjugations go as follows:

1 parā-	2 monē-
parā-bō (I shall prepare)	monē-bō (I shall warn)
parā-bis	monē-bis
parā-bit	monē-bit
parā-bimus	monē-bimus
parā-bitis	monē-bitis
parā-bunt	monē-bunt

The future of verbs of 3rd and 4th conjugations and mixed conjugation goes as follows:

3 reg-	4 audi-	mixed capi-
reg-am (I shall rule)	audi-am (I shall hear)	capi-am (I shall take)
reg-ēs	audi-ēs	capi-ēs
reg-et	audi-et	capi-et
reg-ēmus	audi-ēmus	capi-ēmus
reg-ētis	audi-ētis	capi-ētis
reg-ent	audi-ent	capi-ent

Learn both sets of endings carefully.

The future of *sum* is: **erō, eris, erit, erimus, eritis, erunt** I shall be, etc.

Exercise 27.1

Translate the following verb forms

1 rogābimus	4 dīcunt	7 mittet	10 scrībēmus
2 docēbit	5 dormiam	8 mittit	11 pugnābunt
3 dīcent	6 eris	9 poterit	12 monēbitis

Exercise 27.2

Translate into Latin

1 We shall come	4 He/she will lead	7 They will flee	10 We shall climb
2 They will sail	5 I shall run	8 He/she is playing	11 We are climbing
3 I shall laugh	6 You (<i>sing.</i>) will come	9 He/she will play	12 You (<i>pl.</i>) will love

Exercise 27.3

Translate

- 1 Quīntus domum curret patrique omnia nārrābit.
- 2 Flaccus 'in magnō periculō erimus,' inquit. 'Rōmā discēdēmus.
- 3 ego Venusiam redibō, tū ad Graeciam nāvigābis.'
- 4 Quīntus 'ad Hēliodōrum festinābō' inquit 'eumque valēre iubēbō.'
- 5 Flaccus 'festinā, Quīnte,' inquit; 'crās ad portum contendēmus et nāvem inveniēmus quae tē ad Graeciam feret.'

The future perfect tense

By now Quintus will have reached Athens. **iam Quīntus Athēnās advēnerit.**

This tense, rare in English, is used to indicate an action completed in the future. It is commonly used in Latin in sentences such as:

cum Athēnās advēneris, in Acadēmīā studēbis. When you arrive/When you have arrived (i.e. will have arrived) in Athens, you will study in the Academy.

sī patrem meum videris, omnia eī nārrā. If you see (i.e. will have seen) my father, tell him everything.

The tense is formed by adding the following endings to the perfect stem:

-erō	-erimus
-eris	-eritis
-erit	-erint

1	2	3	4	mixed
parāv-erō etc. I shall have prepared	monu-erō etc. I shall have warned	rēx-erō etc. I shall have ruled	audīv-erō etc. I shall have heard	cēp-erō etc. I shall have taken

Exercise 27.4

Translate

- 1 cum Athēnās advēneris, hanc epistolam Theomnēstō dā.
- 2 cum ad portum vēnerimus, multās nāvēs vidēbimus.
- 3 cum magister signum dederit, nautae nāvēs solvent.
- 4 sī magister prūdēs fuerit, ad portum sine periculō adveniēmus.
- 5 sī diligenter studueris, multa discēs.
- 6 cum domum redierō, omnia tibi nārrābō.

Exercise 27.5

Translate the following verbs forms

- | | | |
|-------------|---------------|--------------|
| 1 redite | 6 audiunt | 11 posse |
| 2 redibō | 7 audient | 12 possunt |
| 3 redibāmus | 8 audivimus | 13 potuit |
| 4 redierint | 9 audiverimus | 14 poterāmus |
| 5 redierunt | 10 audientēs | 15 poterimus |

Exercise 27.6

Translate into Latin

- 1 When we arrive at Rome, I will send you a letter without delay.
- 2 When Quintus has sailed to Greece, I shall return to Venusia.
- 3 If I leave Rome at once, I shall reach Venusia within ten days.
- 4 When I see you, you will hear everything.
- 5 If Antonius rouses the people, there will be civil war.

Chapter 28

Relative clauses

You have already met the relative pronoun **quī, quae, quod** = 'who', 'which' in the nominative case; you must now learn its full declension:

	singular			plural		
	m.	f.	n.	m.	f.	n.
nom.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
acc.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
gen.	cuius	cuius	cuius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
dat.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
abl.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

The relative pronoun is one of the few English words which still decline, e.g.:

compare:			
nom.	who	he	she
acc.	whom	him	her
gen.	whose	his	hers

The relative pronoun agrees with its *antecedent* (the word it refers to) in gender and number (singular or plural), but its case depends upon its function (e.g. subject, object, indirect object) in its own clause, e.g.

- 1 **Scintilla (quae epistolam nōdum accēperat) trīstis erat.**

Scintilla, who had not yet received a letter, was sad.

quae is feminine singular because it refers to **Scintilla**; it is in the nominative case because it is the subject of **accēperat**.

- 2 **amicī (quōs in viā vīdimus) nōs salūtāvērunt.**

The friends whom we saw in the road greeted us.

quōs is masculine plural because it refers to **amicī**; it is in the accusative case because it is the object of **vīdimus**.

- 3 **Scintilla colōnōs (quī in agrīs labōrābant) salūtāvit.**

Scintilla greeted the farmers who were working in the fields.

quī is masculine plural because it refers to **amīcōs**; it is in the nominative case because it is the subject of **labōrābant**.

Exercise 28.1

Translate

- 1 Flaccus, quī filium valēre iusserat, Rōmam rediit.
- 2 epistolam scrīpsit quam uxōrī statim mīsīt.
- 3 Flaccus omnia quae Rōmae acciderant Scintillae nārrāvit.
- 4 Horātia tabellāriō (*postman*) occurrit, quī epistolam eī dedit.
- 5 Scintilla, cui Horātia epistolam trādidit, eam celeriter perlēgit.
- 6 māter Horātiae nārrāvit ea quae scrīpserat Flaccus.
- 7 Horātia amīcīs quibuscum lūdēbat tōtam rem exposuit.
- 8 amīcī, quōrum parentēs rem cognōscere cupiēbant, omnia eīs dīxērunt quae audīverant.
- 9 sīc brevī tempore omnēs Venusinī omnia cognōverant quae scrīpserat Flaccus.

Exercise 28.2

Put the relative pronoun (in parentheses) into the correct form and translate the whole sentence

- 1 Quīntus, (*who*) in lītore stābat, nāvem spectābat.
- 2 pater, (*whose*) oculī lacrimīs plēnī erant, filium valēre iussit.
- 3 iter (*which*) Quīntus inībat longissimum erat.
- 4 nautae, (*whom*) Quīntus spectābat, nāvem solvere parābant.
- 5 nautae, (*to whom*) magister imperia dederat, nāvem solvērunt.
- 6 nāvis in (*which*) ad Graeciam nāvigābat nōn magna erat.
- 7 multī viātōrum (*with whom*) Quīntus colloquīum faciēbat valdē ānxiī erant.
- 8 Quīntus tempestātem, (*which*) cēterōs terrēbat, nōn timuit.

Exercise 28.3

Put the following verb forms into (a) the future (b) the perfect (c) the future perfect

- 1 mittit 2 pōnunt 3 iubēmus 4 dat 5 reddit

Exercise 28.4

Translate into Latin

- 1 The captain, to whom Flaccus had given the money, called Quintus into the ship.
- 2 The ship, which the sailors had cast off, proceeded slowly out of the harbour.
- 3 Quintus approached two passengers who were standing in the stern (**puppis, puppis**).
- 4 One (**alter**) passenger with whom Quintus was talking (**colloquium facere**) was travelling to Puteoli.
- 5 The other (**alter**), whose parents lived in Greece, was returning home.

Chapter 29

Alter, uter and uterque

Because so many things come in pairs (eyes, hands, arms, legs, etc.), Latin has a special set of pronouns used with pairs.

Learn the following, which all have genitive singular **-ius** and dative singular **-ī**, all genders:

alter, altera, alterum one or the other of two, e.g.

puer alterā manū librum ferēbat, alterā stilum.

In one hand the boy was carrying a book, in the other a pen.

duo hominēs forum iniēerunt; alter iuvenis erat, alter senex.

Two men entered the forum; one was young, the other old.

uter, utra, utrum? which of two? e.g.

utrā manū librum ferēbat? In which hand was he carrying the book?

The neuter, **utrum**, is used in double questions followed by **an** = 'or', e.g.

utrum in urbe manēbis an domum redibis?

Will you stay in the city or return home? (literally: Which of two things, will you ...)

utrum ad Tirōnem epistolam scribis an ad patrem?

Are you writing your letter to Tiro or to your father?

uterque, utraque, utrumque each of two, e.g.

librōs utrāque manū ferēbat. He was carrying books in each hand.

et Scintilla et Horātia Flaccum maximē dēsiderābant (*missed*); **ubi ille domum rediit, utraque laetissima erat.**

Both Scintilla and Horatia missed Flaccus very much; when he returned, each was very happy.

Exercise 29.1

Decline in the singular, all cases: alter amicus and utra manus

Exercise 29.2

Translate

- 1 Quīntus duōbus cum viātōribus colloquium faciēbat.
- 2 uterque Rōmā vēnerat et ad Graeciam nāvigābat.
- 3 Quīntus alterī dixit: 'utrum diū in Graeciā manēbis an brevī tempore Rōmam redibis?'
- 4 ille respondit: 'nōn diū in Graeciā manēbō. mercātor (*merchant*) sum. ubi primum negōtium cōnfēcī, Rōmam redibō.'
- 5 alter 'ego' inquit 'cupiō in Acadēmīā studēre. trēs annōs Athēnīs manēbō.'
- 6 Quīntus 'mihi quoque prōpositum (*intention*) est' inquit 'in Acadēmīā studēre. cuius scholās (*lectures*) audire cupis?'
- 7 ille 'Theomnēstum' inquit 'in prīmīs (*especially*) audire cupiō, quī, ut (*as*) dīcunt, optimus est doctōrum.'
- 8 Quīntus 'sine dubiō' inquit 'in Acadēmīā tē vidēbō. ego enim eiusdem doctōris scholīs aderō.'

Exercise 29.3

Put the words in parentheses into the correct case and translate the whole sentence

- 1 ante (diēs) surrēxit Quīntus et sine (mora) ad Acadēmīam prōcēdēbat.
- 2 trāns (agora) festināvit, cupiēns quam celerrimē advenīre.
- 3 ubi ad (Acadēmīa) advēnit, iuvenī quī prō (portae) stābat dīxit: 'sī vīs, mē ad Theomnēstum dūc.'
- 4 ille respondit: 'inveniēs eum prope (theātrum). venī mēcum.'
- 5 iuvenis eum dūxit ex (ātrium) ad tablinum Theomnēstī, quī eum benignē accēpit.
- 6 post (meridiēs) Quīntus manum iuvenum vīdit inter (quī) erat Marcus Cicerō.
- 7 ille Quīntum laetus salūtāvit eumque rogāvit dē (omnia) quae Rōmae fiēbant.
- 8 Quīntus eī omnia nārrāvit causamque exposuit propter (quae) pater eum Athēnās mīserat.

Exercise 29.4

Translate into Latin

- 1 Quintus was sitting in a pub (**taberna**) with Marcus drinking wine.
- 2 Two young men came up and greeted Marcus.
- 3 One, who was carrying a book in each hand, said, 'Will you come with me to the Lyceum or stay here drinking wine?'

- 4 The other said, 'Surely you don't want to listen to Cratippus, Marcus? Stay here with me.'
 5 Quintus said, 'You must listen to Cratippus' lecture today. Don't you listen to him gladly (**libenter**)? Are you not his best pupil? That was what you wrote to Tiro. (= You wrote these things to Tiro.)'

Chapter 30

Active and passive

All the verb forms you have met so far have been in the active voice. In the *active* voice, the subject *acts*, e.g.

Quintus *calls* Marcus. Scintilla *leads* Horatia.

In the *passive* voice, the subject *is acted upon*, e.g.

Marcus *is called* by Quintus. Horatia *is led* by Scintilla.

In these sentences Marcus/Horatia are not acting but are the recipients of the action; he is being called, she is being led.

Exercise 30.1

Rewrite the following English sentences in passive form, e.g.

Brutus killed Caesar = Caesar was killed by Brutus.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| 1 The captain gave the signal. | 4 The storm frightened all the passengers. |
| 2 The sailors cast off the ship. | 5 But the captain saved the ship. |
| 3 The sailors rowed the ship out of the harbour. | |

The perfect passive participle

You have already met a number of perfect passive participles, e.g.

apertus, -a, -um:	having been opened, open (from aperiō)
parātus, -a, -um:	having been prepared, prepared (from parō)
commōtus, -a, -um:	having been moved, moved (from commoveō)
terrītus, -a, -um:	having been terrified, terrified (from terreō)
dēsertus, -a, -um:	having been deserted, deserted (from dēserō).

The perfect passive participle is a verbal adjective, declined like **bonus, -a, -um**. It is formed from the supine of the verb. The *supine* is the fourth of the principal parts of verbs, which appears in all vocabularies from chapter 30 on; its uses will not be explained until Part III. It is most commonly formed by adding the suffix **-tum** (sometimes **-sum**) to the present verb stem. The perfect passive participle itself is formed by changing the final **-m** of the supine to **-s**, so:

<i>supine</i>	<i>perfect passive participle</i>	
parāt-um	parāt-us, -a, -um	having been prepared, prepared
monit-um	monit-us, -a, -um	having been warned, warned
rēct-um	rēct-us, -a, -um	having been ruled, ruled
audīt-um	audīt-us, -a, -um	having been heard, heard
capt-um	capt-us, -a, -um	having been taken, taken

Examples of verbs with supines in **-sum**:

iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussum	iussus, -a, -um
videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum	vīsus, -a, -um
mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum	missus, -a, -um

In the following examples notice that the participles agree with the noun to which they refer in number, gender and case.

- 1 **Aenēas, ā Mercuriō monitus, nāvēs parāvit.**
Aeneas, warned by Mercury, prepared the ships.
- 2 **omnēs cēnam ā Scintillā parātam ēdērunt.**
They all ate the dinner prepared by Scintilla.
- 3 **centuriō hostēs in proeliō captōs ad imperātōrem dūxit.**
The centurion led the soldiers (who had been) captured in battle to the general.
- 4 **cōsul militibus convocātis haec dīxit.**
The consul called together the soldiers and said this (these things).
(Literally: The consul said this to the soldiers having been called together.)
- 5 **Marcus Quintum in viā vīsum in tabernam dūxit.**
Marcus saw Quintus in the street and led him to a pub. *or* When Marcus saw Quintus in the street, he led him to a pub. (literally: Marcus led Quintus having been seen in the street to a pub.)

NB 1 In the last three examples Latin and English idiom differ; English often uses a clause where Latin uses a participle. You must grasp the sense of the Latin and express it in natural English.

- 2 **ā/ab** = 'by' is always used with people (*agents*) but not with things (*instruments*), e.g.

mīles ab hostibus vulnerātus the soldier wounded by the enemy

but:

mīles hastā vulnerātus the soldier wounded by a spear

Exercise 30.2

What do the following words mean (and say what verb each comes from)?

vocātus, territus, custōdītus, excitātus, scrīptus, doctus, factus, clausus, dēfēnsus, versus

Exercise 30.3

Translate

- 1 Caesar ā coniūrātīs occīsus prope statuam Pompēiī iacēbat.
- 2 coniūrātī ab Antōniō oppugnātī ex urbe fūgērunt.
- 3 Flaccus, cīvium tumultibus territus, cōstituit Venusiam redīre.
- 4 Scintilla epistolam ā Quīntō scrīptam laeta accēpit.
- 5 Horātia Decimō spōnsāta (*betrothed*) ad nūptiās sē parāvit.
- 6 plūrimī amīcī ad nūptiās vocātī cēnam magnificam ā Scintillā parātam sūmpsērunt.
- 7 Decimus Horātiaē, dominae familiae iam factae, aquam et ignem dedit.
- 8 Scintilla Flaccusque tōtā rē dēlectātī domum rediērunt.

Exercise 30.4

Translate the following sentences into natural English, e.g.

Scintilla Horātiam salūtātam in casam dūxit.

either Scintilla greeted Horatia and led her into the house.

or When Scintilla had greeted Horatia, she led her into the house.

- 1 coniūrātī Caesarem occīsum in terrā iacentem reliquērunt.
- 2 Antōnius cīvēs in forum convocātōs ad furōrem excitāvit.
- 3 Flaccus Quīntum ad portum ductum valēre iussit.
- 4 Scintilla Horātiam māne excitātam ad nūptiās sē parāre iussit.
- 5 Decimus Horātiam ad novam domum ductam super līmen sustulit.

Exercise 30.5

Put the verbs in parentheses into the correct form of the perfect passive participle and translate the whole sentence

- 1 iuvenēs ad theātrum (convocāre) Cratippum exspectābant.
- 2 mox advēnit et ā discipulīs (salūtāre) nihil respondit.
- 3 iuvenēs vultū sevērō diū (inspicere) sic monuit.
- 4 'paucīs ante diēbus vōs iussī librum legere ā Platōne (scribere).
- 5 vix quisquam vestrum (of you) hunc librum lēgit. omnēs, ā Marcō Cicerōne in tabernās (dūcere), tempus teritis (you waste) vīnum bibentēs.
- 6 itaque hodiē scholam vōbīs nōn habēbō. in urbem festīnāte et illum librum (emere) legite.'
- 7 iuvenēs, hīs verbīs (commovēre), omnia fēcērunt sicut Theomnēstus iusserat.

Exercise 30.6

Translate into Latin

- 1 The girls, warned by their mother, stayed at home.
- 2 Flaccus, terrified by the riots, decided to return home.
- 3 The sailors, ordered by the captain, cast off the ship.
- 4 Scintilla quickly read the letter written by Quintus.
- 5 The young men bought the books praised by Cratippus.

Exercise 30.7

In the following sentences turn the first verb into a perfect passive participle and then translate into Latin, e.g.

The young men were called to the theatre and listened to the lecture = The young men, having been called..., listened... **iuvenēs ad theātrum vocātī scholam audivērunt.**

- 1 Horatia was woken by her mother and prepared for the wedding.
- 2 Many friends were called to the wedding and joyful(ly) came to the house.
- 3 Decimus was led to the house by his friends and waited for Horatia.
- 4 All the guests (**hospitēs**) were called together by Flaccus and watched Horatia and Decimus joining (**cōnserere**) hands.
- 5 After dinner Decimus led Horatia through the streets and carried her into her new home (= Decimus carried Horatia having been led ...).

Exercise 30.8

Translate the following verb forms

- | | | |
|----------|-------------|--------------|
| 1 dūcere | 6 faciēmus | 11 invenit |
| 2 dūcēns | 7 fēcērimus | 12 invēnit |
| 3 dūc | 8 faciēns | 13 inveniēns |
| 4 ductus | 9 facite | 14 inventus |
| 5 dūcet | 10 factus | 15 invenient |

Chapter 31

Perfect, future perfect and pluperfect passive

The *perfect passive* consists of the perfect passive participle plus the present of **sum**:

parātus sum	I was prepared, I have been prepared
parātus es	you were prepared, you have been prepared
parātus/a est	he/she was prepared, he/she has been prepared
parātī sumus	we were prepared, we have been prepared
parātī estis	you were prepared, you have been prepared
parātī sunt	they were prepared, they have been prepared

Notice that the participle, being an adjective, agrees with the subject, e.g.

puer parāt-us est; puell-a parāt-a est
puer-ī parāt-ī sunt; puell-ae parāt-ae sunt

So also:

monitus sum	I was warned, I have been warned
rēctus sum	I was ruled, I have been ruled
audītus sum	I was heard, I have been heard

The *future perfect passive* consists of the perfect passive participle plus the future of **sum**:

parātus erō	I shall have been prepared
monitus erō	I shall have been warned
rēctus erō	I shall have been ruled
audītus erō	I shall have been heard

The *pluperfect passive* consists of the perfect passive participle plus the imperfect of **sum**:

parātus eram	I had been prepared
monitus eram	I had been warned
rēctus eram	I had been ruled
audītus eram	I had been heard

(For the full paradigms, see the Reference grammar, p. 158.)

The meanings of the perfect passive

You will remember that the *perfect active* has two different meanings, e.g.

Flaccus Quīntum Rōmam dūxit.
either Flaccus led Quintus to Rome.
or (in a present context) Flaccus has led Quintus to Rome.

So, in the *passive*:

Quīntus Rōmam ā Flaccō ductus est.
either Quintus was led to Rome by Flaccus.
or (in a present context) Quintus has been led to Rome by Flaccus.

e.g. **Quīntus Rōmam ductus est; in lūdō Orbiliī studēbat.**
 Quintus was led to Rome; he studied in the school of Orbilius.

Quīntus Rōmam ductus est; in lūdō Orbiliī studet.
 Quintus has been led to Rome; he is studying in the school of Orbilius.

Exercise 31.1

Translate the following verb forms

1 vincet	6 captī eramus	11 mīsī
2 victus sum	7 capit	12 missae sumus
3 victī erimus	8 cēpit	13 mittēns
4 vīcistī	9 capta est	14 missus eram
5 victī erant	10 capite	15 missa erit

Exercise 31.2

Translate

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| 1 Marcus Athēnās ā patre missus erat. | 5 epistola ā Quīntō scrīpta erat. |
| 2 Quīntus ā Marcō vocātus est. | 6 epistola iam ā Scintillā accepta erit. |
| 3 iuvenēs valdē commōtī sunt. | 7 nōne ā canibus territae estis? |
| 4 domum redīre iussae sumus. | 8 canēs ā colōnō retentī sunt. |

Exercise 31.3

Rewrite the following sentences in the passive voice and translate, e.g.

iuvenēs Brūtum vīdērunt.

Brūtus ā iuvenibus vīsus est. Brutus was seen by the young men.

- | | |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1 Horātia Argum servāvit. | 4 Brūtus libertātem dēfendit. |
| 2 Horātiam pater laudāvit. | 5 pater mē monuerat. |
| 3 iuvenēs Cratippum audīverant. | 6 amīcī vōs curāverint. |

Exercise 31.4

Translate

- 1 Cicerō rūmōribus, quōs dē Marcō accēperat, maximē vexātus est.
- 2 epistola ā Tirōne ad Marcum scrīpta erat.
- 3 hāc epistolā Marcus valdē commōtus est; nam pater Athēnās veniēbat.
- 4 sed alterā epistolā cūrā liberātus est; pater enim Rōmae rēbus pūblicīs retentus erat.
- 5 iuvenēs ad theātrum convocātī erant.
- 6 omnēs Theomnēstum exspectābant, cum Brūtus in theātrum ductus est.
- 7 Horātia ā Scintillā domum vocāta erat.
- 8 Horātia, ubi advēnit, 'cūr ā tē vocāta sum?' inquit.
- 9 Scintilla 'Argus, ā lupō oppugnātus,' inquit, 'graviter vulnerātus est.'
- 10 Horātia hīs verbīs commōta est. ad canem festīnāvit eumque cūrāvit.

Exercise 31.5

Translate into Latin

- 1 Argus was saved by Horatia.
- 2 The dog had been left in the house by Scintilla.
- 3 When Horatia returned from the fountain, she saw the house on fire (= burning).
- 4 She was terrified, but she dragged Argus into the garden.
- 5 Flaccus was called by Scintilla; but when he arrived, the fire had been overcome.
- 6 Horatia was praised by her father, because she had saved Argus.

Chapter 32

Present, future and imperfect passive

A new set of person endings must be learnt for the present, future and imperfect passive; these are set out below in parallel with the person endings of the active:

	active	passive	e.g.	active <i>I prepare, I am preparing</i>	passive <i>I am prepared, I am being prepared</i>
<i>I</i>	-ō/m	-r		par-ō	par-or
<i>you</i>	-s	-ris		parā-s	parā-ris
<i>he/she</i>	-t	-tur		para-t	parā-tur
<i>we</i>	-mus	-mur		parā-mus	parā-mur
<i>you</i>	-tis	-minī		parā-tis	parā-minī
<i>they</i>	-nt	-ntur		para-nt	para-ntur

Write out the present passive of **mone-ō** and **audi-ō** (check the forms in the Reference grammar, p. 158).

<i>The present passive of 3rd conjugation verbs e.g.</i>	<i>The present passive of mixed conjugation verbs e.g.</i>
reg-or	capi-or
reg-eris	cap-eris
reg-itur	cap-itur
reg-imur	cap-imur
reg-imini	cap-imini
reg-untur	capi-untur

Future passive:

parā-bor <i>I shall be prepared</i>	monē-bor <i>I shall be warned</i>	reg-ar <i>I shall be ruled</i>
parā-beris	monē-beris	reg-ēris
parā-bitur	monē-bitur	reg-ētur
parā-bimur	monē-bimur	reg-ēmur
parā-biminī	monē-biminī	reg-ēminī
parā-buntur	monē-buntur	reg-entur
audi-ar <i>I shall be heard</i>	capi-ar <i>I shall be taken</i>	
audi-ēris	capi-ēris	
audi-ētur	capi-ētur	
audi-ēmur	capi-ēmur	
audi-ēminī	capi-ēminī	
audi-entur	capi-entur	

Imperfect passive:

parā-bar <i>I was being prepared</i>	monē-bar <i>I was being warned</i>	regē-bar <i>I was being ruled</i>
parā-bāris	monē-bāris	regē-bāris
parā-bātur	monē-batur	regē-bātur
parā-bāmur	monē-bāmur	regē-bāmur
parā-bāminī	monē-bāminī	regē-bāminī
parā-bantur	monē-bantur	rege-bantur
audi-ēbar <i>I was being heard</i>	capi-ēbar <i>I was being taken</i>	
audi-ēbāris	capi-ēbāris	
audi-ēbātur	capi-ēbātur	
audi-ēbāmur	capi-ēbāmur	
audi-ēbāminī	capi-ēbāminī	
audi-ēbantur	capi-ēbantur	

Exercise 32.1

Translate

amantur, regitur, audīminī, monēris, dūcēbāris, vidēbimur, oppugnābantur, trāditur, trādētur, mittēris, mitteris

Exercise 32.2

Translate the following verb forms

- | | | |
|----------------|-----------------|------------------|
| 1 vocābimur | 8 terrēbantur | 15 pōnor |
| 2 vocātī estis | 9 terrētur | 16 pōnēris |
| 3 vocābātur | 10 terrītī sunt | 17 pōneris |
| 4 vocātus eram | 11 terrēbant | 18 posuērunt |
| 5 vocābant | 12 territa erat | 19 positae erant |
| 6 vocāris | 13 terrēmur | 20 posueram |
| 7 vocāvī | 14 terruit | 21 positī sunt |

Exercise 32.3

Translate

- 1 cotidiē nūtiū peiorēs Venusiam Rōmā afferēbantur.
- 2 Flaccus hīs rūmōribus magnopere commovēbātur.
- 3 cum amicīs in tabernā sedēbat, quibus nūtiū novus nūper allātus erat.
- 4 Flaccus 'quid sentītis?' inquit. 'rēspūblica in bellum cīvile iterum trahitur. nec iūs nec lēgēs valēbunt.'
- 5 Ganymēdēs 'nōlī tē vexāre,' inquit; 'Rōmā longē absumus; nōs bellō cīvilī nōn vexābimur.'
- 6 Flaccus 'nōlī nūgās (*nonsense*) nārrāre,' inquit; 'tōta Italia ēvertētur, immō (*or rather*) tōtus orbis terrārū.
- 7 filius meus Athēnīs studet; in bellum ā Brūtō trahētur.'
- 8 amīcī eum iussērunt meliōra dicere; 'nōlī dēspērāre, Flacce,' inquiunt; 'pāx sine dubiō servābitur; ducēs in concordiam (*agreement, harmony*) addūcentur.'
- 9 Flaccus tamen eīs nōn crēdēbat. hīs rūmōribus semper vexābātur, propter quōs et prō rēpūblicā et prō filiō suō timēbat.

Exercise 32.4

Change the following Latin sentences into passive form and then translate them; e.g.

Decimus Horātiam domum dūcēbat = Horātia ā Decimō domum dūcēbātur.

Horatia was being led home by Decimus.

- 1 Brūtus multōs iuvenēs Athēnīs in Macedoniam dūxit.
- 2 Antōnius patrem Marcī occīderat.
- 3 ego patris mei mortem vindicābō (**vindicō** = I avenge).
- 4 Brūtus sōlus libertātem dēfendit.
- 5 Brūtī milītēs exercitum Antōniī superābunt.
- 6 omnēs cīvēs et Brūtum et milītēs eius laudābunt.

Exercise 32.5

Translate into Latin

- 1 Marcus was being led to a tavern by a friend.
- 2 Suddenly someone called him; 'By whom was I called?' he said.
- 3 His friend replied: 'Look! You are being called by Brutus.'
- 4 Marcus looked back and saw Brutus approaching.
- 5 Brutus greeted him and said, 'Marcus, are you willing to come with me to Macedonia?
- 6 If you fight with me for freedom, you will be praised by all.'
- 7 Marcus, greatly moved by these words, said, 'I will fight with you; for freedom is being defended by you alone.'
- 8 Soon he had packed (**compōnō**) his things and was led by Brutus to Macedonia.

The following passage is adapted from the *Satyricon* of Petronius, who died in AD 66. The *Satyricon* is an immensely long novel which centres around the adventures of two disreputable students, Encolpius and Ascyltos, who get into various scrapes. When our extracts begin, they are studying rhetoric in the town of Puteoli and have been befriended by their professor, Agamemnon. They are sitting in their lodgings, expecting trouble from their latest escapade, when Agamemnon's slave bursts in and tells them that his master has procured them an invitation to dinner with Trimalchio.

Trimalchio is a vulgar, boastful and fabulously rich freedman. He has asked Agamemnon to bring along a couple of his students to raise the tone of his party; the other guests are uneducated freedmen. As usual at a Roman dinner party, there were nine dining in all, including the host. They reclined on three couches placed in a square around the table, with one end open for serving the food.

The narrator of the story is Encolpius.

(Words which occur in the General vocabulary are not glossed; you may have to look some up there.)

Itaque domī sedēbāmus cum intrāvit servus Agamemnonis et 'quid?' inquit; 'nōne scītis? hodiē vōs ad cēnam invītāvit Trimalchiō, lautissimus homō. venīte igitur; nōlīte cessāre.' celeriter igitur vestīmenta induimus et ad balnea prōcessimus. in balneīs senem calvum vīdimus quī inter puerōs capillātōs pilā lūdēbat. accurrit aliquis ad nōs et 'ille est' inquit 'Trimalchiō, quī vōs ad cēnam invītāvit.' vix haec dixerat cum Trimalchiō digitōs concrepuit; aquam poposcit et digitōs lāvit. deinde servī eum in lectīcam imposuērunt domumque auferēbant.

lautissimus very grand

calvum bald; **capillātōs** long-haired

pilā with a ball

digitōs concrepuit snapped his fingers

lectīcam a litter

ad iānuam Trimalchiōnis aedium cum Agamemnone pervēnimus. ātrium magnificum erat, sed ego, dum omnia spectō, paene cecidī et crūra mea frēgī. in mūrō enim pictus est canis ingēns, superque scrīptum CAVE CANEM. comitēs mē rīsērunt; ego autem spīritum collēgī et tōtum mūrū inspīcere incēpī. erat enim vēnālicium cum titulīs pictum; deinde ipse Trimalchiō Rōmam intrābat. deinde omnia quae fēcerat Trimalchiō pictor cum inscrīptiōne diligenter reddiderat. prīmum Trimalchiō ratiōnēs facere discēbat, deinde dispēnsātor factus est, dēnique Mercurius eum tollēbat et in tribūnal altum rapiēbat; ibi erat Fortūna, quae cornū abundantī dīvitiās effundēbat.

crūra legs

pictus est was painted

spīritum my breath

vēnālicium slave sale

ratiōnēs facere to keep accounts

dispēnsātor factus est was appointed a steward

tribūnal (n.) a platform

cornū abundantī from her horn of plenty

effundēbat was pouring out

trīclīnium dining-room

discubuerant had taken our places (at table); **praeter** except

gustātiōnem hors d'oeuvre, snacks

nōs in trīclīnium iam pervēnerāmus et mox omnēs discubuerant praeter ipsum Trimalchiōnem. servī gustātiōnem

25 valdē lautam intulērunt. nam asellum argenteum cum bisacciō
nōbīs prōposuērunt, quī habēbat olīvās in alterā parte albās, in
alterā nigrās.

30 hāc gustātiōne gaudēbāmus cum ipse Trimalchiō intrāvit ad
symphōniam. ubi lectō accubuit, ‘amīcī,’ inquit, ‘nōndum volūi in
trīclīnium venīre; tesserīs enim lūdēbam. sed omnem voluptātem
mihi negāvī. lūdum tamen sine mē cōnficere.’ intrāvit puer
tabulam portāns et crystallinās tesserās.

35 iam Trimalchiō lūdum cōnfēcerat, cum puerī amphorās
attulērunt quārum in cervīcibus pittacia fīxa sunt cum hāc
īnscrīptiōne: ‘Falernum Opīmiānum annōrum centum’. dum nōs
īnscrīptiōnem legimus, Trimalchiō ‘ergō’ inquit ‘diūtius vīnum
vīvit quam homō. liberē igitur bibite. vērū Opīmiānum vōbīs
dō. herī vīnum nōn tam bonum posuī et multō honestiōrēs
mēcūm cēnābant.’

40 advēnērunt subitō servī quī torālīa prōposuērunt; in eīs rētia
picta erant vēnātōrēsque et tōtus vēnātiōnis apparātus. dum haec
spectāmus admīrātiōne plēnī, clāmōrem ingentem audīmus et,
ecce, canēs Lacōnicī circum mēnsam currere incēpērunt. deinde
puer repositōriū intulit, in quō erat aper maximus. accessit
barbātus ingēns, vēnātōris vestīmenta gerēns, quī ventrem aprī
vehementer percussit. ubi hoc fēcīt, avēs ē ventre aprī
45 ēvolāvērunt. parātī erant servī quī avēs circum trīclīnium
volantēs celeriter cēpērunt.

ubi servī hoc ferculum abstulērunt, surrēxit Trimalchiō et ē
trīclīniō discessit. nōs colloquium facere incēpimus. itaque Dāma
prīmus pōtiōnem rogāvit et ‘diēs’ inquit ‘nihil est. dum vertis tē,
50 nox fit. itaque nihil est melius quam dē cubiculō rēctā in
trīclīnium ire. et ācre frīgus habuimus. vix mē balneum calfēcīt.
calida tamen pōtiō vestiārius est. plūrimū bibī et ēbrius sum.
vīnum in caput meum abiit.’

55 Seleucus, ubi haec audīvit, ‘ego’ inquit ‘nōn cotīdiē mē lavō;
balneum enim corpus dīlacerat. neque hodiē mē lavāre potuī. īvī
enim ad fūnus. homō bellus, tam bonus Chrīsanthus, diem suū
obiit. modo, modo mē salūtāvit. medicī eum perdidērunt, immō
malum fātum; medicus enim nihil aliud est quam animī
cōnsōlātiō. optīmum tamen fūnus erat, etiam sī uxor nōn multum
60 eum plōrāvit.’

molestus fuit, et Philerōs clāmāvit: ‘nōlī molestus esse.
vīvōrum meminerīmus. ille habet quod sibi dēbēbātur. honestē
vīxit, honestē obiit. ab asse crēvit et parātus fuit quadrāntem

asellum argenteum a silver donkey
bisacciō double panniers

ad symphōniam to (the sound of)
a band

tesserīs with dice

voluptātem pleasure

negāvī I denied

tabulam a (playing) board

amphorās wine jars

quārum in cervīcibus on the necks
of which; **pittacia** labels

Falernum Opīmiānum Falernian
wine made in the consulship of
Opimius (121 BC)

multō honestiōrēs much more
important people

torālīa (n. pl.) tapestries

rētia (n. pl.) hunting nets

vēnātōrēs huntsmen

canēs Lacōnicī Spartan hounds

repositōriū a dish; **aper** a boar

barbātus ingēns a huge bearded man

ventrem the belly; **percussit** struck

ferculum course

pōtiōnem a drink

dē cubiculō from the bedroom

rēctā straight; **ācre frīgus** (acc. n.)
a sharp cold (spell)

calfēcīt has warmed; **calida** hot

vestiārius est is (as good as) an
overcoat

dīlacerat tears apart

homō bellus a nice man

obiit has met (i.e. has died)

modo, modo just lately

medicī the doctors

immō or rather; **plōrāvit** mourned

molestus tiresome, boring

vīvōrum meminerīmus let's
remember the living

dēbēbātur was owing; **ab asse** from
a penny; **quadrāntem** a farthing

65 dē stercore dentibus tollere. itaque crēvit tamquam favus. dī
immortālēs, reliquit solida centum.'

Ganymēdēs, ubi haec audīvit, 'merās nūgās' inquit
'nārātis. nēmō intereā cūrat quam cārum sit frūmentum.
hodiē nōn buccam pānis invenire potuī. iam tōtum annum
ēsuritiō fuit. heu, heu cotidiē peius. quid enim futūrum est, sī
70 nec deī neque hominēs hanc colōniam adiuvant? omnia haec,
ut ego crēdō, deī faciunt. nēmō enim Iovem pilī facit, sed
omnēs opertis oculis bona sua computant.'

Echiōn tamen 'ōrō tē;' inquit 'meliōra dīcite. ecce, mox
habitūrī sumus mūnus optimum. Titus noster magnum
75 animum habet. ferrum optimum datūrus est, sine fugā,
carnārium in mediō.' haec ubi dīxit, ad Agamemnona sē vertit,
et 'tū, Agamemnon, tibi dicis, ut crēdō, "cūr ille molestus
nūgās nārāt?" quod tū, quī potes dīcere, nihil dīcis. tū prae
litteris fatuus es. omnēs id scīmus. sed tibi discipulus crēscit
80 filiulus meus. iam quattuor partēs dicit. sī vixerit, habēbis
bonum discipulum.'

tālia dicēbāmus cum Trimalchiō rediit et 'ignōscite mihi'
inquit, 'amīcī. multōs iam diēs venter meus nōn respondet, nec
medicī mē iuvāre possunt. prōfuit tamen mihi mālicorium et,
85 ut spērō, aliquid recreātus sum.'

iam discubuerat Trimalchiō cum servus trēs albōs porcōs
in triclinium dūxit. Trimalchiō, porcōs inspiciēns, 'quem ex
eīs' inquit 'vultis edere?' tum cocum vocāvit eumque iussit
maximum in cēnam occidere.

90 deinde Trimalchiō vultū benignō ad nōs respexit et 'sī
vīnum' inquit 'vōbīs nōn placet, mūtābō. deōrum beneficiō
nihil emō. hoc vīnum ā praediō venit quod ego adhūc nōn
vidī. est prope Tarentum, ut mihi dīcunt. nunc Siciliam volō
coniungere agrīs meis; sic, cum in Africam voluerō ire, per
95 meōs finēs nāvigābō. sed tū, Agamemnon, dīc mihi; quam
contrōversiam hodiē ēgistī? litterās enim nōn contemnō. duās
bibliothēcās habeo, ūnam Graecam, alteram Latīnam.'

tālia efflābat cum duō servī repositōrium cum porcō
ingentī in mēnsā posuerunt. nōs admīratiōne plēnī erāmus;
100 nam cocus nē gallum quidem tam celeriter coquere potuit.
deinde Trimalchiō porcū inspiciēns 'quid? quid?' inquit 'hic
porcus nōn est exinterātus? nōn mehercule est. vocā, vocā
cocum.' intrāvit cocus et tristis prope mēnsam cōstitit.
'oblītus sum' inquit 'porcum exinterāre.' Trimalchiō exclāmat
105 'quid? oblītus? dēspoliā eum.'

dē stercore from the dung
tamquam favus like a honeycomb
solida centum a solid 100,000 (i.e. a
fortune); **merās nūgās** pure rubbish
quam cārum sit frūmentum how dear
grain is; **buccam pānis** a mouthful of
bread; **ēsuritiō** a famine
futūrum going to happen
pilī facit cares a straw (a jot) for
opertis oculis with their eyes closed
computant reckon up

habitūrī going to have; **mūnus** (n.)
gladiatorial show; **Titus** the magistrate
who will give the show
ferrum optimum datūrus going to give
(the gladiators) really good steel
carnārium a butcher's shambles
prae litteris fatuus mad with literature
quattuor partēs his four times table

ignōscite (+ dat.) forgive!
venter meus nōn respondet my bowels
have not performed
prōfuit mihi has done me good
mālicorium pomegranate (a laxative)
aliquid recreātus a bit better
albōs porcōs white pigs
cocum the cook

mūtābō I will change (it)
beneficiō by the kindness
praediō an estate
agrīs meis to my fields
finēs territory, property
quam contrōversiam? what debate?
contemnō I despise
bibliothēcās libraries
efflābat was puffing out
repositōrium dish
nē gallum quidem not even a chicken

exinterātus gutted
mehercule by Hercules!
oblītus sum I forgot
dēspoliā strip!

sine morā cocus dēspoliātus inter duōs tortōrēs cōstitit. nōs
omnēs ōrāre prō eō incēpimus et dīcere: 'tē rogāmus, eī ignōsce.
sī iterum hoc fēcerit, nēmō nostrum ōrābit prō illō.' Trimalchiō
vultum in rīsum relaxāvit et 'quod tam malae memoriae es,'
110 inquit 'palam nōbīs porcum exinterā.' cocus tunicam recēpit
porcīque ventrem timidā manū secuit. sine morā ex plāgis
crēscētibz tomācula cum botulīs effūsa sunt.

115 plausum post hoc servī dedērunt et 'Gāiō fēliciter'
conclāmāvērunt. et cocus pōtiōne honōrātus est et argenteā
corōnā.

deinde Trimalchiō ad Nīcerōtem respexit et 'solēbas' inquit
'suāvior esse in convīctū. cūr nunc tacēs nec quicquam dīcis?
ōrō tē, nārrā nōbīs id quod tibi iuvenī accidit.' Nīcerōs
dēlectātus affābilitāte amīcī, 'gaudeō' inquit 'quod tē tam
120 hilarem videō. itaque faciam id quod rogās.

'ubi adhūc servus eram, habitābam in vīcō angustō; nunc
Gavillae domus est. ibi amāre incēpī uxōrem Terentiū; Melissam
cognōverātis, pulcherrimum baciballum. sed nōn mehercule
corporāliter eam amābam sed magis quod bonō ingeniō fuit. sī
125 quid ab illā petiī, numquam mihi negāvit; sī fēcīt assem, ego
sēmissem habuī. huius marītus in vīllā diem obiit. itaque
temptābam omnibus modīs ad eam pervenīre.

forte dominus meus Capuam exierat; nam negōtium
quoddam expedīre voluit. ego occāsiōnem habuī. hospiti nostrō
130 persuāsi mēcum venīre. ille mīles erat, fōrtis tamquam Orcus.
iter iniimus circā gallicinia; lūna lūcēbat tamquam merīdiē.
venimus inter monumenta. comes meus ad stēlās abiit. sedeō
ego stēlāsque numerō. deinde, ubi respexī ad comitem, ille exiit
sē et omnia vestīmenta secundum viam posuit. valdē territus
135 eram; stābam tamquam mortuus. sed ille circummīnxit
vestīmenta sua et subitō lūpus factus est.

mihi crēdite; ululāvit et in silvās fūgit. ego accessī
vestīmentaue eius tollere temptābam; sed illa lapidea facta
sunt. paene timōre periī. gladium tamen strīnxī et in tōtā vīā
140 umbrās cecīdī, dōnec ad vīllam amīcae meae pervēnī. tamquam
larva intrāvī; oculī mortuī erant. Melissa mea mē rogāvit: 'cūr
tam sērō ambulās? cūr nōn antea advēnistī? nōs adiuvāre
potuistī. lūpus enim villam intrāvit et omnia pecora oppugnāvit;
tamquam lanius sanguinem illis mīsīt. nōn tamen nōs dērisit,
145 etiam sī effūgit. servus enim noster lanceā collum eius trāiēcīt.'

haec ubi audīvī, operīre oculōs nōn potuī sed domum fūgī. et
ubi vēnī in eum locum, in quō lapidea vestīmenta facta erant,
nihil invēnī nisi sanguinem. ubi domum vēnī, iacēbat mīles

tortōrēs torturers

palam nōbīs in our presence
secuit cut; ex plāgis crēscētibz
from the growing slits

tomācula (n. pl.) black puddings

botulīs sausages

effūsa sunt (were) poured out

plausum applause

Gāiō fēliciter good luck to Gaius!

argenteā corōnā with a silver crown

solēbas...esse you used to be

suāvior in convīctū better company at
a party

vīcō angustō a narrow street

baciballum peach

corporāliter physically

sī quid if...anything

negāvit she denied, refused

sēmissem a halfpenny

omnibus modīs by all means

forte by chance

expedīre to deal with; occāsiōnem an
opportunity; hospiti our guest

fōrtis tamquam Orcus as brave as hell

circā gallicinia around cockcrow

inter monumenta among the
monuments, i.e. the graveyard

stēlās gravestones

secundum (+ acc.) beside

circummīnxit piddled around

ululāvit he howled

lapidea made of stone

strīnxī I drew

cecīdī I struck at; dōnec until

tamquam larva like a ghost

pecora (n. pl.) the flocks

tamquam lanius like a butcher

nōn...nōs dērisit he didn't have the
laugh on us

lanceā with a spear

operīre to close

150 meus in lectō tamquam bōs, et collum eius medicus cūrābat.
tum rem intellēxī: versipellis erat; nec postea cum eō pānem
gustāre potuī. crēdite mihi, vērā sunt ea quae dīcō.'

omnēs admirātiōne attonitī erāmus et Trimalchiō 'tibi crēdō'
inquit; 'pilī mihi inhorruērunt, quod Nīcerōs nōn nūgās nārrat,
sed certus neque umquam mendācia dīcit.'

155 inter haec aliquis trīclīniī iānuam pulsāvit intrāvitque
cōmissātor cum ingentī turbā. ego māiestātē eius territus sum et
temptāvī surgere. sed Agamemnōn mē rīsīt et 'continē tē' inquit;
'hic est Habinnas, amīcus Trimalchiōnis.' ille ēbrius erat
manūsque uxōris umerīs imposuerat. sē posuit ad mēnsam
160 continuōque vīnum et calidam aquam poposcit. dēlectātus hāc
hilaritātē ipse Trimalchiō maiōrem poposcit phialam et
Habinnam rogāvit 'quōmodo acceptus es?' ille 'omnia habuimus'
inquit 'praeter tē. sed dīc mihi, Gāi, cur Fortūnāta nōn recumbit?
nisi illa recumbit, ego abeō.'

165 surgēbat Habinnās, sed tōta familia Fortūnātā quater
vocāvit. illa trīclīnium iniit et sūdāriō manūs tergēns accubuit in
illō lectō in quō Scintilla, Habinnae uxor, discumbēbat. omnēs
iam ēbriī erant, cum Trimalchiō servum iussit exemplar
testāmētī suī afferre et tōtum ā primō ad ultimum recitāvit.
170 deinde respiciēns ad Habinnam 'quid dīcis, cārissimē?' inquit;
'aedificābis monumentum meum quemadmodum tē iussī?
secundum pedēs statuae meae catellam pōnē et corōnās et
unguentum; sīc tuō beneficiō post mortem vīvam. valdē enim
stultum est, sī vīvī domōs pulchrās aedificāmus, nōn tamen
175 cūrāmus eas ubi diūtius dēbēmus habitāre. ad dextram meam
pōnē statuam Fortūnātae columbam tenentis. et hanc
īnscripōnem scrībe in monumentō:
C. POMPEIUS TRIMALCHIO HIC REQUIESCIT. PIUS, FORTIS,
FIDELIS, EX PARVO CREVIT, SESTERTIUM RELIQUIT
180 TRECENTIES, NEC UMQUAM PHILOSOPHUM AUDIVIT. VALE.'

deinde Trimalchiō, iam valdē ēbrius, cornicinēs in trīclīnium
addūcī iussit. extendit sē super lectum et 'fingite' inquit 'mē
mortuum esse. dīcite aliquid bellī dē mē.' cōsonuērunt
cornicinēs tōtamque excitāverunt vīcīniam. itaque vigilēs, quī
185 vīcīniam custodiēbant, dīxērunt 'ardet Trimalchiōnis domus.'
iānuam subitō frēgērunt et cum aquā secūribusque tumultum
facere incēperunt. nōs hanc occāsionem nōn āmisimus; celeriter
fūgimus tamquam ex vērō incendiō.

tamquam bōs like an ox
versipellis a werewolf
pānem gustāre to taste bread

pilī mihi my hair
inhorruērunt stood on end
mendācia lies

cōmissātor reveller
continē tē restrain yourself

umerīs on the shoulders

phialam cup

praeter tē except you
Fortūnāta Trimalchio's wife
recumbit reclines (at table)

quater four times
sūdāriō on a dish cloth
tergēns wiping
exemplar testāmētī suī a copy of
his will

quemadmodum as
secundum pedēs beside the feet
catellam my puppy
unguentum scent bottle

columbam dove

pius pious
fidēlis loyal

sēstertium trecentiēs 30,000,000
sestertii; valē goodbye (addressed to
the reader of the inscription)

cornicinēs trumpeters; addūcī to be
brought; extendit sē he stretched
himself out; fingite pretend

mē mortuum esse that I am dead

aliquid bellī something nice

cōsonuērunt blared out

vīcīniam neighbourhood

vigilēs watchmen, fire brigade

secūribus axes

occāsionem opportunity

āmisimus we lost; tamquam as if

Reference grammar

NOUNS

	1st declension		2nd declension		
	stems in -a		stems in -o		
	feminine		masculine		neuter
<i>singular</i>					
<i>nom.</i>	puell-a		colōn-us	puer	ager bell-um
<i>voc.</i>	puell-a		colōn-e	puer	ager bell-um
<i>acc.</i>	puell-am		colōn-um	puer-um	agr-um bell-um
<i>gen.</i>	puell-ae		colōn-ī	puer-ī	agr-ī bell-ī
<i>dat.</i>	puell-ae		colōn-ō	puer-ō	agr-ō bell-ō
<i>abl.</i>	puell-ā		colōn-ō	puer-ō	agr-ō bell-ō

<i>plural</i>					
<i>nom.</i>	puell-ae		colōn-ī	puer-ī	agr-ī bell-a
<i>voc.</i>	puell-ae		colōn-ī	puer-ī	agr-ī bell-a
<i>acc.</i>	puell-ās		colōn-ōs	puer-ōs	agr-ōs bell-a
<i>gen.</i>	puell-ārum		colōn-ōrum	puer-ōrum	agr-ōrum bell-ōrum
<i>dat.</i>	puell-īs		colōn-īs	puer-īs	agr-īs bell-īs
<i>abl.</i>	puell-īs		colōn-īs	puer-īs	agr-īs bell-īs

Notes

1 All nouns of the 1st declension are feminine except for a very few which are masculine by meaning, e.g. **nauta** a sailor.

2 The vocative is the same as the nominative except for the vocative singular of 2nd declension nouns with nominative -us, e.g. **colōn-e**.

The vocative of 2nd declension nouns with nominative -ius ends -ī, not -e, e.g. **fili**.

3 The following 2nd declension nouns have minor irregularities: **deus** has nominative plural **deī** or **dī**, genitive plural **deōrum** or **deum**, ablative plural **deīs** or **dīs**; **vir, virī** has genitive plural **virōrum** or **virum**.

	3rd declension			
	stems in consonants		stems in -i	
	masc. & fem.	neuter	masc. & fem.	neuter
<i>singular</i>				
<i>nom.</i>	rēx	lītus	nāvis	mare
<i>acc.</i>	rēg-em	lītus	nāv-em	mare
<i>gen.</i>	rēg-is	lītor-is	nāv-is	mar-is
<i>dat.</i>	rēg-ī	lītor-ī	nāv-ī	mar-ī
<i>abl.</i>	rēg-e	lītor-e	nāv-e	mar-ī
<i>plural</i>				
<i>nom.</i>	rēg-ēs	lītor-a	nāv-ēs	mar-ia
<i>acc.</i>	rēg-ēs	lītor-a	nāv-ēs	mar-ia
<i>gen.</i>	rēg-um	lītor-um	nāv-ium	mar-ium
<i>dat.</i>	rēg-ibus	lītor-ibus	nāv-ibus	mar-ibus
<i>abl.</i>	rēg-ibus	lītor-ibus	nāv-ibus	mar-ibus

Notes

1 The vocative case is the same as the nominative in all 3rd declension nouns and adjectives.

2 Masculine and feminine nouns with stems in -i nearly all decline like those with stems in consonants except in the genitive plural, where the -i is retained, e.g. **nāvium**; neuter nouns with stems in -i keep the -i in ablative singular, and the nominative, accusative and genitive plural (see **mare** above).

Nouns ending in two consonants (the second -s), e.g. **mōns, urbs** (originally spelt **monis, urbis**) have genitive plural -ium.

3 **iuvenis, senex** and **canis** have genitive plural -um.

4 A few 3rd declension nouns can, by sense, be either masculine or feminine in gender, e.g. **comes, comitis** a companion; these are marked c. (= common) in vocabulary lists.

4th declension		5th declension		Notes
stems in -u		stems in -e		
masc.	neuter	feminine		
singular				
nom.	grad-us	corn-ū	r-ēs	1 Most 4th declension nouns are masculine; manus is the only common noun which is feminine. There are a very few neuter nouns; the only common one is cornū . 2 All 5th declension nouns are feminine except for diēs , which is masculine.
acc.	grad-um	corn-ū	r-em	
gen.	grad-ūs	corn-ūs	r-eī	
dat.	grad-uī	corn-uī	r-eī	
abl.	grad-ū	corn-ū	r-ē	
plural				
nom.	grad-ūs	corn-ua	r-ēs	
acc.	grad-ūs	corn-ua	r-ēs	
gen.	grad-uum	corn-uum	r-ērum	
dat.	grad-ibus	corn-ibus	r-ēbus	
abl.	grad-ibus	corn-ibus	r-ēbus	

ADJECTIVES

Masculine & neuter 2nd declension; feminine 1st declension

<i>singular</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
<i>nom.</i>	bon-us	bon-a	bon-um
<i>voc.</i>	bon-e	bon-a	bon-um
<i>acc.</i>	bon-um	bon-am	bon-um
<i>gen.</i>	bon-ī	bon-ae	bon-ī
<i>dat.</i>	bon-ō	bon-ae	bon-ō
<i>abl.</i>	bon-ō	bon-ā	bon-ō
<i>plural</i>			
<i>nom.</i>	bon-ī	bon-ae	bon-a
<i>voc.</i>	bon-ī	bon-ae	bon-a
<i>acc.</i>	bon-ōs	bon-ās	bon-a
<i>gen.</i>	bon-ōrum	bon-ārum	bon-ōrum
<i>dat.</i>	bon-īs	bon-īs	bon-īs
<i>abl.</i>	bon-īs	bon-īs	bon-īs

So also:

miser, miser-a, miser-um, etc.,
pulcher, pulchr-a, pulchr-um, etc.

For **miser** and **pulcher** types of adjective the vocative is the same as the nominative.

3rd declension

consonant stems			stems in -i	
<i>singular</i>	<i>m. & f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m. & f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
<i>nom.</i>	pauper	pauper	omnis	omn-e
<i>acc.</i>	pauper-em	pauper	omn-em	omn-e
<i>gen.</i>	pauper-is	pauper-is	omn-is	omn-is
<i>dat.</i>	pauper-ī	pauper-ī	omn-ī	omn-ī
<i>abl.</i>	pauper-e	pauper-e	omn-ī	omn-ī

Notes

1 The vocative is the same as the nominative.

2 Most 3rd declension adjectives have stems in **-i**; these keep the **-i** in ablative singular, genitive plural, and in neuter nominative and accusative plural.

3 Other types of 3rd declension adjectives with stems in **-i** are:

	consonant stems		stems in -i	
	<i>m. & f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m. & f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
<i>plural</i>				
<i>nom.</i>	pauper-ēs	pauper-a	omn-ēs	omn-ia
<i>acc.</i>	pauper-ēs	pauper-a	omn-ēs	omn-ia
<i>gen.</i>	pauper-um	pauper-um	omn-ium	omn-ium
<i>dat.</i>	pauper-ibus	pauper-ibus	omn-ibus	omn-ibus
<i>abl.</i>	pauper-ibus	pauper-ibus	omn-ibus	omn-ibus

	alter (one or the other of two)			uter (which of two?)		
	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
<i>nom.</i>	alter	altera	alterum	uter	utra	utrum
<i>acc.</i>	alterum	alteram	alterum	utrum	utram	utrum
<i>gen.</i>	alterius	alterius	alterius	utrius	utrius	utrius
<i>dat.</i>	alterī	alterī	alterī	utrī	utrī	utrī
<i>abl.</i>	alterō	alterā	alterō	utrō	utrā	utrō

Plural like that of **bon-i**, **bon-ae**, **bon-a**.

Similarly: **uterque**, **utraq̄ue**, **utrumq̄ue** (each of two).

The following adjectives have the same characteristic, i.e.
gen. sing. **-ius**, dat. sing. **-ī**:

alius, alia, aliud	other	<i>gen. sing.</i>	alius	<i>dat. sing.</i>	aliī
nūllus, nūlla, nūllum	no		nūllius		nūlli
ūllus, ūlla, ūllum	any		ūllius		ūlli
sōlus, sōla, sōlum	only		sōlius		sōli
tōtus, tōta, tōtum	whole		tōtius		tōti
ūnus, ūna, ūnum	one		ūnius		ūni

	<i>m. & f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
<i>nom.</i>	ingēns	ingēns
<i>gen.</i>	ingentis	ingentis
<i>nom.</i>	fēlix	fēlix
<i>gen.</i>	fēlicis	fēlicis

4 3rd declension adjectives with stems in consonants are few, e.g. **dīves, dīvit-is**; **pauper, pauper-is**; **vetus, veter-is**; and the comparative adjective, e.g. **fortior** (*n. fortius*), genitive **fortiōr-is**.

For the comparison of adjectives, see the grammar sections of chapters 24 and 25.

ADVERBS

1 From **bonus** type adjectives, adverbs are usually formed by adding **-ē** to the stem, e.g. **mal-us** bad: **mal-e** badly; **miser** miserable: **miser-ē** miserably. A few add **-ō**, e.g. **subit-us** sudden: **subit-ō** suddenly. Irregular: **bon-us** good, **ben-e** well; **mult-us** much, **mult-um** much; **prīmus** first, **prīmum** first(ly).

2 From 3rd declension adjectives, adverbs are usually formed by adding **-ter** to the stem, e.g. **fēlix** fortunate: **fēlici-ter** fortunately; **celer** quick: **celeri-ter** quickly. A few 3rd declension adjectives use the accusative neuter singular as an adverb, e.g. **facilis** easy, **facile** easily; so also comparative adverbs, e.g. **fortior** braver, **fortius** more bravely.

3 There are many adverbs which have no corresponding adjectival form, e.g. **diū**, **quandō**? **iam**, **semper**.

4 For the comparison of adverbs, see the grammar section of chapter 25.

NUMERALS

cardinals			ordinals	
1	ūnus	I	1st	prīmus, -a, -um
2	duo	II	2nd	secundus, -a, -um/alter, -a, -um
3	trēs	III	3rd	tertius, -a, -um
4	quattuor	IV	4th	quārtus, -a, -um
5	quīnque	V	5th	quīntus, -a, -um
6	sex	VI	6th	sextus, -a, -um
7	septem	VII	7th	septimus, -a, -um
8	octō	VIII	8th	octāvus, -a, -um
9	novem	IX	9th	nōnus, -a, -um
10	decem	X	10th	decimus, -a, -um
11	ūndecim	XI		
12	duodecim	XII		
13	tredecim	XIII		
14	quattuordecim	XIV		
15	quīndecim	XV		
16	sēdecim	XVI		
17	septendecim	XVII		
18	duodēvigintī	XVIII		
19	ūndēvigintī	XIX		
20	vīgintī	XX	20th	vīcēsīmus, -a, -um
30	trīgintā	XXX		
40	quadrāgintā	XL		
50	quīnquāgintā	L		
100	centum	C	100th	centēsīmus, -a, -um
200	ducentī, -ae, -a	CC		
300	trecentī, -ae, -a	CCC		
400	quadringentī, -ae, -a	CCCC		
1,000	mille	M	1,000th	millēsīmus, -a, -um
2,000	duo milia			

Note

The numbers 4–100 do not decline; 200–900 decline like **bonī, -ae, -a**.

mille does not decline; **milia** is a 3rd declension noun, so:

mille passūs = 1,000 paces (a mile)
duo milia passuum = 2,000 (of) paces (2 miles)

Declension of **ūnus, duo, trēs**

	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
<i>nom.</i>	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	duo	duae	duo	trēs	trēs	tria
<i>acc.</i>	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	duōs	duās	duo	trēs	trēs	tria
<i>gen.</i>	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus	duōrum	duārum	duōrum	tribus	tribus	tribus
<i>dat.</i>	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus	tribus
<i>abl.</i>	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	duōbus	duābus	duōbus	tribus	tribus	tribus

PRONOUNS

singular

<i>nom.</i>	ego (I)	tū (you)	
<i>acc.</i>	mē	tē	sē (himself, herself)
<i>gen.</i>	meī	tuī	suī
<i>dat.</i>	mihi	tibi	sibi
<i>abl.</i>	mē	tē	sē

Possessive adjectives:

meus, -a, -um (my)
 tuus, -a, -um (your)
 suus, -a, -um (his own)

plural

<i>nom.</i>	nōs (we)	vōs (you)		noster, nostra, nostrum (our)
<i>acc.</i>	nōs	vōs	sē (themselves)	vester, vestra, vestrum (your)
<i>gen.</i>	nostrum, nostrī	vestrum, vestrī	suī	suus, -a, -um (their own)
<i>dat.</i>	nōbīs	vōbīs	sibi	All decline like bonus, -a, -um ,
<i>abl.</i>	nōbīs	vōbīs	sē	but the vocative of meus is mī

singular

	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
<i>nom.</i>	hic	haec	hoc (this)	ille	illa	illud (that)	is	ea	id (he, she, it;
<i>acc.</i>	hunc	hanc	hoc	illum	illam	illud	eum	eam	id that)
<i>gen.</i>	huius	huius	huius	illius	illius	illius	eius	eius	eius
<i>dat.</i>	huic	huic	huic	illi	illi	illi	eī	eī	eī
<i>abl.</i>	hōc	hāc	hōc	illō	illā	illō	eō	eā	eō

plural

<i>nom.</i>	hī	hae	haec	illī	illae	illa	eī	eae	ea
<i>acc.</i>	hōs	hās	haec	illōs	illās	illa	eōs	eās	ea
<i>gen.</i>	hōrum	hārum	hōrum	illōrum	illārum	illōrum	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
<i>dat.</i>	hīs	hīs	hīs	illis	illis	illis	eīs	eīs	eīs
<i>abl.</i>	hīs	hīs	hīs	illis	illis	illis	eīs	eīs	eīs

singular

relative pronoun

	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>	<i>m.</i>	<i>f.</i>	<i>n.</i>
<i>nom.</i>	ipse	ipsa	ipsum (self)	idem	eadem	idem (the same)	quī	quae	quod (who, which)
<i>acc.</i>	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	eundem	eandem	idem	quem	quam	quod
<i>gen.</i>	ipsius	ipsius	ipsius	eiusdem	eiusdem	eiusdem	cuius	cuius	cuius
<i>dat.</i>	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem	cui	cui	cui
<i>abl.</i>	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	eōdem	eādem	eōdem	quō	quā	quō

plural

<i>nom.</i>	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa	eīdem	eaedem	eadem	quī	quae	quae
<i>acc.</i>	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem	quōs	quās	quae
<i>gen.</i>	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
<i>dat.</i>	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem	quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>abl.</i>	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs	eīsdem	eīsdem	eīsdem	quibus	quibus	quibus

quīdam (a certain, a) declines like the relative pronoun with the suffix **-dam**:

<i>nom.</i>	quīdam	quaedam	quoddam
<i>acc.</i>	quendam	quandam	quoddam etc.

The interrogative pronoun **quis?** (who? what?):

<i>nom.</i>	quis?	quis?	quid?
<i>acc.</i>	quem?	quam?	quid? (the rest exactly like the relative pronoun)

The interrogative adjective **quī?** (which? what?):

<i>nom.</i>	quī?	quae?	quod? (exactly like the relative pronoun)
-------------	------	-------	-------------------------------------------

The indefinite pronoun **aliquis** (someone, something) declines like **quis?** with the prefix **ali-**:

<i>nom.</i>	aliquis	aliquis	aliquid etc.
-------------	---------	---------	--------------

quisquam, quicquam (anyone, anything, after a negative) declines like **quis** with the suffix **-quam**:

<i>nom.</i>	quisquam	quisquam	quicquam
-------------	----------	----------	----------

VERBS

Active

	1st conjugation	2nd conjugation	3rd conjugation	4th conjugation	mixed conjugation
	stems in -a	stems in -e	stems in consonants	stems in -i	
<i>present</i>					
<i>singular</i>	1 par-ō 2 parā-s 3 para-t	mone-ō monē-s mone-t	reg-ō reg-is reg-it	audi-ō audī-s audi-t	capi-ō capi-s capi-t
<i>plural</i>	1 parā-mus 2 parā-tis 3 para-nt	monē-mus monē-tis mone-nt	reg-imus reg-itis reg-unt	audī-mus audī-tis audi-unt	capi-mus capi-tis capi-unt
<i>future</i>					
<i>singular</i>	1 parā-bō 2 parā-bis 3 parā-bit	monē-bō monē-bis monē-bit	reg-am reg-ēs reg-et	audi-am audi-ēs audi-et	capi-am capi-ēs capi-et
<i>plural</i>	1 parā-bimus 2 parā-bitis 3 parā-bunt	monē-bimus monē-bitis monē-bunt	reg-ēmus reg-ētis reg-ent	audi-ēmus audi-ētis audi-ent	capi-ēmus capi-ētis capi-ent
<i>imperfect</i>					
<i>singular</i>	1 parā-bam 2 parā-bās 3 parā-bat	monē-bam monē-bās monē-bat	regē-bam regē-bās regē-bat	audiē-bam audiē-bās audiē-bat	capiē-bam capiē-bās capiē-bat
<i>plural</i>	1 parā-bamus 2 parā-bātis 3 parā-bant	monē-bāmus monē-bātis monē-bant	regē-bāmus regē-bātis regē-bant	audiē-bāmus audiē-bātis audiē-bant	capiē-bāmus capiē-bātis capiē-bant
<i>perfect</i>					
<i>singular</i>	1 parāv-ī 2 parāv-istī 3 parāv-it	monu-ī monu-istī monu-it	rēx-ī rēx-istī rēx-it	audīv-ī audīv-istī audīv-it	cēp-ī cēp-istī cēp-it
<i>plural</i>	1 parāv-imus 2 parāv-istis 3 parāv-ērunt	monu-imus monu-istis monu-ērunt	rēx-imus rēx-istis rēx-ērunt	audīv-imus audīv-istis audīv-ērunt	cēp-imus cēp-istis cēp-ērunt
<i>future perfect</i>					
<i>singular</i>	1 parāv-erō 2 parāv-eris 3 parāv-erit	monu-erō monu-eris monu-erit	rēx-erō rēx-eris rēx-erit	audīv-erō audīv-eris audīv-erit	cēp-erō cēp-eris cēp-erit
<i>plural</i>	1 parāv-erimus 2 parāv-eritis 3 parāv-erint	monu-erimus monu-eritis monu-erint	rēx-erimus rēx-eritis rēx-erint	audīv-erimus audīv-eritis audīv-erint	cēp-erimus cēp-eritis cēp-erint
<i>pluperfect</i>					
<i>singular</i>	1 parāv-eram 2 parāv-erās 3 parāv-erat	monu-eram monu-erās monu-erat	rēx-eram rēx-erās rēx-erat	audīv-eram audīv-erās audīv-erat	cēp-eram cēp-erās cēp-erat
<i>plural</i>	1 parāv-erāmus 2 parāv-erātis 3 parāv-erant	monu-erāmus monu-erātis monu-erant	rēx-erāmus rēx-erātis rēx-erant	audīv-erāmus audīv-erātis audīv-erant	cēp-erāmus cēp-erātis cēp-erant
Infinitive	parā-re	monē-re	reg-ere	audī-re	cap-ere

Imperative

<i>singular</i>	parā	monē	reg-e	audī	cap-e
<i>plural</i>	parā-te	monē-te	reg-ite	audī-te	cap-ite

Passive

	<i>1st conjugation</i>	<i>2nd conjugation</i>	<i>3rd conjugation</i>	<i>4th conjugation</i>	<i>mixed conjugation</i>
	stems in -a	stems in -e	stems in consonants	stems in -i	
<i>present</i>					
<i>singular</i>	1 par-or	mone-or	reg-or	audi-or	capi-or
	2 parā-ris	monē-ris	reg-eris	audī-ris	cap-eris
	3 parā-tur	monē-tur	reg-itur	audī-tur	cap-itur
<i>plural</i>	1 parā-mur	monē-mur	reg-imur	audī-mur	cap-imur
	2 parā-minī	monē-minī	reg-iminī	audī-minī	cap-iminī
	3 para-ntur	mone-ntur	reg-untur	audi-untur	capi-untur
<i>future</i>					
<i>singular</i>	1 parā-bor	monē-bor	reg-ar	audi-ar	capi-ar
	2 parā-beris	monē-beris	reg-ēris	audi-ēris	capi-ēris
	3 parā-bitur	monē-bitur	reg-ētur	audi-ētur	capi-ētur
<i>plural</i>	1 parā-bimur	monē-bimur	reg-ēmur	audi-ēmur	capi-ēmur
	2 parā-biminī	monē-biminī	reg-ēminī	audi-ēminī	capi-ēminī
	3 parā-buntur	monē-buntur	reg-entur	audi-entur	capi-entur
<i>imperfect</i>					
<i>singular</i>	1 parā-bar	monē-bar	reg-ēbar	audi-ēbar	capi-ēbar
	2 parā-bāris	monē-bāris	reg-ēbāris	audi-ēbāris	capi-ēbāris
	3 parā-bātur	monē-bātur	reg-ēbātur	audi-ēbātur	capi-ēbātur
<i>plural</i>	1 parā-bāmur	monē-bāmur	reg-ēbāmur	audi-ēbāmur	capi-ēbāmur
	2 parā-bāminī	monē-bāminī	reg-ēbāminī	audi-ēbāminī	capi-ēbāminī
	3 parā-bantur	monē-bantur	reg-ēbantur	audi-ebantur	capi-ebantur
<i>perfect</i>					
<i>singular</i>	1 parātus sum	monitus sum	rēctus sum	audītus sum	captus sum
	2 parātus es	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.
	3 parātus est				
<i>plural</i>	1 parātī sumus				
	2 parātī estis				
	3 parātī sunt				
<i>future perfect</i>					
<i>singular</i>	1 parātus erō	monitus erō	rēctus erō	audītus erō	captus erō
	2 parātus eris	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.
	3 parātus erit				
<i>plural</i>	1 parātī erimus				
	2 parātī eritis				
	3 parātī erunt				
<i>pluperfect</i>					
<i>singular</i>	1 parātus eram	monitus eram	rēctus eram	audītus eram	captus eram
	2 parātus erās	etc.	etc.	etc.	etc.
	3 parātus erat				
<i>plural</i>	1 parātī erāmus				
	2 parātī erātis				
	3 parātī erant				

Participles*present active*

parāns, parantis <i>preparing</i>	monēns, monentis <i>warning</i>	regēns, regentis <i>ruling</i>	audiēns, audientis <i>hearing</i>	capiēns, capientis <i>taking</i>
--------------------------------------	------------------------------------	-----------------------------------	--------------------------------------	-------------------------------------

perfect passive

parātus, -a, -um <i>having been prepared</i>	monitus, -a, -um <i>having been warned</i>	rēctus, -a, -um <i>having been ruled</i>	audītus, -a, -um <i>having been heard</i>	captus, -a, -um <i>having been taken</i>
-----------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------

Irregular verbs

sum: infinitive esse I am	possum: infinitive posse (pot + sum) I am able	eō: infinitive īre (stem i-) I go
--------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------	----------------------------------------------------

present

<i>singular</i>	1 sum 2 es 3 est	possum potes potest	eō īs it
<i>plural</i>	1 sumus 2 estis 3 sunt	possumus potestis possunt	īmus ītis eunt

future

<i>singular</i>	1 erō 2 eris 3 erit	pot-erō pot-eris pot-erit	ī-bō ī-bis ī-bit
<i>plural</i>	1 erimus 2 eritis 3 erunt	pot-erimus pot-eritis pot-erunt	ī-bimus ī-bitis ī-bunt

imperfect

<i>singular</i>	1 eram 2 erās 3 erat	pot-eram pot-erās pot-erat	ī-bam ī-bās ī-bat
<i>plural</i>	1 erāmus 2 erātis 3 erant	pot-erāmus pot-erātis pot-erant	ī-bāmus ī-bātis ī-bant

perfect stem

fu-	potu-	i-
1 fu-ī	potu-ī	i-ī
2 fu-istī	potu-istī	īstī
3 fu-it	potu-it	i-it
1 fu-imus	potu-imus	i-imus
2 fu-istis	potu-istis	īstis
3 fu-ērunt	potu-ērunt	i-ērunt

future perfect

fu-erō etc.	potu-erō etc.	i-erō etc.
-------------	---------------	------------

pluperfect

fu-eram etc.	potu-eram etc.	i-eram etc.
--------------	----------------	-------------

imperatives

<i>singular</i>	es, estō	ī
<i>plural</i>	este	īte

present participle

–	–	iēns, euntis
---	---	--------------

volō, velle, voluī	I wish, I am willing
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī	I am unwilling, I refuse
mālō, mälle, māluī	I prefer
ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum	I carry, bear

<i>present</i>				<i>active</i>	<i>passive</i>
<i>singular</i>	1 volō	nōlō	mālō	ferō	feror
	2 vīs	nōn vīs	māvīs	fers	ferris
	3 vult	nōn vult	māvult	fert	fertur
<i>plural</i>	1 volumus	nōlumus	mālumus	ferimus	ferimur
	2 vultis	nōn vultis	māvultis	fertis	feriminī
	3 volunt	nōlunt	mālunt	ferunt	feruntur
<i>future</i>					
<i>singular</i>	1 volam	nōlam	mālam	feram	ferar
	2 volēs	nōlēs	mālēs	ferēs	ferēris
	3 volet etc.	nōlet etc.	mālet etc.	feret etc.	ferētur etc.
<i>imperfect</i>	volēbam etc.	nōlēbam etc.	mālēbam etc.	ferēbam etc.	ferēbar etc.
<i>perfect</i>	voluī etc.	nōluī etc.	māluī etc.	tuli etc.	lātus sum etc.
<i>future perfect</i>	voluerō etc.	nōluerō etc.	māluerō etc.	tulerō etc.	lātus erō etc.
<i>pluperfect</i>	volueram etc.	nōlueram etc.	mālueram etc.	tuleram etc.	lātus eram etc.
<i>imperatives</i>	–	nōlī	–	fer	ferre
	–	nōlīte	–	ferite	feriminī
<i>infinitive</i>	velle	nōlle	mälle	ferre	ferri
<i>participle</i>	volēns	nōlēns	–	ferēns	lātus, -a, -um
	volentis	nōlentis	–	ferentis	

Principal parts of verbs

Regular verbs of 1st, 2nd and 4th conjugations

	<i>present</i>	<i>infinitive</i>	<i>perfect</i>	<i>supine</i>
<i>1st</i>	parō	parāre	parāvī	parātum
<i>2nd</i>	moneō	monēre	monuī	monitum
<i>4th</i>	audiō	audire	audīvī	audītum

The following are irregular:

1st conjugation

dō, dare, dedī, datum	I give
stō, stāre, steti, statum	I stand
iuvō, iuvāre, iuvī, iūtum	I help
lavō, lavāre, lāvī, lautum	I wash

2nd conjugation

ardeō, ardēre, arsi, arsum	I burn, am on fire
augeō, augēre, auxi, auctum	I increase
doceō, docēre, docui, doctum	I teach
faveō, favēre, favi, fautum + dat.	I favour
fleō, flēre, flēvi, flētum	I weep
iubeō, iubēre, iussi, iussum	I order
maneō, manēre, mansi, mansum	I stay, remain
moveō, movēre, movi, mōtum	I move
persuadeō, persuadēre, persuasi, persuasum + dat.	I persuade
respondeō, respondēre, respondi, responsum	I answer
rideo, ridēre, risi, risum	I laugh
sedeō, sedēre, sedi, sessum	I sit
teneō, tenēre, tenui, tentum	I hold
videō, vidēre, vidi, visum	I see

4th conjugation

aperiō, aperire, aperui, apertum	I open
veniō, venire, veni, ventum	I come

3rd conjugation verbs, arranged by type

1a Perfect -sī, supine -tum (see chapter 17)

dicō, dicere, dixi, dictum	I say, tell
dūcō, ducere, duxi, ductum	I lead
gerō, gerere, gessi, gestum	I carry, wear
regō, regere, rexī, rēctum	I rule
scribō, scribere, scripsi, scriptum	I write
surgō*, surgere, surrexi, surrectum	I rise, get up (surrigo)
trahō*, trahere, traxi, tractum	I drag (tragho)
vehō*, vehere, vexi, vectum	I carry (veggo)
vivō*, vivere, vixi, victum	I live (viggo)

Notes

1 verbs marked *: the forms in brackets are the original form of the verb.

2 **regō, surgō, mittō** lengthen the vowel of the stem in the perfect.

3 Compound verbs usually form the perfect in the same way as the simple verb, e.g.

prōcēdō, prōcēdere, prōcessi, prōcessum
remittō, remittere, remisi, remissum

1b Perfect -sī, supine -sum (see chapter 17)

cēdō, cēdere, cessi, cessum	I yield ('go' in compounds)
claudō, claudere, clausi, clausum	I shut
ēvādō, ēvādere, ēvasi, ēvasum	I escape
lūdō, lūdere, lūsi, lūsum	I play
mittō, mittere, misi, missum	I send

2a Perfect stem the same as the present, supine -tum (see chapter 18)

cōstituō, cōstituere, cōstitui, cōstitutum	I decide
contendō, contendere, contendi, contentum	I march, hasten
induō, induere, indui, indūtum	I put on
solvō, solvere, solvi, solūtum	I loose

2b Perfect stem the same as the present, supine -sum (see chapter 18)

accendō, accendere, accendi, accēsum	I light (a fire)
ascendō, ascendere, ascendi, ascēsum	I climb
dēscendō, dēscendere, dēscendi, dēscēsum	I climb down
dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendi, dēfēsum	I defend

2c Perfect stem the same as the present but no supine:

bibō, bibere, bibi	I drink
vīsō, vīsere, vīsi	I go to see

3 Verbs lengthening stem vowel in the perfect, supine **-tum** (see chapter 19)

agō, agere, ēgī, actum	I do, I drive
cōgō, cōgere, cōēgī, cōactum	I drive together, I compel
emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptum	I buy
legō, legere, lēgī, lēctum	I read, I gather
frangō*, frangere, frēgī, frāctum	I break
relinquō*, relinquere, reliquī, relictum	I leave
rumpō*, rumpere, rūpī, ruptum	I burst open
vincō*, vincere, vīcī, victum	I conquer

NB *these verbs insert **n** (**m** before **p**) in the present, which is dropped in perfect and supine, e.g. **fra-n-gō**, original stem **fragō**, hence **frēgī, frāctum**.

4a Verbs with reduplicated perfect, supine **-tum** (see chapter 20)

addō, addere, addidī, additum	I add (so all compounds of dō)
canō, canere, cecinī, cantum	I sing

Note also 1st conjugation:

dō, dare, dedi, datum	I give
stō, stāre, steti, statum	I stand
instō, instāre, instifi, instatum	I press hard on

4b Verbs with reduplicated perfect, supine **-sum** (see chapter 20)

cadō, cadere, cecidī, casum	I fall
currō, currere, cucurri, cursum	I run
pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsum	I drive

Note that compounds of **cadō**, **currō** and **pellō** do not have reduplicated perfects, e.g.

expellō, expellere, expulī, expulsum	I drive out
incidō, incidere, incidī, incāsum	I fall down
occurrō, occurrere, occurri, occursum	I run to meet, meet

5 Verbs forming perfect **-vī/-uī** (see chapter 21)

arcessō, arcessere, arcessivī, arcessitum	I summon
colō, colere, coluī, cultum	I cultivate
petō, petere, petivī, petitum	I seek
pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum	I place
quaerō, quaerere, quaesivī, quaesitum	I ask, seek
sinō, sinere, sivī, situm	I allow
dēsīnō, dēsinere, dēsīi, dēsītum	I cease

Note also 4th conjugation:

aperiō, aperire, aperuī, apertum	I open
-----------------------------------------	--------

6 Inceptive verbs (see chapter 22)

cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitum	I get to know, learn
crēscō, crēscere, crēvī, crētum	I grow
nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtum	I get to know
quiēscō, quiēscere, quiēvī, quiētum	I rest

7 Mixed conjugation

capiō, capere, cēpī, captum	I take
cupiō, cupere, cupīvī, cupitum	I desire
faciō, facere, fēcī, factum	I make, do
fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitum	I flee
iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum	I throw
rapiō, rapere, rapuī, raptum	I seize
(in)spiciō, (in)spicere, (in)spexi, (in)spectum	I look at

PREPOSITIONS

The following take the accusative:

ad	to, towards
ante	before
circum	around
contrā	against
extrā	outside
in	into, onto
inter	among
per	through
post	after, behind
prope	near
propter	on account of
super	above
trāns	across

The following take the ablative:

ā/ab	from
cum	with
dē	down from; about
ē/ex	out of
in	in, on
prō	in front of, on behalf of
sine	without
sub	under

CONJUNCTIONS

Coordinating

atque	and
aut	or
aut...aut	either...or
enim*	for
ergō	and so
et	and
et...et	both...and
igitur*	therefore, and so
itaque	and so
nam	for
nec/neque	and not, nor
nec/neque...nec/neque	neither...nor
-que	and
sed	but
tamen*	but, however

Subordinating

cum	when
dum	while
nisi	unless
quamquam	although
quod	because
sī	if
ubi	when
ut	as

*these come second word in their sentence

The numbers after the words indicate the chapter vocabularies in which the words occur; those with no number have not been learnt.

Principal parts of all verbs are given except for regular verbs of the 1st conjugation, which are listed with infinitive only.

ā/ab + abl. (7) from; by

abhinc ago

absum, abesse, āfuī + abl. (18) I am away from, I am absent
ac/atque and

accēdō, accēdere, accessī, accessum (4) I approach

accendō, accendere, accendī, accēsum (27) I set fire to

accidit, accidere, accidit (26) it happens

accipiō, accipere, accēpi, acceptum (9) I receive

accurrō, currere, accurrī, accursum I run to

ad + acc. (3) towards, to

addō, addere, addidī, additum I add

adducō, adducere, adduxī, adductum I lead to;
I influence

adhuc (18) still

adiuvō, adiuvāre, adiūvi, adiūtum (33) I help

administrō, administrāre (33) I manage, administer

admīrātiō, admīrātiōnis, f. (16) wonder

adoptō, adoptāre I adopt

adsum, adesse, adfuī (4) I am present

adveniō, advenire, advēni, adventum (5) I arrive

adventus, adventus, m. (29) arrival

adversus, -a, -um (32) facing, contrary, against

aedēs, aedium, f. pl. (21) house

aedificium, -i, n. (19) building

aedificō, aedificāre (11) I build

aeger, aegra, aegrum (23) sick, ill

aegrē with difficulty

aequus, -a, -um (30) equal, fair

afficiō, afficere, affēcī, affectum I affect

affigō, affigere, affixī, affixum I affix

age! come on!

ager, agrī, m. (3) field

agō, agere, ēgi, actum (19) I drive; I do, manage

agora, -ae, f. agora, city centre

aliquis, aliquid (21) someone, something

alius, alia, aliud (5) other, another

aliī ... aliī some ... others

alter, altera, alterum (29) one or the other (of two); second

altus, -a, -um (19) high, deep

ambulō, ambulāre (1) I walk

amicus, -i, m. (4) friend

amicus, -a, -um friendly

amō, amāre (12) I love

amor, amoris, m. (12) love

an? (29) or?

animus, -i, m. (12) mind

in animō habeo I have in mind, intend

annus, -i, m. (18) year

ante + acc. (12) before

anteā (adv.) before

antiquus, -a, -um (30) old, ancient

ānxiētās, ānxiētātis, f. (23) anxiety

ānxius, -a, -um (3) anxious

aperiō, aperire, aperui, apertum (19) I open

apertus, -a, -um (19) open

appellō, appellāre (20) I call (by name)

aqua, -ae, f. (2) water

arbor, arboris, f. (13) tree

arcessō, arcessere, arcessivi, arcessitum (30) I summon

ardeō, ardere, arsi, arsum (26) I am on fire

argentum, -i, n. (28) silver, money

arithmētica, -ae, f. arithmetic

arma, armōrum, n. pl. (11) arms, weapons

armātus, -a, -um (26) armed

ascendō, ascendere, ascendī, ascēsum (3) I climb

asinus, -i, m. ass

atque (32) and

ātrium, -i, n. (21) hall

attendō, attendere, attendī, attentum I attend

attentē attentively

attonitus, -a, -um astonished

audiō, audire, audīvi, auditum (3) I hear

audītor, audītōris, m. listener, audience

auferō, auferre, abstuli, ablātum I carry away

augeō, augere, auxi, auctum (27) I increase

aula, -ae, f. courtyard

aura, -ae, f. (13) breeze, air

aut ... aut (12) either ... or

auxilium, -i, n. (15) help

avis, avis, f. bird

balnea, -ōrum, n. pl. (23) baths

bellum, -i, n. (11) war

bene (8) well

benignus, -a, -um (27) kind

bibō, bibere, bibi (9) I drink

bona, -ōrum, n. pl. (32) goods

bonus, -a, -um (5) good

brevis, breve (25) short

cadō, cadere, cecidi, cāsum (3) I fall

caelum, -i, n. (10) sky, heaven

campus, -i, m. (25) field, plain

candidātus, -i, m. (17) candidate

candidus, -a, -um (17) white

canis, canis, c. (7) dog

- canō, canere, cecinī, cantum** (14) I sing
capiō, capere, cēpī, captum (7) I take
capsula, -ae, f. box, satchel
caput, capitis, n. (26) head
carmen, carminis, n. (14) song
cārus, -a, -um (7) dear
casa, -ae, f. (1) house, cottage
castra, castrōrum, n. pl. (11) camp
cāsus, -ūs, m. (22) mishap, misfortune
caupōna, -ae, f. inn
causa, -ae, f. (26) cause, reason
cautus, -a, -um (33) cautious
caveō, cavēre, cāvī, cautum (24) I beware
celebrō, celebrāre I celebrate
celer, celeris quick
celeritās, celeritātis, f. (23) speed
celeriter (6) quickly
cēlō, cēlāre I hide
cēna, -ae, f. (1) dinner
cēnō, cēnāre (1) I dine
centum a hundred
centuriō, centuriōnis, m. (14) centurion
certē certainly
certus, -a, -um (33) certain; resolved
aliquem certiōrem faciō (32) I inform someone
cessō, cessāre I idle, linger
cēterī, cēterae, cētera (6) the others, the rest
chorus, -ī, m. (30) chorus
cibus, -ī, m. (3) food
circum + acc. (8) round
circumspectō, circumspectāre I look round
circumstō, -stāre, -stetī, -statum I stand round
circumveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum (15) I surround
circumvolō, circumvolāre I fly round
civilis, cīvile (27) of citizens, civil
civis, cīvis, c. (15) citizen
clam (32) secretly
clāmō, clāmāre (5) I shout
clāmor, clāmōris, m. (10) shout
clārus, -a, -um (21) clear, bright, famous
claudō, claudere, clausī, clausum (19) I shut
cliēs, clientis, m. (24) client, dependant
coepī, coepisse I began
cōgitō, cōgitāre I think, reflect
cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitum (11) I get to know, learn
cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coactum (32) I compel
colligō, colligere, collēgī, collēctum (27) I gather, collect
collis, collis, m. (11) hill
colloquium, -ī, n. conversation, talk
collum, -ī, n. neck
colō, colere, coluī, cultum (13) I till; I worship
colōnus, -ī, m. (3) farmer
comes, comitis, c. (7) companion
cōmis, cōme friendly
comitia, -ōrum, n. pl. elections
commendō, commendāre I introduce, commend
committō, committere, commisi, commissum (33) I entrust
commōtus, -a, -um (12) moved
commoveō, commovēre, commōvī, commōtum I move deeply
comparō, comparāre (32) I acquire, get
compōnō, compōnere, composui, compositum I put together, compose
conclāmō, conclāmāre I shout aloud
concurrō, concurrere, concurrī, concursum I run together
condō, condere, condidi, conditum (29) I found
condūcō, condūcere, condūxī, conductum I hire
cōnfectus, -a, -um (19) finished
cōnficiō, cōnficere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectum (21) I finish
cōnfidō, cōnfidere, cōnfisus + dat. (29) I trust
coniciō, conicere, conieci, coniectum (8) I hurl
coniungō, coniungere, coniūnxī, coniūnctum I join together
coniūrātus, -ī, m. conspirator
cōnscendō, cōnscendere, cōnscendi, cōnscēsum (9) I board (a ship)
cōnsilium, -ī, n. (11) plan
cōnsistō, cōnsistere, cōnstiti, cōnstitutum (32) I halt, stand still
cōnsolātiō, cōnsolātiōnis, f. consolation, comfort
cōnspectus, cōnspectus, m. (24) sight, view
cōnspiciō, cōnspicere, cōnspexi, cōnspectum (18) I catch sight of
cōnstituō, cōnstituere, cōnstituī, cōnstitutum (6) I decide
cōnsul, cōnsulis, m. (15) consul
cōnsūmō, cōnsūmere, cōnsūmpsī, cōnsūptum I consume, eat
contendō, contendere, contendī, contentum (14) I walk, march
contentus, -a, -um (22) content
continuō (19) immediately
conveniō, convenīre, convēnī, conventum (9) I come together, meet
conventus, -ūs, m. meeting
convocō, convocāre (7) I call together
cōpiae, -ārum, f. pl. (32) forces
corōna, -ae, f. crown, garland
corpus, corporis, n. body
corripō, corripere, corripui, correptum (32) I seize, steal
cotidīe (21) every day
crās (27) tomorrow
crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, creditum + dat. (17) I believe, trust
crēscō, crēscere, crēvī, crētum (28) I grow, increase
crūdēlis, crūdēle (24) cruel
cubō, cubāre, cubui, cubitum I lie down
cum + abl. (5) with
cum (conjunction) (17) when
cum primum (28) as soon as

cupiō, cupere, cupīvi, cupitum (6) I desire, want
cūr? (4) why
cūra, -ae, f. care
cūrō, cūrāre (4) I care for, look after
currō, currere, cucurri, cursum (3) I run
currus, -ūs, m. (22) chariot
cursus, -ūs, m. (22) running; a course
custodiō, custodire, custodivī, custoditum (16) I guard
custos, custodis, m. (16) guard

dē + abl. (10) down from
dē + abl. (15) about
dea, -ae, f. (12) goddess
dēbeō, dēbere, dēbui, dēbitum (7) I ought, must
dēcidō, dēcidere, dēcidī I fall down
decimus, -a, -um tenth
dēdō, dēdere, dēdidī, dēditum (15) I give up, surrender
dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfensum (7) I defend
dēfensor, dēfensoris, m. defender, protector
deinde (17) then, next
dēlectō, dēlectāre (30) I please, delight
dēnārius, dēnārii, m. a penny
dēnique (24) finally, lastly
dēpōnō, dēpōnere, dēposui, dēpositum (13) I put down
dēscendō, dēscendere, dēscendī, dēscēsum I descend,
 come down
dēserō, dēserere, dēserui, dēsertum I desert
dēsertus, -a, -um deserted
dēsistō, dēsistere, dēstiti, destitum I cease from
dēspērō, dēspērāre (12) I despair
deus, -i, m. (12) god
dēvōrō, dēvōrāre I swallow down, devour
dexter, dextra, dextrum (28) right
dextrā (manū) (28) on the right (hand)
dī immortalēs! immortal gods!
dicō, dicere, dixi, dictum (5) I say
dictātor, dictātoris, m. (15) dictator
dictō, dictāre I dictate
diēs, diēi, m. (18) day
difficilis, difficile (19) difficult
diffugiō, diffugere, diffugi I flee away
dignus, -a, -um + abl. (16) worthy (of)
diligenter (6) carefully, hard
diligentia, -ae, f. (25) care, diligence
dimitto, dimittere, dimisi, dimissum (6) I send away,
 dismiss
discēdō, discēdere, discessi, discessum (17) I go away,
 depart
discipulus, -i, m. (20) pupil
discō, discere, didici (18) I learn
disserō, disserere, disserui, dissertum (31) I discuss
diū (4) for a long time
diūtius for a longer time, longer
dīves, dīvitis (30) rich
dividō, dividere, divisi, divisum (32) I divide
divinus, -a, -um (13) divine

divitiae, -ārum, f. pl. (17) riches
dō, dare, dedi, datum (5) I give
doceō, docēre, docui, doctum (6) I teach
doctor, doctōris, m. teacher
doctus, -a, -um (29) learned
dolor, dolōris, m. (33) pain, grief
domicilium, -i, n. lodging
domina, -ae, f. (13) mistress
dominus, -i, m. (21) master
domum (6) (to) home
domus, domūs, f. home
dōnum, -i, n. (30) gift
dormiō, dormire, dormivi, dormitum (4) I sleep
dubius, -a, -um (30) doubtful
sine dubiō (30) without doubt
dūcō, dūcere, duxi, ductum (3) I lead; I draw (water)
dulcis, dulce (29) sweet
dum (11) while
duo, duae, duo (5) two
dux, ducis, c. leader

ē/ex + abl. (8) out of, from
eam, eum (3) her, him
eās, eōs (4) them
ēbrius, -a, -um drunk
ecce! look!
edō, ēsse, edī, ēsum (28) I eat
efficiō, efficere, effeci, effectum (17) I effect, do
effugiō, effugere, effugi, effugitum I flee away, escape
ego (6) I (acc. **mē**)
ēloquentia, -ae, f. eloquence
emō, emere, emi, emptum (5) I buy
enim (17) for
eō, ire, ii, itum (6) I go
eō (adv.) (14) thither, (to) there
epistola, -ae, f. (21) letter
eques, equitis, m. (31) horseman
equitēs, equitum, m. pl. (31) cavalry
equus, -i, m. (9) horse
ergō (27) and so
errō, errāre (11) I wander; I err, am wrong
et (1) and
et...et (15) both...and
etiam (12) also, even
euge! good!
ēvādō, ēvādere, ēvāsi, ēvāsum (16) I escape
ēvertō, ēvertere, ēverti, ēversum (32) I overturn
ēvigilō, ēvigilāre I wake up
ēvolō, ēvolāre I fly out
excitō, excitāre (13) I rouse, wake up
exemplum, -i, n. (16) example
exeō, exire, exiī, exitum (6) I go out
exerceō, exercere, exercui, exercitum (14) I exercise,
 train
exercitus, -ūs, m. army
exitium, -i, n. (27) destruction

expellō, expellere, expulī, expulsum (31) I drive out
explorō, explorāre I explore
expōnō, expōnere, exposuī, expositum I put out; I explain
exspectō, exspectāre (8) I wait for
extrā + acc. (19) outside

fābula, -ae, f. (2) story, play
fābulōsus, -a, -um fabulous, from a story
facile (20) easily
facilis, facile (20) easy
facilitās, facilitātis, f. (25) ease, facility
faciō, facere, fēcī, factum (5) I do; I make
falsus, -a, -um false
fāma, -ae, f. (11) fame, reputation, report
familia, -ae, f. (14) family, household
faveō, favēre, fāvī, fautum + dat. (22) I favour, support
fēmina, -ae, f. (1) woman
feriō, ferire (26) I strike
ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum (11) I carry, bear
ferōx, ferōcis (24) fierce
ferrum, -ī, n. (32) iron; sword
ferula, -ae, f. cane
fessus, -a, -um (1) tired
festinō, festināre (1) I hurry
filia, -ae, f. (2) daughter
filiolus, -ī, m. (33) little son
filius, -ī, m. (3) son
finis, finis, m. (31) end

finēs, finium m. pl. (31) boundaries, territory
fiō, fieri, factus (24) I am made, I become
flamma, -ae, f. flame
fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētum (18) I weep
flōs, flōris, m. (14) flower
flūmen, flūminis, n. (16) river
foedus, foederis, n. (16) treaty
fōns, fontis, m. spring, fountain
fōrma, -ae, f. (13) shape, beauty
fortis, forte (7) brave
fortiter (7) bravely
forum, -ī, n. forum, city centre
frāctus, -a, -um (22) broken
frangō, frangere, frēgī, frāctum (22) I break
frāter, frātris, m. (7) brother
frūmentum, -ī, n. (16) grain
frūstrā in vain
fugiō, fugere, fugī, fugitum (7) I flee
fūnus, fūneris, n. funeral
furor, furōris, m. madness

gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum (9) I rejoice;
 + abl. I rejoice in
gaudium, -ī, n. joy
genus, generis, n. (24) sort, kind, race
gerō, gerere, gessī, gestum (14) I carry, wear
mē gerō (30) I behave myself
rem gerō (30) I conduct a matter

gladius, -ī, m. (26) sword
glōria, -ae, f. (14) glory
gradus, -ūs, m. (20) step
grātia, -arum, f. pl. (20) thanks
grātiās agō + dat. (20) I give thanks
grātulātiō, grātulātiōnis, f. congratulations
grātus, -a, -um (29) pleasing; grateful
gravis, grave (17) heavy, grave, serious

habeō, habēre, habuī, habitum (9) I have
habitō, habitāre (10) I inhabit, live
hasta, -ae, f. (8) spear
haud (15) not
herī (30) yesterday
hērōs, hērōis, m. hero
hic (8) here
hic, haec, hoc (15) this
hiems, hiemis, f. (12) winter
hilaris, hilare (31) cheerful
hodiē (14) today
homō, hominis, c. (10) human being, man
honestus, -a, -um (33) honourable
hōra, -ae, f. (17) hour
horribilis, horribile horrible
hortus, -ī, m. (5) garden
hostis, hostis, m. (11) enemy
hūc (8) hither, this way
hūc...illūc (19) this way and that
hūmānus, -a, -um (29) human; humane, kind

iaceō, iacēre, iacuī (5) I lie (down)
iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum (7) I throw
iam (4) now, already
iānuā, -ae, f. (6) door
ibi (12) there
īdem, eadem, idem (31) the same
igitur (17) therefore, and so
ignāvus, -a, -um lazy
ignis, ignis, m. (18) fire
ignōscō, ignōscere, ignōvī, ignōtum + dat. I forgive
ignōtus, -a, -um (11) unknown
ille, illa, illud (4) that; he, she, it
illūminō, illūmināre I light up, illuminate
immemor, immemoris forgetful of
immineō, imminēre + dat. (33) I hang over, threaten
immortālis, immortalē (31) immortal
imperātor, imperātōris, m. (14) general
imperium, -ī, n. (12) order
imperium Rōmānum (26) the Roman empire
imperō, imperāre + dat. (11) I order
impudēns, impudentis impudent, shameless
in + acc. (2) into, to
in + abl. (5) in, on
incendium, -ī, n. fire
incendō, incendere, incendi, incēsum I set on fire
incertus, -a, -um uncertain

incidō, incidere, incidī, incāsūm I fall into
incipiō, incipere, incēpi, inceptum I begin
incolumis, incolume (8) safe
inde (28) thence, from there
induō, induere, indui, indūtum (20) I put on (clothes)
ineō, inire, iniī, initum (18) I enter, begin
infāns, infāntis, c. (33) infant, baby
infēlix, infēlicis (12) unhappy, unlucky
ingēns, ingentis (9) huge
ingeniōsus, -a, -um (21) clever, talented
ingenium, -ī, n. (21) character, talents
inimicus, -ī, m. (24) enemy
inquit (3) he/she says
inquiunt they say
īnscriptiō, īnscriptiōnis, f. inscription
īnsignis, īnsigne (25) outstanding, distinguished
īnspiciō, īnspicere, īnspexī, īnspectum I look at
īnsula, -ae, f. (9) island
īnsum, īnse, īnfui (23) I am in, I am among
īntelligō, īntelligere, īntellēxi, īntellēctum (20) I understand
īntentē intently
inter + acc. (9) between, among
īnterdum from time to time
īntersum, īnterese, īnterfui + dat. (21) I am among, I take part in
īntereā (12) meanwhile
īnrō, īnrāre (1) I go into, enter
īveniō, īvenire, īvēni, īventum (11) I find
īvideō, īvidēre, īvidī, īvisum + dat. (13) I envy
īvitō, īvitāre I invite
īvitus, -a, -um (19) unwilling
ipse, ipsa, ipsum (15) himself, herself, itself
īra, -ae, f. (7) anger
īrātus, -a, -um (2) angry
is, ea, id (14) he, she, it; that
ītaque (6) and so, therefore
īter, īteris, n. (18) journey
īterum (6) again
īubeō, īubēre, īussi, īussum (6) I order
valēre īubeō (18) I bid goodbye
īucundus, -a, -um (29) pleasant, delightful
īuppiter, īovis, m. (19) Jupiter
īūs, īūris, n. (25) right, justice
īuvenis, īuvenis, m. (14) young man
īuvō, īuvāre, īuvi, īutum (2) I help

labor, labōris, m. (9) work, suffering
labōriōsus, -a, -um laborious, toilsome
labōrō, labōrāre (1) I work
lacrima, -ae, f. (18) tear
laetus, -a, -um (1) happy, joyful
lātus, -a, -um (21) wide, broad
laudō, laudāre (2) I praise
lavō, lavāre, lāvī, lautum (14) I wash
lectus, -ī, m. bed, couch

lēgātus, -ī, m. (32) deputy, officer, envoy
legiō, legiōnis, f. (14) legion
legō, legere, lēgi, lēctum (17) I read
lentē (4) slowly
lēx, lēgis, f. (25) law
libenter (29) gladly
liber, librī, m. (20) book
liber, libera, liberum (16) free
liberō, liberāre (16) I free
libertās, libertātis, f. (31) freedom
licet mihi I am allowed, I may
līmen, līminis, n. (30) threshold
littera, litterae, f. (6) a letter
litterae, -ārum, f. pl. (25) literature
lītus, lītoris, n. (10) shore
locus, locī, m. (loca, locōrum, n. pl.) (14) a place
longē (18) far
longus, -a, -um (18) long
lūceō, lūcēre, lūxi (25) I shine
lūdō, lūdere, lūsī, lūsum (6) I play
lūdus, lūdī, m. (4) school, game
lūdī, -ōrum, m. pl. (22) the games
lūgeō, lūgēre, lūxi, luctum I mourn
lūmen, lūminis, n. (30) light
lūna, -ae, f. (28) moon
lupus, -ī, m. wolf
lūx, lūcis, f. (13) light

magister, magistrī, m. (6) master
magnificē magnificently
magnopere (24) greatly
magnus, -a, -um (4) great, big
mālō, mālī, mālū (23) I prefer
malus, -a, -um (5) bad
māne (27) early (in the morning)
maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsum (3) I stay, remain, await
manus, manūs, f. (20) hand; band (of people)
marītus, -ī, m. (13) husband
māter, mātris, f. (8) mother
mātrōna, -ae, f. married woman
maximus, -a, -um (22) very great, greatest
mē (acc.) (6) me
medius, -a, -um (19) middle
memoria, -ae, f. memory
mēnsis, mēnsis, m. (33) month
merīdiēs, merīdiēi, m. (21) midday
meus, -a, -um (6) my
miles, militis, m. (14) soldier
militō, militāre (31) I serve (as a soldier), I campaign
mille a thousand
mille passūs a mile
milia, milium, n. pl. thousands
milia passuum miles
miser, misera, miserum (4) miserable
mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum (3) I send
moenia, moenium, n. pl. (15) walls, fortifications

moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum (9) I warn, advise
mōns, montis, m. (10) mountain
monumentum, -ī, n. monument
mora, -ae, f. (23) delay
mors, mortis, f. (8) death
mortuus, -a, -um (8) dead
mōs, mōris, m. (30) custom
mōs māiōrum (30) the custom of our ancestors
mox (1) soon
mulier, mulieris, f. woman
multitūdō, multitūdinis, f. (25) multitude, crowd
multus, -a, -um (4) much, many
mūnus, mūneris, n. gift; (gladiatorial) show
mūrus, -ī, m. (8) wall

nam (3) for
nārrō, nārrāre (2) I tell, narrate
nātus, -ī, m. son
nauta, -ae, m. (10) sailor
nāvigō, nāvigāre (7) I sail
nāvis, nāvis, f. (7) ship
nec/neque (5) nor, and not
nec/neque...nec/neque (6) neither...nor
necesse est it is necessary
neglegō, neglegere, neglēxī, neglēctum I neglect
negōtium, -ī, n. (29) business
nēmō, nēminis, c. (13) no one
niger, nigra, nigrum black
nimis too much
nimum, -ī, n. + gen. (23) too much
nisi (29) unless; except
nōbilis, nōbile (22) famous, noble
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī (15) I am unwilling, I refuse
nōmen, nōminis, n. (11) name
nōmine by name, called
nōn (1) not
nōndum not yet
nōnnūllī, -ae, -a (31) some
nōtus, -a, -um (11) known
novus, -a, -um (9) new
nox, noctis, f. (9) night
nūbēs, nūbis, f. (28) cloud
nūbō, nūbere, nūpsī, nūptum + dat. (30) I marry
nūgae, -ārum, f. pl. trifles, nonsense
nūllus, -a, -um (13) no
num? (26) surely not?
numerō, numerāre (24) I count
numerus, -ī, m. (17) number
numquam (13) never
nunc (12) now
nūndinae, -ārum, f. pl. market day
nūntius, -ī, m. (12) message; messenger
nūper (30) lately
nūptiae, -ārum, f. pl. (30) wedding
nūptiālis, nūptiāle (30) of a wedding, nuptial

obeō, obīre, obiī, obitum I go to meet, meet; I die
obscurō, obscurāre I darken
obses, obsidis, c. (16) hostage
obsideō, obsidēre, obsēdī, obsessum I besiege
occidō, occidere, occidī, occisum (7) I kill
occupātus, -a, -um occupied, busy
occupō, occupāre (32) I seize, occupy
occurrō, occurrere, occurri, occursum + dat. (11) I meet
oculus, -ī, m. (12) eye
offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātum I offer
officium, -ī, n. (31) duty
ōlim once
olīva, -ae, f. olive; olive tree
ōmen, ōminis, n. omen
omnipotēns, omnipotentis all powerful
omnis, omne (7) all
opprimō, opprimere, oppressī, oppressum (31) I oppress
oppugnō, oppugnāre (7) I attack
optimus, -a, -um (17) very good, best
ōrātiō, ōrātiōnis, f. (17) speech
ōrātor, ōrātōris, m. (21) speaker, orator
orbis, orbis, m. (27) circle, globe
orbis terrārum (27) the world
ōrdō, ōrdinis, m. (24) rank, line, order
ōrō, ōrāre (10) I beg, pray
ostendō, ostendere, ostendī, ostentum (11) I show
ōtiōsus, -a, -um (33) at leisure, idle
ōtium, -ī, n. (27) leisure, idleness

paene (19) nearly
parātus, -a, -um (1) prepared, ready
parēns, parentis, c. (14) parent
pāreō, pārēre, pārui, pāritum + dat. (22) I obey
parō, parāre (2) I prepare
pars, partis, f. (26) part
partēs, partium, f. pl. (32) political party
parvus, -a, -um (9) small
pater, patris, m. (7) father
patria, -ae, f. (11) fatherland
pauci, -ae, -a (9) few
paulisper (23) for a little (time)
pauper, pauperis (15) poor
pāx, pācis, f. (16) peace
pecūnia, -ae, f. (17) money
pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsum I drive
penātēs, penātium, m. pl. household gods
per + acc. (5) through, throughout
perdō, perdere, perdidī, perditum (22) I lose, waste, destroy
perducō, perducere, perdūxī, perductum I lead, conduct
pereō, perīre, perīi, peritum (30) I perish, die
perficiō, perficere, perfēcī, perfectum (12) I carry out, complete
periculum, -ī, n. (10) danger
perlegō, perlegere, perlēgī, perlēctum I read through
perpetuus, -a, -um everlasting, perpetual

persōna, -ae, *f.* character
persuādeō, **persuādēre**, **persuāsī**, **persuāsum** + dat. I persuade
pervenīō, **pervenīre**, **pervēnī**, **perventum** (26) I reach
pessimus, -a, -um (17) very bad, worst
petō, **petere**, **petivī**, **petitum** (12) I ask, seek, pursue
philosophia, -ae, *f.* (27) philosophy
pictūra, -ae, *f.* picture
pictor, **pictōris**, *m.* painter
placeō, **placēre**, **placui**, **placitum** + dat. (12) I please
 mihi placet (12) it pleases me to; I decide
plēnus, -a, -um (+ abl.) (27) full (of)
plērique, **plēraque**, **plēraque** several
plūrimus, -a, -um (22) very many, most
plūs, **plūris**, *n.* more
poēta, -ae, *m.* (20) poet
pompa, -ae, *f.* procession
pōnō, **pōnere**, **posuī**, **positum** (5) I put, place
populus, -ī, *m.* (14) people
porta, -ae, *f.* (8) gate
portō, **portāre** (2) I carry
portus, **portūs**, *m.* (27) port
poscō, **poscere**, **poscī** (16) I demand
possum, **posse**, **potuī** (8) I am able, I can
 post + acc. (12) after
postea (14) afterwards
postridiē (15) the next day
potēns, **potentis** (30) powerful
potestās, **potestātis**, *f.* (27) power
praebeō, **praebere**, **praeui**, **praebitum** I offer, give, show
praeiciō, **-ficere**, **-fēcī**, **-fectum** (32) I put x (acc.) in command of y (dat.)
praemium, -ī, *n.* (24) reward, prize
praesidium, -ī, *n.* (16) garrison
praesum, **praesesse**, **praeui** + dat. (32) I am in command of
praeterea (21) moreover
praetereō, **praeterīre**, **praeterī**, **praeteritum** (24) I pass, go past
praetor, **praetōris**, *m.* praetor
primum (adv.) (10) first
primus, -a, -um (6) first
princeps, **principis**, *m.* (7) prince
 prō + abl. (26) in front of; on behalf of, for
prōcēdō, **prōcēdere**, **prōcessī**, **prōcessum** (4) I go forward, proceed
procul (15) far from, far off
proelium, -ī, *n.* (15) battle
prōferō, **prōferre**, **prōtulī**, **prōlātum** I bring forward, bring out
prōmittō, **prōmittere**, **prōmīsī**, **prōmissum** (17) I promise
 prope + acc. (6) near
 propter + acc. (29) because of, on account of
prōspiciō, **prōspicere**, **prōspexī**, **prōspectum** I look out
prōvideō, **prōvidēre**, **prōvidī**, **prōvisum** (24) I foresee
proximus, -a, -um nearest, next

prūdēns, **prūdētis** (27) sensible, wise
prūdētia, -ae, *f.* prudence, good sense
puella, **puellae**, *f.* (1) girl
puer, **puerī**, *c.* (3) boy; child
puerilis, **puerile** (25) of boys, childish
pugna, -ae, *f.* (7) fight
pugnō, **pugnāre** (7) I fight
pulcher, **pulchra**, **pulchrum** (13) pretty, beautiful
pulsō, **pulsāre** I hit, knock
pupa, -ae, *f.* doll
puppis, **puppis**, *f.* stern
pūrus, -a, -um pure
pyra, -ae, *f.* pyre

quaerō, **quaerere**, **quaesivī**, **quaesitum** (10) I ask; I look for
quam how (in exclamations); than (24);
 quam + superlative, e.g. **quam celerrimē** = as quickly as possible (25)
quamquam (24) although
quandō? (29) when?
quantus, -a, -um? (26) how great?
 -que (8) and
quī, **quae**, **quod** (13) who, which
quīdam, **quaedam**, **quoddam** (14) a certain, a
quiēscō, **quiēscere**, **quiēvī**, **quiētum** (10) I rest
quis, **quid**? (5) who, what?
quisquam, **quicquam** (29) anyone, anything (after a negative)
quō? (22) whither? where to?
quod (4) because
quōmodo? (15) how?
quoque (16) also

rapiō, **rapere**, **rapuī**, **raptum** (22) I snatch, seize, steal
recēdō, **recēdere**, **recessī**, **recessum** I go back, retire
recipiō, **recipere**, **recēpī**, **receptum** (32) I take back
 mē **recipiō** (32) I retreat
recitō, **recitāre** (20) I read aloud, recite
rēctē (20) straight, rightly
rēctus, -a, -um (20) straight, right
recurrō, **recurere**, **recurrī**, **recursum** I run back
reddō, **reddere**, **reddidī**, **redditum** (8) I give back, return
redeō, **redire**, **redī**, **reditum** (3) I go back, return
referō, **referre**, **rettulī**, **relātum** (23) I bring back; I report
rēgia, -ae, *f.* palace
rēgīna, -ae, *f.* (11) queen
regō, **regere**, **rēxī**, **rēctum** I rule
relinquō, **relinquere**, **reliquī**, **relictum** (8) I leave behind
reliquus, -a, -um (28) remaining
repellō, **repellere**, **reppulī**, **repulsum** (15) I drive back
rēs, **rei**, *f.* (21) thing, matter
 rē **vērā** (21) in truth, really, in fact
resistō, **resistere**, **restitī** + dat. (7) I resist
respiciō, **respicere**, **respexī**, **respectum** I look back (at)

respondeō, respondēre, respondi, respōnsum (5) I answer
rēspūblica, rēipūblicaē, f. (21) public affairs; the republic
retineō, retinēre, retinui, retentum (23) I hold back
revocō, revocāre I call back
rēx, rēgis, m. (7) king
rideō, ridēre, risi, risum (20) I laugh
rogō, rogāre (5) I ask, I ask for
rūmor, rūmōris, m. rumour, report
rumpō, rumpere, rūpi, ruptum (16) I burst, break
ruō, ruere, rui, rutum (27) I rush
rūsticus, -a, um rustic, country

sacer, sacra, sacrum (19) sacred, holy
sacrificium, -ī, n. sacrifice
saepe (4) often
saliō, salire, salui, saltum I jump
saltus, -ūs, m. dancing
salūs, salūtis, f. safety; greetings
salūtō, salūtāre (2) I greet
salvē, salvēte! (21) greetings!
sanguis, sanguinis, m. blood
satis + gen. (26) enough
saxum, -ī, n. (10) rock
scelestus, -a, -um (27) wicked, criminal
schola, -ae, f. (20) school, schoolroom; lecture
scholam habeō (29) I give a lecture
sciō, scīre, scīvī, scitum I know
scribō, scribere, scripsi, scriptum (6) I write, I draw
sedeō, sedēre, sēdi, sessum (3) I sit
semper (11) always
senātus, -ūs, m. (15) senate
senex, senis, m. (14) old man
senior, seniōris (31) older, senior
sentiō, sentire, sēnsi, sēnsus (30) I feel, realize
sepulcrum, -ī, n. tomb
sērō late
servō, servāre (8) I save
sevērus, -a, -um (20) severe
sī (13) if
sic (9) thus, like that
sicut (29) just as, like
signum, -ī, n. (22) sign, signal, seal
silva, -ae, f. (18) wood, forest
sine + abl. (18) without
sinister, sinistra, sinistrum (28) left
sinistrā (manū) (28) on the left (hand)
sinō, sinere, sivi, situm (21) I allow
socius, -ī, m. companion, ally
sōl, sōlis, m. (30) sun
sollicitus, -a, -um (33) anxious
sōlus, -a, -um (8) alone
nōn solum...sed etiam (16) not only...but also
solvō, solvere, solvi, solutum (28) I loose, cast off
somnium, -ī, n. dream
somnus, -ī, m. (11) sleep
sonus, -ī, m. (13) sound

sordidus, -a, -um dirty
soror, sorōris, f. (21) sister
spectāculum, -ī, n. (24) sight, show
spectātor, spectātōris, m. (24) spectator
spectō, spectāre (5) I look at
spērō, spērāre (22) I hope
spēs, spēi, f. (21) hope
squālidus, -a, -um filthy
statim (5) at once
statua, -ae, f. (16) statue
stō, stāre, steti, statum (11) I stand
studeō, studēre, studui + dat. (18) I study
studium, -ī, n. (21) study
stultus, -a, -um foolish
sub + abl. (10) under
subitō (2) suddenly
succurrō, succurrere, succurri, succursum + dat. (11) I (run to) help
sum, esse, fui (17) I am
sūmō, sūmere, sūpsi, sūptum (25) I take (up); I put on
summus, -a, -um (16) highest; greatest
super + acc. (29) above, over
superbus, -a, -um (24) proud
superō, superāre (17) I overcome
supplicō, supplicāre + dat. (30) I beg, supplicate, pray to
surgō, surgere, surrēxi, surrēctum (4) I rise, get up
suus, -a, -um (14) his, her, their (own)

taberna, -ae, f. stall, shop, pub
tablinum, -ī, n. (21) study (the room)
tabula, -ae, f. writing tablet
taceō, tacēre, tacui, tacitum (9) I am silent
tacitus, -a, -um (9) silent
tālis, tāle (22) such
tam (18) so
tamen (17) but, however
tandem (4) at last
tantus, -a, -um (12) so great
tegō, tegere, tēxi, tēctum I cover
tempestās, tempestātis, f. storm
templum, -ī, n. (11) temple
temptō, temptāre (15) I try, attempt
tempus, temporis, n. (18) time
teneō, tenēre, tenui, tentum (13) I hold
tepidus, -a, -um warm
ter three times
terra, terrae, f. (3) earth, land
terreō, terrēre, terrui, territum I terrify
terrītus, -a, -um (8) terrified, frightened
theātrum, -ī, n. (26) theatre
timeō, timēre, timui (8) I fear, I am afraid
timidus, -a, -um timid
timor, timōris, m. (26) fear
toga, -ae, f. (15) toga
togātus, -a, -um wearing a toga
tollō, tollere, sustuli, sublātum (10, 30) I raise, lift

tot (indecl.) (32) so many
totiēns (32) so often
tōtus, -a, -um (9) whole
trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditum (5) I hand over
trahō, trahere, trāxī, tractum I drag
trāns + acc. (15) across
trānseō, trānsire, trānsiī, trānsitum (18) I cross
trēs, tria (5) three
trīstis, triste (12) sad
tū (6) you (sing.)
tum then
tumultus, -ūs, m. (25) uproar, riot
tunica, -ae, f. tunic
turba, -ae, f. (22) a crowd
tuus, -a, -um (6) your
tyrannus, -ī, m. (26) tyrant

ubi (19) where
ubi (conj.) (4) when
ubique (19) everywhere
ūllus, -a, -um (27) any
ultimus, -a, -um (26) furthest, last
umbra, -ae, f. shadow
umquam (13) ever
unda, -ae, f. (10) wave
unde? (23) whence? from where?
undique (23) from all sides
ūniversus, -a, -um all
ūnus, -a, -um (5) one
urbs, urbis, f. (7) city
urna, -ae, f. water pot
ut (29) as, when
uter, utra, utrum? (29) which (of two)?
utrum...an? (whether)...or?
uxor, uxōris, f. (9) wife

vacuus, -a, -um (19) empty
valdē very
valeō, valēre, valuī, valitum (33) I am strong, I am well
valēre iubeō I bid goodbye to
vehemēns, vehementis (31) violent

vehō, vehere, vēxī, vectum (24) I carry
vendō, vendere, vendidī, venditum (18) I sell
veniō, venire, vēnī, ventum (4) I come
ventus, -ī, m. (11) wind
Venusinī, m. the people of Venusia
vēr, vēris, n. (18) spring
verbum, -ī, n. (10) word
versus, versūs, m. (20) verse
vertō, vertere, vertī, versum (8) I turn
vērus, -a, -um (17) true
vēra dicere (17) I speak the truth
vesper, vesperis, m. (22) evening
vestimenta, -ōrum, n. pl. (19) clothes
vestis, vestis, f. clothes
vetus, veteris (22) old
vexō, vexāre (27) I worry, I annoy
via, -ae, f. (2) road, way
viātor, viātōris, m. (28) traveller
victor, victōris, m. victor
victōria, -ae, f. (24) victory
videō, vidēre, vidī, vīsum (3) I see
vīgintī twenty
villa, -ae, f. (32) villa, country house
vincō, vincere, vīcī, victum (7) I conquer
vīnum, -ī, n. (11) wine
vir, virī, m. (9) man
virgō, virginis, f. (16) maiden, virgin
virilis, virīle (25) manly, of a man
virtūs, virtūtis, f. (16) virtue, excellence, courage
vīsō, vīsere, vīsī, vīsum (21) I visit
vīta, -ae, f. (29) life
vītō, vītāre I avoid
vīvō, vivere, vixī, vīctum (13) I live
vīvus, -a, -um (28) living, alive
vix (10) scarcely
vocō, vocāre (2) I call
volō, velle, voluī (15) I wish, I am willing
volō, volāre (22) I fly
vōx, vōcis, f. (13) voice
vulnus, vulneris, n. (17) wound
vultus, -ūs, m. (20) face, expression

Vocabulary

English – Latin

Regular verbs are given with infinitive only.

about **dē** + abl.
 admiration **admīrātiō**, **admīrātiōnis**, *f.*
 affair **rēs**, **rei**, *f.*
 again **iterum**
 all **omnis**, **omne**
 alone **sōlus**, **-a**, **-um**
 and **et**, **-que**
 and so **itaque**, **igitur**
 angry **īrātus**, **-a**, **-um**
 answer, I **respondeō**, **respondēre**, **respondī**, **respōsum**
 anxious **ānxius**, **-a**, **-um**
 approach, I **accēdō**, **accēdere**, **accessī**, **accessum** (**ad**)
 arrive, I **adveniō**, **advenire**, **advēnī**, **adventum**
 ask, I **rogō**, **rogāre**
 Athens **Athēnae**, **-ārum**, *f. pl.*
 at last **tandem**
 at once **statim**

because **quod**
 begin, I **incipiō**, **incipere**, **incēpī**, **inceptum**
 better **melior**, **melius**
 big **magnus**, **-a**, **-um**
 bigger **maior**, **maius**
 board (a ship), I **cōncendō**, **cōncendere**, **cōncendī**, **cōncēsum**
 book **liber**, **librī**, *m.*
 boy **puer**, **puerī**, *m.*
 bring, I = carry **ferō**, **ferre**, **tulī**, **lātum**
 = lead **dūcō**, **dūcere**, **dūxī**, **ductum**
 burn, I (= I am on fire) **ardeō**, **ardēre**, **arsī**, **arsum**
 but **sed**
 by **ā/ab** + abl.

call, I **vocō**, **vocāre**
 can, I **possum**, **posse**, **potuī**
 captain (of ship) **magister**, **magistrī**, *m.*
 care for, I **cūrō**, **cūrāre**
 carry, I **portō**, **portāre**; **ferō**, **ferre**, **tulī**, **lātum**
 cast off, I **solvō**, **solvere**, **solvī**, **solūtum**
 catch sight of, I **cōspiciō**, **cōspicere**, **cōspexī**, **cōspectum**
 certain, a **quīdam**, **quaedam**, **quoddam**
 child **puer**, **puerī**, *c.*
 citizen **civis**, **civis**, *c.*
 civil **civilis**, **civile**
 climb, I **ascendō**, **ascendere**, **ascendī**, **ascēsum**
 come, I **veniō**, **venire**, **vēnī**, **ventum**
 cross, I **trānseō**, **trānsire**, **trānsī**, **transitum**
 crowd **turba**, **-ae**, *f.*

day **diēs**, **diēī**, *m.*
 every day **cotidiē**
 decide, I **cōstituō**, **cōstituere**, **cōstituī**, **cōstitutum**
 defend, I **dēfendō**, **dēfendere**, **dēfendī**, **dēfēsum**
 delay **mora**, **-ae**, *f.*
 difficult **difficilis**, **difficile**
 dinner **cēna**, **-ae**, *f.*
 dismiss, I **dimittō**, **dimittere**, **dīmīsī**, **dīmissum**
 dog **canis**, **canis**, *c.*
 don't! **nōlī**, **nōlīte!** (+ *inf.*)
 door **iānuā**, **-ae**, *f.*
 drag, I **trahō**, **trahere**, **trāxī**, **tractum**
 drink, I **bibō**, **bibere**, **bibī**

each (of two) **uterque**, **utraque**, **utrumque**
 easily **facile**
 easy **facilis**, **facile**
 eat, I **edō**, **esse**, **ēdī**, **ēsum**
 enjoy, I **gaudeō**, **gaudēre** + abl.
 every day **cotidiē**
 everything **omnia**, **omnium**, *n. pl.*
 exercise, I **exerceō**, **exercēre**
 expression **vultus**, **-ūs**, *m.*
 eye **oculus**, **-ī**, *m.*

family **familia**, **-ae**, *f.*
 farmer **colōnus**, **-ī**, *m.*
 father **pater**, **patris**, *m.*
 field **ager**, **agrī**, *m.*
 fifty **quīnquāgintā**
 fight, I **pugnō**, **pugnāre**
 find, I **inveniō**, **invenire**, **invēnī**, **inventum**
 fire **ignis**, **ignis**, *m.*
 flee, I **fugiō**, **fugere**, **fūgī**, **fugitum**
 for, on behalf of **prō** + abl.
 forum **forum**, **-ī**, *n.*
 fountain **fōns**, **fontis**, *m.*
 fourth **quārtus**, **-a**, **-um**
 freedom **libertās**, **libertātis**, *f.*
 friend **amicus**, **-ī**, *m.*
 full (of) **plēnus**, **-a**, **-um** (+ *abl.*)

garden **hortus**, **-ī**, *m.*
 girl **puella**, **-ae**, *f.*
 give, I **dō**, **dare**, **dedī**, **datum**
 glory **glōria**, **-ae**, *f.*
 go in, I **intrō**, **intrāre**
 good **bonus**, **-a**, **-um**
 very good **optimus**, **-a**, **-um**
 great **magnus**, **-a**, **-um**
 greatly **magnopere**; **valdē**

Greece **Graecia**, -ae, *f.*
greet, I **salūtō**, **salūtāre**

hand **manus**, -ūs, *f.*
happens, it **accidit**, **accidere**, **accidit**
harbour **portus**, -ūs, *m.*
have, I **habeō**, **habēre**
hear **audiō**, **audire**
his/her/their own **suus**, -a, -um

home **domus**, -ī, *f.*
at home **domi**
to home **domum**

hope **spēs**, **spēi**, *f.*
hour **hōra**, -ae, *f.*
house **casa**, -ae, *f.* (grand house) **aedēs**, **aedium**, *f. pl.*

if **sī**
increase, I **augeō**, **augēre**, **auxi**, **auctum**
Italy **Italia**, -ae, *f.*

journey **iter**, **itineris**, *n.*
joy **gaudium**, -ī, *n.*

land **terra**, -ae, *f.*
last, at last **tandem**
late (adv.) **sērō**
laugh, I **rideō**, **ridēre**, **risi**, **risum**
lead, I **dūcō**, **dūcere**, **dūxi**, **ductum**
leader **dux**, **ducis**, *c.*
leave, I = go away from **discēdō**, **discēdere**, **discessi**,
discessum

= leave behind **relinquō**, **relinquere**, **reliqui**, **relictum**

lecture **schola**, -ae, *f.*
letter **littera**, -ae, *f.*; **epistola**, -ae, *f.*

listen to, I **audiō**, **audire**

live, I **vīvō**, **vivere**, **vixi**, **victum**
= inhabit **habitō**, **habitāre**

long **longus**, -a, -um
for a long time **diū**; longer **diūtius**

look! **ecce**

look after, I **cūrō**, **cūrāre**

look at, I **spectō**, **spectāre**; **īspiciō**, **īspicere**, **īspexi**,
īnspectum

look back, I **respiciō**, **respicere**, **respexi**, **respectum**

look for, I **quaerō**, **quaerere**, **quaesivi**, **quaesitum**

loud (voice) **magnus**, -a, -um

love, I **amō**, **amāre**

make, I **faciō**, **facere**, **fēci**, **factum**

man **vir**, **virī**, *m.*

many **multī**, **multae**, **multa**

marry, I **nūbō**, **nūbere**, **nūpsi**, **nūptum** + dat.

miserable **miser**, **misera**, **miserum**

mistress **domina**, -ae, *f.*

money **argentum**, -ī, *n.*

more **plūs**, **plūris**

= more greatly **magis**

mother **māter**, **mātris**, *f.*

move, I **moveō**, **movēre**, **mōvi**, **mōtum**

moved **commōtus**, -a, -um

much, many **multus**, -a, -um

must, I **dēbeō**, **dēbere**

near **prope** + acc.

never **numquam**

nothing **nihil**, **nihili**, *n.*

now **iam**

often **saepe**

old **vetus**, **veteris**

one **ūnus**, -a, -um

one (of two) **alter**, **altera**, **alterum**

open **apertus**, -a, -um

other **alius**, **alia**, **aliud**

the other (of two) **alter**, **altera**, **alterum**

the others = the rest **cēteri**, -ae, -a

our **noster**, **nostra**, **nostrum**

outside **extrā** + acc.

overcome, I **superō**, **superāre**

parent **parēns**, **parentis**, *c.*

passenger **viātor**, **viātōris**, *m.*

people **populus**, -ī, *m.*

play, I **lūdō**, **lūdere**, **lūsi**, **lūsum**

please, I **dēlectō**, **dēlectāre**; **placeō**, **placēre** + dat.

praise, I **laudō**, **laudāre**

prepare, I **parō**, **parāre**

proceed, I **prōcēdō**, **prōcēdere**, **prōcessi**, **prōcessum**

pupil **discipulus**, -ī, *m.*

quickly **celeriter**

race **cursus**, -ūs, *m.*

reach, I **pervenīō**, **pervenire**, **pervēni**, **perventum** (ad)

read, I **legō**, **legere**, **lēgi**, **lēctum**

reply, I **respondeō**, **respondere**, **respondi**, **respōnsum**

republic **rēspūblica**, **reīpūblīcae**, *f.*

return, I = go back **redeō**, **redire**, **redii**, **reditum**

= give back **reddō**, **reddere**, **reddidi**, **redditum**

riot **tumultus**, -ūs, *m.*

rouse, I **excitō**, **excitāre**

run, I **currō**, **currere**, **cucurri**, **cursum**

run towards, I **accurrō**, **accurrere**, **accurri**, **accursum**

sail, I **nāvigō**, **nāvigāre**

sailor **nauta**, -ae, *m.*

save, I **servō**, **servāre**

say I **dicō**, **dicere**, **dixi**, **dictum**

he/she said **inquit**

school **lūdus**, -ī, *m.*

sea **mare**, **maris**, *n.*

see, I **videō**, **videre**, **vidi**, **visum**

send, I **mittō, mittere, mīsi, missum**
 serve (as a soldier), I **militō, militāre**
 severe **sevērus, -a, -um**
 ship **nāvis, nāvis, f.**
 shout **clāmō, clāmāre**
 sit, I **sedeō sedēre, sēdī, sessum**
 sleep, I **dormiō, dormīre**
 slowly **lentē**
 small **parvus, -a, -um**
 very small **minimus, -a, -um**
 so **tam**
 someone, something **aliquis, aliquid**
 son **filius, -i, m.**
 soon **mox**
 as soon as possible **quam primum**
 speed **celeritās, celeritātis, f.**
 stand, I **stō, stāre, steti, statum**
 stay I **maneō, manēre, mānsi, māsum**
 step **gradus, -ūs, m.**
 street **via, -ae, f.**
 study **studium, -i, n.**
 suddenly **subitō**
 surely not? **num?**

tavern **taberna, -ae, f.**
 tell, I = say **dicō, dīcere, dixi, dictum**
 = narrate **nārrō, nārrāre**
 = order **iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussum**
 ten **decem**
 terrified **territus, -a, -um**
 than **quam**
 their own **suus, -a, -um**
 thing **rēs, rei, f.**
 this **hic, haec, hoc**
 three **trēs, tria**
 through **per + acc.**
 tired **fessus, -a, -um**
 today **hodiē**
 toga **toga, -ae, f.**
 top (= highest, greatest) **summus, -a, -um**
 travel, I **iter faciō**
 tree **arbor, arboris, f.**
 turn, I **vertō, vertere, verti, versum**
 turn round, I **mē vertō**

under **sub + abl.**
 unwilling **invitus, -a, -um**

very **valdē**
 verse **versus, -ūs, m.**
 voice **vōx, vōcis, f.**

wait, I = stay **maneō, manēre, mānsi, māsum**
 = wait for **expectō, expectāre**
 wake up, I **excitō, excitāre (trans.)**
 ēvigilō, ēvigilāre (intr.)
 walk, I **ambulō, ambulāre; contendō, contendere,**
 contendī, contentum
 want, I **cupiō, cupere, cupivī, cupitum**
 war **bellum, -i, n.**
 warn, I **moneō, monēre**
 watch, I **spectō, spectāre**
 wave **unda, -ae, f.**
 way **via, -ae, f.**
 wedding **nūptiae, -ārum, f. pl.**
 well **bene**
 what? **quid?**
 when **ubi, cum**
 which **quī, quae, quod**
 which (of two)? **uter, utra, utrum?**
 who? **quis?**
 why? **cūr?**
 wife **uxor, uxoris, f.**
 willing, I am **volō, velle, volui**
 wine **vīnum, -i, n.**
 wish, I **cupiō, cupere, cupivī, cupitum**
 with **cum + abl.**
 without **sine + abl.**
 woman **fēmina, -ae, f.**
 word **verbum, -i, n.**
 work, I **labōrō, labōrāre**
 worse **pēior, pēius**
 write, I **scribō, scribere, scripsi, scriptum**

year **annus, -i, m.**
 you (s.) **tū; (pl.) vōs**
 young man **iuvenis, iuvenis, m.**

Index of grammar

The numbers refer to chapters

ablative case 22, 23, 30
adjectives, comparison of 24, 25
adverbs, comparison of 25
alter 29
declension *see* nouns
ferō 23
future perfect tense:
 active 27
 passive 31
future tense:
 active 27
 passive 32
imperfect tense:
 active 17
 passive 32
locative case 19
nouns:
 4th declension 20
 5th declension 21
numerals 18
participles:
 present active 26
 perfect passive 30
passive voice 30
perfect tense:
 active 17
 passive 31
 true perfect 18
perfect stems, active:
 inceptive verbs 22
 lengthening stem vowel 19
 overview 17
 reduplicated 20
 same as present 18
 stems in **-sī** 17
 stems in **-vī, -ivī, -uī** 21

place, expressions of 19
pluperfect tense:
 active 19
 passive 31
plus 24
present tense, passive 32
relative clauses 28
quam:
 + superlative 25
 = than 24
supine 30
time, expressions of 18
uter? utrum . . . an? uterque? 29

Word-building

chapter 17 compounds of **mittō**
chapter 18 compounds of **eō**
chapter 19 compounds of **sum**
chapter 20 compounds of **dō**
chapter 21 compounds of **pōnō**
chapter 22 compounds of **faciō**
chapter 23 compounds of **ferō**
chapter 24 opposites (**dignus/indignus** etc.)
chapter 25 adjectives formed from nouns (**labōriōsus** etc.)
chapter 26 verbs compounded with **con-, per-, di-/dis-, circum-**
chapter 27 compounds of **speciō**
chapter 28 present participles as adjectives (**amāns** etc.)
chapter 29 word groups
chapter 30 nouns and adjectives formed from perfect passive participles
chapter 31 nouns formed from the supine
chapter 32 word groups
chapter 33 diminutives

OXFORD LATIN COURSE

This second edition of the Oxford Latin Course combines the best features of both modern and traditional methods of Latin teaching from first stages to GCSE.

Completely revised and restructured in light of a nationwide survey of Classics teachers, it provides an exciting and stimulating approach to Latin based on the reading of original texts. Parts I–III are built around a narrative detailing the life of Horace, based closely on historical sources, which helps students to develop an understanding of the times of Cicero and Augustus. The course is completed by a Reader consisting of extracts from Caesar, Cicero, Catullus, Virgil, Livy, and Ovid.

In addition, the second edition offers full colour illustrations throughout Parts I and II, and an expanded Teacher's Book for each part, with translations. It also features:

- clearer presentation of grammar •
- revised narrative passages •
- new background sections •
- more emphasis on the role of women and on daily life •
- a greater number and variety of exercises •
- review chapters and tests •

Part I ISBN 0 19 912226 1

Teacher's Book ISBN 0 19 912230 X

Part II ISBN 0 19 912227 X

Teacher's Book ISBN 0 19 912231 8

Part III ISBN 0 19 912228 8

Teacher's Book ISBN 0 19 912232 6

Reader ISBN 0 19 521209 6

Teacher's Book ISBN 0 19 912233 4

OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS

www.OxfordSecondary.co.uk



ISBN 978-0-19-912227-1



9 780199 122271